

# Hitachi Storage Navigator Modular 2 Storage Features Reference Guide for AMS

Covers the following Program Products:

- [Account Authentication](#)
- [Audit Logging](#)
- [Cache Partition Manager](#)
- [Cache Residency Manager](#)
- [Data Retention Utility](#)
- [LUN Manager](#)
- [Performance Monitor](#)
- [SNMP Agent Support](#)

## FASTFIND LINKS

[Document organization](#)

[Getting help](#)

[Contents](#)

No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording, or stored in a database or retrieval system for any purpose without the express written permission of Hitachi, Ltd. and Hitachi Data Systems Corporation (hereinafter referred to as "Hitachi").

Hitachi, Ltd. and Hitachi Data Systems reserve the right to make changes to this document at any time without notice and assume no responsibility for its use. Hitachi, Ltd. and Hitachi Data Systems products and services can only be ordered under the terms and conditions of Hitachi Data Systems' applicable agreements.

All of the features described in this document may not be currently available. Refer to the most recent product announcement or contact your local Hitachi Data Systems sales office for information on feature and product availability.

**Notice:** Hitachi Data Systems products and services can be ordered only under the terms and conditions of Hitachi Data Systems' applicable agreement(s). The use of Hitachi Data Systems products is governed by the terms of your agreement(s) with Hitachi Data Systems.

Hitachi is a registered trademark of Hitachi, Ltd. in the United States and other countries. Hitachi Data Systems is a registered trademark and service mark of Hitachi in the United States and other countries. All other trademarks, service marks, and company names are properties of their respective owners.

Export authorization is required for the AMS 2000 Data At Rest Encryption

- Import/Use regulations may restrict export of the AMS2000 SED to certain countries
- China – AMS2000 is eligible for import but the License Key and SED may not be sent to China
- France – Import pending completion of registration formalities
- Hong Kong – Import pending completion of registration formalities
- Israel – Import pending completion of registration formalities
- Russia – Import pending completion of notification formalities
- Distribution Centers – IDC, EDC and ADC cleared for exports



# Contents

1	Introduction . . . . .	1-1
	Account Authentication . . . . .	1-2
	User management . . . . .	1-2
	User authentication . . . . .	1-2
	Access control . . . . .	1-2
	Migrating from Password Protection to Account Authentication. . . . .	1-3
	Key similarities . . . . .	1-3
	Key differences . . . . .	1-3
	Advanced Security Mode . . . . .	1-3
	Audit Logging . . . . .	1-4
	Cache Partition Manager . . . . .	1-5
	Cache Residency Manager . . . . .	1-6
	Data Retention Utility. . . . .	1-6
	LUN Manager . . . . .	1-7
	Fibre Channel features . . . . .	1-8
	iSCSI features . . . . .	1-9
	iSCSI protocol . . . . .	1-10
	iSCSI network configuration . . . . .	1-10
	Performance Monitor . . . . .	1-10
	SNMP Agent Support . . . . .	1-11
	Trap-issuing processing . . . . .	1-12
	Request processing . . . . .	1-13
	Modular Volume Migration . . . . .	1-15
	Usage guidelines . . . . .	1-17
	Environments . . . . .	1-17
	Requirements . . . . .	1-17
	Requirements for installing and enabling features. . . . .	1-17
	Audit Logging . . . . .	1-18
	Cache Partition Manager. . . . .	1-18
	Modular Volume Migration . . . . .	1-18
	Requirements for uninstalling and disabling features. . . . .	1-18
	Account Authentication. . . . .	1-19

Cache Partition Manager . . . . .	1-19
Data Retention . . . . .	1-19
LUN Manager . . . . .	1-19
Modular Volume Migration . . . . .	1-19
SNMP Agent . . . . .	1-19
Additional guidelines . . . . .	1-20
Advanced Settings Java Applet . . . . .	1-20
<b>2 Installing and enabling storage features . . . . .</b>	<b>2-1</b>
Preinstallation information . . . . .	2-2
Environments . . . . .	2-2
Storage feature requirements . . . . .	2-2
Requirements for installing and enabling features . . . . .	2-2
Audit Logging requirements . . . . .	2-3
Cache Partition Manager requirements . . . . .	2-3
Data Retention requirements . . . . .	2-3
LUN Manager requirements . . . . .	2-4
SNMP Agent requirements . . . . .	2-4
Modular Volume Migration requirements . . . . .	2-4
Additional guidelines . . . . .	2-5
Installing storage features . . . . .	2-5
Enabling storage features . . . . .	2-5
Disabling storage features . . . . .	2-6
Uninstalling storage features . . . . .	2-6
<b>3 Account Authentication . . . . .</b>	<b>3-1</b>
Account Authentication overview . . . . .	3-2
Overview of Account Authentication . . . . .	3-2
Accounts . . . . .	3-3
Account types . . . . .	3-4
Roles . . . . .	3-5
Resources . . . . .	3-5
Session . . . . .	3-7
Session types for operating resources . . . . .	3-7
Warning banners . . . . .	3-8
<b>4 Audit Logging . . . . .</b>	<b>4-1</b>
Audit Logging overview . . . . .	4-2
Audit Logging procedures . . . . .	4-3
Initial settings . . . . .	4-3
Optional operations . . . . .	4-3
Enabling Audit Log data transfers . . . . .	4-3
Viewing Audit Log data . . . . .	4-5
Initializing logs . . . . .	4-6
Configuring Audit Logging to an external Syslog server . . . . .	4-6

<b>5</b>	<b>Cache Partition Manager</b> . . . . .	<b>5-1</b>
	Cache Partition Manager overview . . . . .	5-2
	Cache Partition Manager . . . . .	5-2
	Partition Capacity . . . . .	5-3
	Segment and Stripe Size Restrictions . . . . .	5-12
	Cache Partition Manager settings . . . . .	5-15
	Initial settings . . . . .	5-15
	Stopping Cache Partition Manager . . . . .	5-15
	Working with cache partitions . . . . .	5-16
	Adding cache partitions . . . . .	5-16
	Deleting cache partitions . . . . .	5-18
	Assigning cache partitions . . . . .	5-18
	Setting a pair cache partition . . . . .	5-19
	Changing cache partitions . . . . .	5-20
	Changing cache partition owner controllers . . . . .	5-20
	Installing SnapShot or TCE or Dynamic Provisioning under Cache Partition Manager . . . . .	5-21
	VMWare and Cache Partition Manager . . . . .	5-23
<b>6</b>	<b>Cache Residency Manager</b> . . . . .	<b>6-1</b>
	Cache Residency Manager overview . . . . .	6-2
	Termination Conditions . . . . .	6-2
	Disabling Conditions . . . . .	6-3
	Equipment . . . . .	6-3
	Logical Unit Capacity . . . . .	6-4
	Restrictions . . . . .	6-13
	Enabling cache residency . . . . .	6-14
	Cache Residency Manager operations . . . . .	6-14
	Initial settings . . . . .	6-14
	Stopping Cache Residency Manager . . . . .	6-15
	Setting and canceling residency logical units . . . . .	6-15
	NAS Unit Considerations . . . . .	6-16
	VMware and Cache Residency Manager . . . . .	6-17
<b>7</b>	<b>Data Retention Utility</b> . . . . .	<b>7-1</b>
	Data Retention Utility overview . . . . .	7-2
	Usage . . . . .	7-3
	Logical unit access attributes . . . . .	7-3
	Unified logical units . . . . .	7-4
	SnapShot and TCE . . . . .	7-4
	SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command . . . . .	7-4
	Host Side Application example . . . . .	7-4
	Operating System (OS) Restrictions . . . . .	7-4
	Logical units attributes set from the operating system . . . . .	7-4
	Data Retention Utility operations . . . . .	7-6

Initial settings . . . . .	7-6
Optional operations . . . . .	7-6
Opening the Data Retention window . . . . .	7-6
Setting attributes. . . . .	7-8
Setting S-VOLs . . . . .	7-8
Setting expiration locks . . . . .	7-8
<b>8 LUN Manager . . . . .</b>	<b>8-1</b>
LUN Manager overview . . . . .	8-2
Design configurations and best practices . . . . .	8-4
Fibre Channel configuration . . . . .	8-4
Fibre Channel design considerations . . . . .	8-6
iSCSI system design considerations . . . . .	8-7
Assigning iSCSI targets and volumes to hosts. . . . .	8-15
Preventing unauthorized SAN access . . . . .	8-17
Avoiding RAID Group Conflicts . . . . .	8-18
SAN queue depth setting . . . . .	8-20
Increasing queue depth and port sharing. . . . .	8-20
Increasing queue depth through path switching . . . . .	8-21
LUN Manager operations . . . . .	8-23
Using Fibre Channel. . . . .	8-23
Using iSCSI. . . . .	8-23
Fibre Channel operations using LUN Manager. . . . .	8-24
Adding host groups . . . . .	8-24
Enabling and disabling host group security. . . . .	8-25
Creating and editing host groups . . . . .	8-26
Initializing Host Group 000 . . . . .	8-31
Deleting host groups . . . . .	8-31
Changing nicknames . . . . .	8-32
Deleting World Wide Names . . . . .	8-32
Copy settings to other ports . . . . .	8-33
iSCSI operations using LUN Manager. . . . .	8-34
Creating an iSCSI target. . . . .	8-35
Using the iSCSI Target Tabs. . . . .	8-35
Setting the iSCSI target security . . . . .	8-37
Editing iSCSI target nicknames. . . . .	8-38
Adding and deleting targets . . . . .	8-40
Editing target information. . . . .	8-42
Editing authentication properties. . . . .	8-43
Initializing Target 000 . . . . .	8-44
Changing a nickname. . . . .	8-45
CHAP users. . . . .	8-45
Adding a CHAP user. . . . .	8-45
Changing the CHAP user . . . . .	8-46

Setting Copy to the Other Ports . . . . .	8-47
Setting Information for Copying . . . . .	8-47
Copying when iSCSI Target Creation . . . . .	8-48
Copying when iSCSI Target Editing . . . . .	8-48
<b>9 Performance Monitor . . . . .</b>	<b>9-1</b>
Performance Monitor overview . . . . .	9-2
Performance Monitor operations . . . . .	9-2
Initial settings . . . . .	9-2
Optional operations . . . . .	9-3
Optimizing system performance . . . . .	9-4
Obtaining information . . . . .	9-4
Using graphic displays . . . . .	9-4
Working with the Performance Monitor Tree View . . . . .	9-7
More About Tree View Items in Performance Monitor . . . . .	9-9
Using Performance Monitor with Dynamic Provisioning . . . . .	9-13
Working with Graphing and Dynamic Provisioning . . . . .	9-14
Explanation of Displayed Items . . . . .	9-15
Displayed Items. . . . .	9-16
Determining the Ordinate Axis . . . . .	9-18
Saving Monitoring Data . . . . .	9-20
Exporting Performance Monitor Information . . . . .	9-21
Enabling Performance Measuring Items . . . . .	9-25
Working with Port Information . . . . .	9-27
Working with RAID Group, DP Pool and Logical Unit Information . . . . .	9-27
Working with Cache Information . . . . .	9-27
Working with Processor Information . . . . .	9-28
Troubleshooting Performance . . . . .	9-28
Performance Imbalance and Solutions . . . . .	9-28
Dirty Data Flush . . . . .	9-29
<b>10 SNMP Agent Support . . . . .</b>	<b>10-1</b>
SNMP Agent Support overview . . . . .	10-2
Error status. . . . .	10-3
Dual controller GET/TRAP specifications. . . . .	10-4
SNMP functions . . . . .	10-5
TRAP reporting . . . . .	10-5
Extended TRAPs . . . . .	10-6
Request processing . . . . .	10-8
Additional SNMP environment requirements . . . . .	10-9
SNMP Agent Support operations . . . . .	10-10
Managing SNMP Agent Support. . . . .	10-10
SNMP setup . . . . .	10-10
Disk array-side setup . . . . .	10-10

SNMP Manager-side setup . . . . .	10-11
Checking the connection . . . . .	10-11
Creating environmental information files . . . . .	10-11
Environment setting file . . . . .	10-11
Array name setting file . . . . .	10-14
Registering SNMP environmental information . . . . .	10-15
Referencing the SNMP environment information file . . . . .	10-17
Verifying SNMP connections . . . . .	10-17
Detecting failures . . . . .	10-19
General Notes About the SNMP Agent Support Function . . . . .	10-19
<b>11 Modular Volume Migration . . . . .</b>	<b>11-1</b>
Modular Volume Migration overview . . . . .	11-2
Environments and Requirements . . . . .	11-4
Setting up Volume Migration . . . . .	11-5
Setting Logical Units to be recognized by the host . . . . .	11-5
VxVM . . . . .	11-7
MSCS . . . . .	11-8
AIX . . . . .	11-8
Windows 2000/Window Server 2003/Windows Server 2008 . . . . .	11-8
Linux and LVM . . . . .	11-8
Windows 2000/Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2008 and Dynamic Disk . . . . .	11-8
Performance . . . . .	11-8
Using unified logical units . . . . .	11-9
Using with the Data Retention Utility . . . . .	11-11
Using with ShadowImage . . . . .	11-12
Using with Cache Partition Manager . . . . .	11-14
Concurrent Use of Dynamic Provisioning . . . . .	11-14
Modular Volume Migration operations . . . . .	11-17
Managing Modular Volume Migration . . . . .	11-18
Adding reserved logical units . . . . .	11-18
Deleting reserved logical units . . . . .	11-20
Changing copy pace . . . . .	11-23
Confirming Volume Migration Pairs . . . . .	11-24
Splitting Volume Migration pairs . . . . .	11-25
Canceling Volume Migration pairs . . . . .	11-26
Load Balancing feature . . . . .	11-27
<b>12 Data at Rest Encryption . . . . .</b>	<b>12-1</b>
Important Note: HDS Statement on AMS 2000 Data at Rest Encryption Feature and Key Management . . . . .	12-2
About Data at Rest Encryption . . . . .	12-3
Environment and Requirements . . . . .	12-5

Specifications . . . . .	12-8
Operations Example. . . . .	12-8
Introducing Data at Rest Encryption . . . . .	12-8
Adding the SEDs . . . . .	12-9
Daily operation . . . . .	12-9
Enabling or Disabling . . . . .	12-9
Back Up the Master Key . . . . .	12-11
Refresh the Authentication Keys . . . . .	12-12
Working with the Dual Controller Configuration . . . . .	12-13

A Appendix A — Logical unit expansion/reduction . . . . .	A-1
---	-----

Glossary

Index





# Preface

This document provides facilities requirements for preparing and installing Hitachi Adaptable Modular Storage (AMS) 2100, 2300, and 2500 storage systems. In this document, these storage systems are referred to collectively as the Hitachi AMS 2000 Family storage systems. If information pertains to certain members of this family, those systems are identified.

Using this document, you will be able to prepare your site for the arrival and installation of your units. To determine the total components your shipment will include, please consult your Hitachi Data Systems representative.

This preface includes the following information:

- [Document revision level](#)
- [Changes in this revision](#)
- [Product version](#)
- [Intended audience](#)
- [Document organization](#)
- [Document conventions](#)
- [Related documents](#)
- [Regulatory information](#)
- [Getting help](#)
- [Comments](#)

## Document revision level

This section provides a history of the revision changes to this document.

Revision	Date	Description
MK-97DF8148-P	July 2008	Preliminary Release
MK-97DF8148-00	October 2008	Revision 00, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-P
MK-97DF8148-01	December 2008	Revision 01, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-00
MK-97DF8148-02	March 2009	Revision 02, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-01
MK-97DF8148-03	April 2009	Revision 03, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-02
MK-97DF8148-04	May 2009	Revision 04, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-03
MK-97DF8148-05	August 2009	Revision 05, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-04
MK-97DF8148-06	November 2009	Revision 06, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-05
MK-97DF8148-07	April 2010	Revision 07, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-06
MK-97DF8148-08	June 2010	Revision 08, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-07
MK-97DF8148-09	August 2010	Revision 09, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-08
MK-97DF8148-10	September 2010	Revision 10, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-09
MK-97DF8148-11	November 2010	Revision 11, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-10
MK-97DF8148-12	December 2010	Revision 12, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-11
MK-97DF8148-13	February 2011	Revision 13, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-12
MK-97DF8148-14	May 2011	Revision 14, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-13
MK-97DF8148-15	July 2011	Revision 15, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-14
MK-97DF8148-16	September 2011	Revision 16, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-15
MK-97DF8148-17	March 2012	Revision 17, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-16
MK-97DF8148-18	June 2012	Revision 18, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-17
MK-97DF8148-19	December 2012	Revision 19, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-18
MK-97DF8148-20	May 2013	Revision 20, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-19

Revision	Date	Description
MK-97DF8148-21	July 2013	Revision 21, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-20
MK-97DF8148-22	December 2013	Revision 22, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-21
MK-97DF8148-23	February 2016	Revision 23, supersedes and replaces MK-97DF8148-22

## Changes in this revision

- In [Table 10-4 on page 10-7](#), added item number 34.

## Product version

This document applies to Hitachi Storage Navigator Modular 2 V13.30 and AMS firmware version 08D3/A or later.

## Intended audience

This document is intended for personnel who will schedule, manage, and perform the tasks required to prepare your site for installing a Hitachi AMS 2000 Family storage systems.

## Document organization

The following table provides an overview of the contents and organization of this document. Click the [chapter title](#) in the first column to go to that chapter. The first page of every chapter or appendix contains a brief list of the contents of that section of the manual, with links to the pages where the information is located.

Chapter/Appendix Title	Description
<a href="#">Chapter 1, Introduction</a>	Describes features in the Navigator 2 environment.
<a href="#">Chapter 2, Installing and enabling storage features</a>	Describes installing and enabling storage features.
<a href="#">Chapter 3, Account Authentication</a>	Describes how to create permissions for selected users who will be authenticated when they attempt to access the storage system.
<a href="#">Chapter 4, Audit Logging</a>	Describes how the Audit Log facility works and where to retrieve messages sent to the log.
<a href="#">Chapter 5, Cache Partition Manager</a>	Describes how to segment the storage system into discrete partitions, and provides allowable increments.
<a href="#">Chapter 6, Cache Residency Manager</a>	Describes how Cache Residency Manager works.
<a href="#">Chapter 7, Data Retention Utility</a>	Describes how to retain data on the storage system and to create settings that determine how much data will be retained and to specify a retention interval.

Chapter/Appendix Title	Description
Chapter 8, LUN Manager	Describes how to work logical unit numbers on the storage system.
Chapter 9, Performance Monitor	Describes how to monitor activity and responsiveness on the storage system using the Performance Monitor tool.
Chapter 10, SNMP Agent Support	Describes how to implement Simple Network Management Protocol on the storage system and to work with SNMP Set and Get commands.
Chapter 11, Modular Volume Migration	Describes how to work with Modular Volume Migration on the storage system.
Chapter 12, Data at Rest Encryption	Describes how to use the Data at Rest and Self-Encrypting Drives features on the storage system.
Appendix A — Logical unit expansion/reduction	Describes how to work with logical unit expansion and reduction on the storage system.

## Convention for storage capacity values

Physical storage capacity values (e.g., disk drive capacity) are calculated based on the following values:




Physical capacity unit	Value
1 KB	1,000 bytes
1 MB	1,000 KB or 1,000 <sup>2</sup> bytes
1 GB	1,000 MB or 1,000 <sup>3</sup> bytes
1 TB	1,000 GB or 1,000 <sup>4</sup> bytes
1 PB	1,000 TB or 1,000 <sup>5</sup> bytes
1 EB	1,000 PB or 1,000 <sup>6</sup> bytes

Logical storage capacity values (e.g., logical device capacity) are calculated based on the following values:

Logical capacity unit	Value
1 block	512 bytes
1 KB	1,024 (2 <sup>10</sup> ) bytes
1 MB	1,024 KB or 1024 <sup>2</sup> bytes
1 GB	1,024 MB or 1024 <sup>3</sup> bytes
1 TB	1,024 GB or 1024 <sup>4</sup> bytes
1 PB	1,024 TB or 1024 <sup>5</sup> bytes
1 EB	1,024 PB or 1024 <sup>6</sup> bytes

## Document conventions

This document uses the following symbols to draw attention to important safety and operational information.

Symbol	Meaning	Description
	Tip	Tips provide helpful information, guidelines, or suggestions for performing tasks more effectively.
	Note	Notes emphasize or supplement important points of the main text.
	Caution	Cautions indicate that failure to take a specified action could result in damage to the software or hardware.

The following typographic conventions are used in this document.

Convention	Description
<b>Bold</b>	Indicates text on a window, other than the window title, including menus, menu options, buttons, fields, and labels. Example: Click <b>OK</b> .
<i>Italic</i>	Indicates a variable, which is a placeholder for actual text provided by the user or system. Example: copy <i>source-file target-file</i> Angled brackets (< >) are also used to indicate variables.
screen/code	Indicates text that is displayed on screen or entered by the user. Example: # pairdisplay -g oradb
< > angled brackets	Indicates a variable, which is a placeholder for actual text provided by the user or system. Example: # pairdisplay -g <group>  Italic font is also used to indicate variables.
[ ] square brackets	Indicates optional values. Example: [ a   b ] indicates that you can choose a, b, or nothing.
{ } braces	Indicates required or expected values. Example: { a   b } indicates that you must choose either a or b.
vertical bar	Indicates that you have a choice between two or more options or arguments. Examples: [ a   b ] indicates that you can choose a, b, or nothing. { a   b } indicates that you must choose either a or b.
underline	Indicates the default value. Example: [ <u>a</u>   b ]

## Accessing product documentation

The AMS 2000 Family user documentation is available on the Hitachi Data Systems Portal: <https://portal.hds.com>. Please check this site for the most current documentation, including important updates that may have been made after the release of the product.

This documentation set consists of the following documents.

### Release notes

- Adaptable Modular Storage System Release Notes
- Storage Navigator Modular 2 Release Notes




---

Please read the release notes before installing and using this product. They may contain requirements and restrictions not fully described in this document, along with updates and corrections to this document.

---

## Installation and getting started

The following documents provide instructions for installing an AMS 2000 Family storage system. They include rack information, safety information, site-preparation instructions, getting-started guides for experienced users, and host connectivity information. The symbol ? identifies documents that contain initial configuration information about Hitachi AMS 2000 Family storage systems.

☞ **AMS2100/2300 Getting Started Guide**, MK-98DF8152

Provides quick-start instructions for getting an AMS 2100 or AMS 2300 storage system up and running as quickly as possible.

☞ **AMS2500 Getting Started Guide**, MK-97DF8032

Provides quick-start instructions for getting an AMS 2500 storage system up and running as quickly as possible.

**AMS 2000 Family Site Preparation Guide**, MK-98DF8149

Contains initial site planning and pre-installation information for AMS 2000 Family storage systems, expansion units, and high-density expansion units. This document also covers safety precautions, rack information, and product specifications.

**AMS 2000 Family Fibre Channel Host Installation Guide**,  
MK-08DF8189

Describes how to prepare Hitachi AMS 2000 Family Fibre Channel storage systems for use with host servers running supported operating systems.

**AMS 2000 Family iSCSI Host Installation Guide**, MK-08DF8188

Describes how to prepare Hitachi AMS 2000 Family iSCSI storage systems for use with host servers running supported operating systems.

## Storage and replication features

The following documents describe how to use Storage Navigator Modular 2 (Navigator 2) to perform storage and replication activities.

**Storage Navigator 2 Advanced Settings User's Guide**, MK-97DF8039

Contains advanced information about launching and using Navigator 2 in various operating systems, IP addresses and port numbers, server certificates and private keys, boot and restore options, outputting configuration information to a file, and collecting diagnostic information.

**Storage Navigator Modular 2 User's Guide, MK-99DF8208**

Describes how to use Navigator 2 to configure and manage storage on an AMS 2000 Family storage system.

**AMS 2000 Family Dynamic Provisioning Configuration Guide, MK-09DF8201**

Describes how to use virtual storage capabilities to simplify storage additions and administration.

**Storage Navigator 2 Storage Features Reference Guide for AMS, MK-97DF8148 — this document**

Contains concepts, preparation, and specifications for Account Authentication, Audit Logging, Cache Partition Manager, Cache Residency Manager, Data Retention Utility, LUN Manager, Performance Monitor, SNMP Agent, and Modular Volume Migration.

**AMS 2000 Family Copy-on-write SnapShot User Guide, MK-97DF8124**

Describes how to create point-in-time copies of data volumes in AMS 2100, AMS 2300, and AMS 2500 storage systems, without impacting host service and performance levels. Snapshot copies are fully read/write compatible with other hosts and can be used for rapid data restores, application testing and development, data mining and warehousing, and nondisruptive backup and maintenance procedures.

**AMS 2000 Family ShadowImage In-system Replication User Guide, MK-97DF8129**

Describes how to perform high-speed nondisruptive local mirroring to create a copy of mission-critical data in AMS 2100, AMS 2300, and AMS 2500 storage systems. ShadowImage keeps data RAID-protected and fully recoverable, without affecting service or performance levels. Replicated data volumes can be split from host applications and used for system backups, application testing, and data mining applications while business continues to operate at full capacity.

**AMS 2000 Family TrueCopy Remote Replication User Guide, MK-97DF8052**

Describes how to create and maintain multiple duplicate copies of user data across multiple AMS 2000 Family storage systems to enhance your disaster recovery strategy.

**AMS 2000 Family TrueCopy Extended Distance User Guide,**  
MK-97DF8054

Describes how to perform bi-directional remote data protection that copies data over any distance without interrupting applications, and provides failover and recovery capabilities.

**AMS 2000 Data Retention Utility User's Guide,** MK-97DF8019

Describes how to lock disk volumes as read-only for a certain period of time to ensure authorized-only access and facilitate immutable, tamper-proof record retention for storage-compliant environments. After data is written, it can be retrieved and read only by authorized applications or users, and cannot be changed or deleted during the specified retention period.

**Storage Navigator Modular 2 online help**

Provides topic and context-sensitive help information accessed through the Navigator 2 software.

**Hardware maintenance and operation**

The following documents describe how to operate, maintain, and administer an AMS 2000 Family storage system. They also provide a wide range of technical information and specifications for the AMS 2000 Family storage systems. The symbol ? identifies documents that contain initial configuration information about Hitachi AMS 2000 Family storage systems.

☞ **AMS 2100/2300 Storage System Hardware Guide,** MK-97DF8010

Provides detailed information about installing, configuring, and maintaining AMS 2100 and 2300 storage systems.

☞ **AMS 2500 Storage System Hardware Guide,** MK-97DF8007

Provides detailed information about installing, configuring, and maintaining an AMS 2500 storage system.

☞ **AMS 2000 Family Storage System Reference Guide,** MK-97DF8008

Contains specifications and technical information about power cables, system parameters, interfaces, logical blocks, RAID levels and configurations, and regulatory information about AMS 2100, AMS 2300, and AMS 2500 storage systems. This document also contains remote adapter specifications and regulatory information.

**AMS 2000 Family Storage System Service and Upgrade Guide,**  
MK-97DF8009

Provides information about servicing and upgrading AMS 2100, AMS 2300, and AMS 2500 storage systems.

**AMS 2000 Family Power Savings User Guide,** MK-97DF8045

Describes how to spin down volumes in selected RAID groups when they are not being accessed by business applications to decrease energy consumption and significantly reduce the cost of storing and delivering information.

## **Command and Control (CCI)**

The following documents describe how to install the Hitachi AMS 2000 Family Command Control Interface (CCI) and use it to perform TrueCopy and ShadowImage operations.

**AMS 2000 Family Command Control Interface (CCI) Installation Guide,** MK-97DF8122

Describes how to install CCI software on open-system hosts.

**AMS 2000 Family Command Control Interface (CCI) Reference Guide,** MK-97DF8121

Contains reference, troubleshooting, and maintenance information related to CCI operations on AMS 2100, AMS 2300, and AMS 2500 storage systems.

**AMS 2000 Family Command Control Interface (CCI) User's Guide,**  
MK-97DF8123

Describes how to use CCI to perform TrueCopy and ShadowImage operations on AMS 2100, AMS 2300, and AMS 2500 storage systems.

## **Command Line Interface (CLI)**

The following documents describe how to use Hitachi Storage Navigator Modular 2 to perform management and replication activities from a command line.

**Storage Navigator Modular 2 Command Line Interface (CLI) Unified Reference Guide,** MK-97DF8089

Describes how to interact with all Navigator 2 bundled and optional software modules by typing commands at a command line.

**Storage Navigator 2 Command Line Interface Replication Reference Guide for AMS,** MK-97DF8153

Describes how to interact with Navigator 2 to perform replication activities by typing commands at a command line.

## **Dynamic Replicator documentation**

The following documents describe how to install, configure, and use Hitachi Dynamic Replicator to provide AMS Family storage systems with continuous data protection, remote replication, and application failover in a single, easy-to-deploy and manage platform.

**Dynamic Replicator - Scout Release Notes, RN-99DF8211**

**Dynamic Replicator - Scout Host Administration Guide, MK-98DF8212**

**Dynamic Replicator - Scout Installation and Configuration Guide, MK-98DF8213**

**Dynamic Replicator - Scout Quick Start Guide, MK-98DF8214**

**Dynamic Replicator - Scout Host Troubleshooting Guide, MK-98DF8215**

**Dynamic Replicator DR-Scout ICAT Utility Guide, MK-98DF8216**

**Dynamic Replicator - Scout RX Server Deployment Guide, MK-98DF8217**

**Dynamic Replicator VX Solution for Oracle (Solaris), MK-98DF8218**

**Dynamic Replicator - Scout Solution for SharePoint 2007, MK-98DF8219**

**Dynamic Replicator - Scout Solution for MySQL (Windows), MK-98DF8220**

**Protecting Citrix XenServer Using Hitachi Dynamic Replicator - Scout, MK-98DF8221**

**Dynamic Replicator Quick Install/Upgrade Guide, MK-98DF8222**

**Dynamic Replicator - Scout Protecting MS SQL Server, MK-98DF8223**

**Dynamic Replicator - Scout - Protecting Microsoft Exchange Server, MK-98DF8224**

**Dynamic Replicator - Scout File Server Solution, MK-98DF8225**

**Dynamic Replicator - Scout ESX - Protecting ESX Server (RCLI), MK-99DF8226**

## Getting help

If you need to contact the Hitachi Data Systems support center, please provide as much information about the problem as possible, including:

- The circumstances surrounding the error or failure.
- The exact content of any messages displayed on the host system(s).
- The exact content of any messages displayed on Storage Navigator Modular 2.
- The Storage Navigator Modular 2 configuration information. This information is used by service personnel for troubleshooting purposes.

The Hitachi Data Systems customer support staff is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week. If you need technical support, please log on to the Hitachi Data Systems Portal for contact information: <https://portal.hds.com>

## Comments

Please send us your comments on this document:

[doc.comments@hds.com](mailto:doc.comments@hds.com).

Include the document title, number, and revision, and refer to specific section and paragraph whenever possible.

***Thank you!*** (All comments become the property of Hitachi Data Systems.)

# Introduction

This chapter provides information on AMS 2000 Family storage features available from Hitachi Storage Navigator Modular 2 Graphical User Interface (GUI) and covers the following topics:

- ❑ [Account Authentication](#)
- ❑ [Audit Logging](#)
- ❑ [Cache Partition Manager](#)
- ❑ [Cache Residency Manager](#)
- ❑ [Data Retention Utility](#)
- ❑ [LUN Manager](#)
- ❑ [Performance Monitor](#)
- ❑ [SNMP Agent Support](#)
- ❑ [Modular Volume Migration](#)
- ❑ [Usage guidelines](#)
- ❑ [Advanced Settings Java Applet](#)

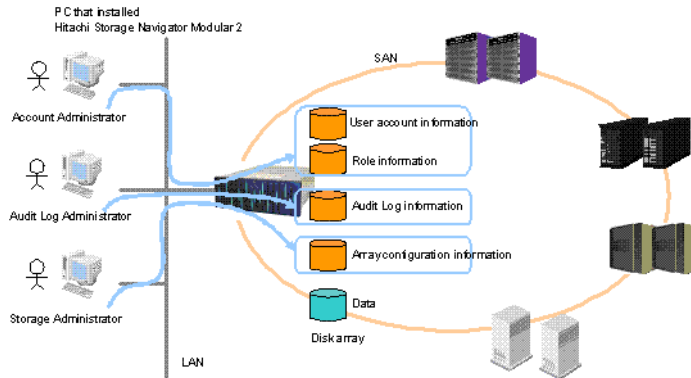


**NOTE:** Some storage features may require the Java Runtime Environment (JRE) on your computer.

---

# Account Authentication

Account Authentication is a feature that ensures the security of the disk array by protecting it from attacks such as illegal break-in and illegal operation from the management LAN interface. This feature protects the information on the disk array configuration and user data. It authenticates users who access the disk array, providing access (for monitoring and configuration) from the disk array resources based on the account information that is registered on the disk array.



**Figure 1-1: Account Authentication Outline**

To ensure that unauthorized users cannot access the disk array, Account Authentication consists of user management, user authentication, and access control (see [Figure on page 1-3](#)). Users are authenticated based on the account information registered with the array.

You can manage, authenticate, and control the access of users.

## User management

This function registers the user account information in the disk array (for example, ID, password, role). The user must register their account information.

## User authentication

This function authenticates users (based on the account information) when they access or log in the disk array, and restricts their permissions appropriately.

## Access control

This function controls access to the disk array resources based on the role type assigned to the account.

## Migrating from Password Protection to Account Authentication

There are some important similarities and differences to note if you have been using the Password Protection security feature to protect other AMS or SMS storage systems and are now migrating to the Account Authentication security feature.



**NOTE:** Maintain a secure environment and change the “built-in” default “root” password after logging in for the first time under Account Authentication.

---

### Key similarities

- Account Authentication restricts access at the storage system (array) level. As with
- Password Protection, user names and passwords must be configured on the secured array itself
- The “built-in” or default root user account should only be used to create user names and passwords.
- Assigning the same Navigator 2 login information (user name and password) when creating an account under Account Authentication provides seamless access to both Navigator 2 and the secured array.
- Enabling or disabling the Account Authentication feature immediately puts the user back into the main Navigator 2 Array List window. If enabled on a specific array, the first-time login requires the “built-in” default account information to access the array and create accounts

### Key differences

- Account Authentication provides role-based permissions for user accounts. Account or security administrators should consider the role(s) or account types to be assigned to a user. For more information about account types and role assignments, see [Account types on page 3-4](#).
- Password Protection and Account Authentication are mutually exclusive and cannot be enabled at the same time for a given array
- User name and password information is not inherited if you switch from Password Protection to Account Authentication. New accounts and role assignments must be created under Account Authentication

## Advanced Security Mode

The Advanced Security Mode improves the strength of the password encryption registered in the array. By enabling Advanced Security Mode, the password is encrypted in the next-generation method which has 128-bit strength.

**Table 1-1: Advanced Security Mode Specifications**

Feature	Description	Specification
Advanced Security Mode	You can select the strength of the encryption when you register the password in the array.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Selection scope:</b> enable or disable (default)</li><li>• <b>Authority to operate:</b> built-in account only</li><li>• <b>Encryption type:</b> The encryption is executed using SHA256 when it is enabled and MD5 when it is disabled.</li></ul>

You need a built-in account to perform Advanced Security Mode operations. The mode can be set only when the storage system runs firmware version 0890/A or greater and the management PC runs Navigator 2 version 9.00 or greater.

By changing the Advanced Security Mode, the storage system removes or initializes the following information. As necessary, check the information in advance, and set it again after changing the Advanced Security Mode.

All session during login (accounts during login are logged out).

All public accounts registered in the array.

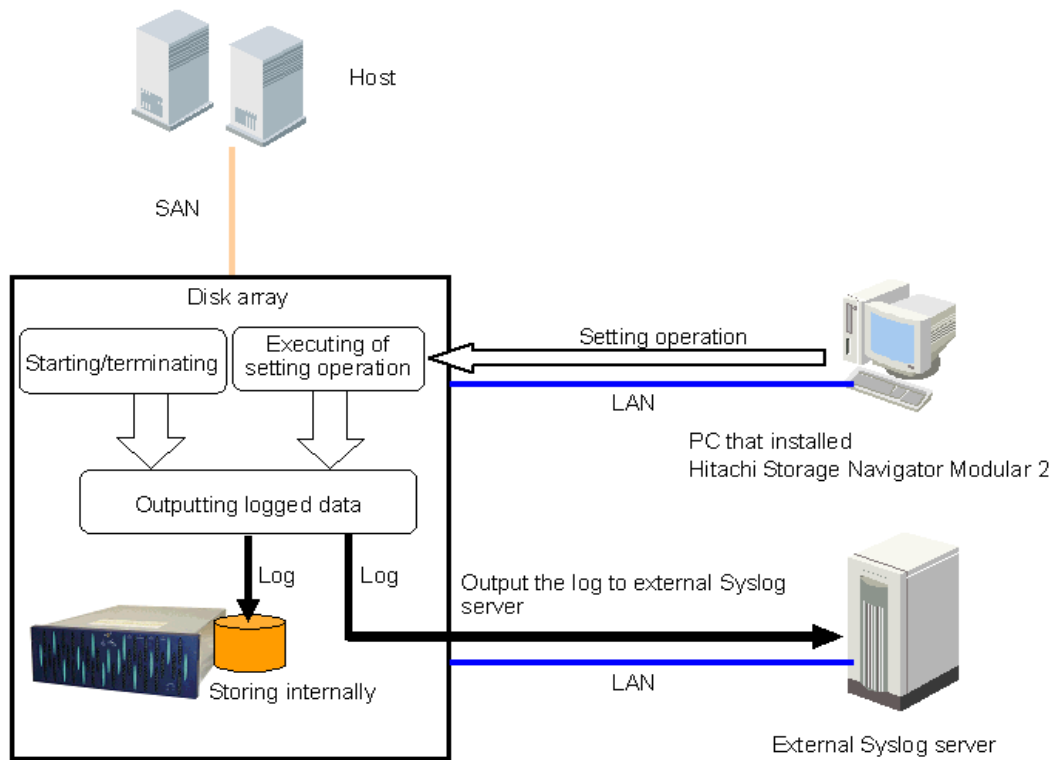
Role and password of the built-in account.

## Audit Logging

Audit Logging audits and defers inappropriate disk array actions by recording the user, the operation, the location, and then creating a log (see [Figure 1-2](#)). The audit log is sent to the Syslog server using port 514 using the User Datagram Protocol (UDP). The log can also be saved inside the disk array as backup information in case a network or the Syslog server fails.

A log is sent when:

- An operation occurs outside the disk array
- Starting and terminating the disk array



**Figure 1-2: Audit Logging Example**

For example, if user A accesses the disk array with Navigator 2 and creates a RAID group when setting an operation outside the disk array, the array creates a log where at x hours y minutes z seconds on m month d day in 2008, user A succeeded (or failed) creating a RAID group from a computer where Navigator 2 was operating and sends the log to the external Syslog server.

If the disk array enters the Ready status at the time of a status change (system event) inside the array, the array creates a log where "at x hours y minutes z seconds on m month d day in 2008, success of Subsystem Ready" and sends the log to the Syslog server (who, from, and where are not created because the status change is internal).

## Cache Partition Manager

The cache memory on a disk array is a gateway for receiving/sending data from/to a host. In the array, the cache memory is divided into a system control area and a user data area. When sending and receiving data, the user data area is used.

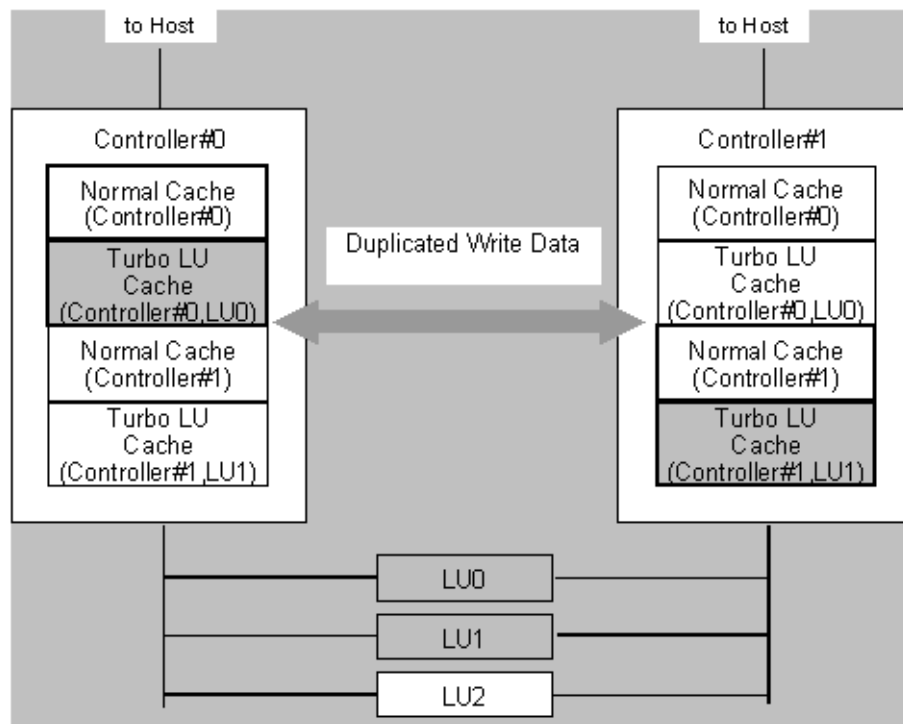
The Cache Partition Manager divides the array user data area more finely, into partitions; then, a logical unit defined in the array is assigned to the partition.

A user can specify the partition and segment size (size of a data management unit). You can optimize the data reception/sending from/to a host by assigning the most suitable partition to a logical unit according to the data received from a host.

## Cache Residency Manager

The Cache Residency Manager ensures that all the data in a logical unit is stored in cache memory. All read/write commands to the logical unit can be executed at a 100% cache hit rate without accessing the drive. Since a latency period is not needed to access the disk drive, the throughput is improved when this function is applied to a logical unit that contains data accessed frequently.

As shown in [Figure 1-3 on page 1-6](#), part of the cache memory installed in the controller is used for the Cache Residency Manager. Cache memory utilizes a battery backup on both controllers, and the data is duplicated on each controller in case of a power failure, cache package failure, and so on.



**Figure 1-3: Cache Residency Manager Example**

## Data Retention Utility

The Data Retention Utility, which requires a separate license purchase, protects your disk array data and LUNs from input/output (I/O) operations performed by an open-systems hosts. It may help you comply to Federal mandates that certain data (files) be protected, for example:

- Emails/Email server data

- Health Records
- Banking transactions
- Brokerage transactions

Data Retention lets you assign an access attribute to each logical volume. You can use a logical volume as a read-only volume, and protect it from read and write operations.



**NOTE:** Logical volumes are sometimes referred to as logical devices (LDEVs). Also, logical volumes to be accessed by open-systems hosts are sometimes referred to as logical units or LUs.

---

Contact your sales representative for license information.

## LUN Manager

LUN Manager, which is operated through Storage Navigator Modular 2, manages access paths between hosts and logical units, for each port in your array. Depending on your array model, LUN Manager can manage either fibre channel- (FC) or iSCSI-based host connections.

- For Fibre Channel, LUN Manager lets you set the option (host connection mode), Logical Unit (LU), and WWN (World Wide Name) parameters for each connected host so you can connect multiple hosts to the same port.
- For iSCSI, when setting up host connections in LUN Manager, for each host you specify the settings for Host Connection Mode and iSCSI Name. Each host can access a logical unit simulating a dedicated port to the host even if that host shares the port with other hosts.

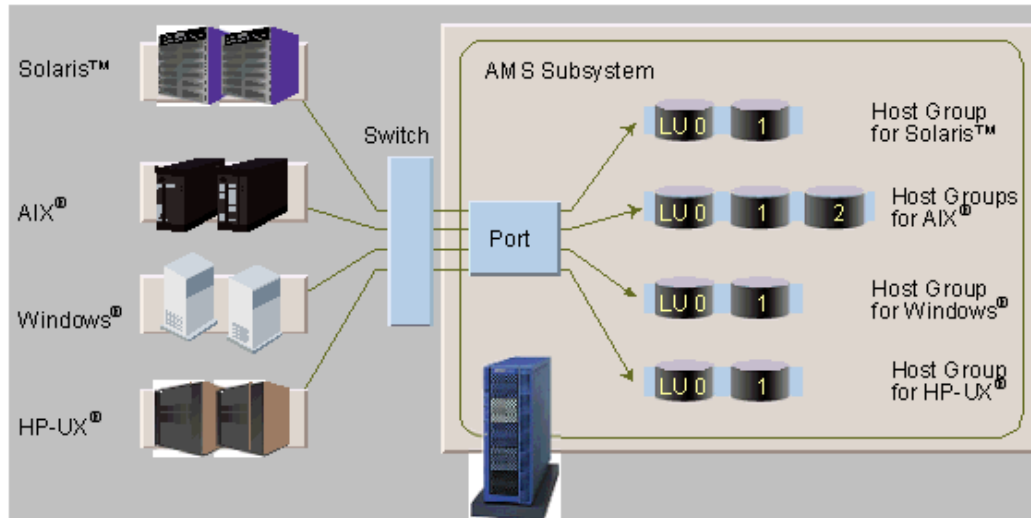
With LUN Manager, each host can access a logical unit as if it was a dedicated port to the host, even if that host shares the port with other hosts.



**NOTE:** Although additional hosts can be connected to one port, this increases traffic on the port. When using LUN Manager, design the system configuration so that you evenly distribute traffic at the port, controller, and disk drive.

---

[Figure 1-4](#) shows a port being shared by multiple host systems (setting access paths between hosts and logical units for Fibre Channel.)



**Figure 1-4: LUN Manager Fibre Channel Example**

## Fibre Channel features

Table 1-2 lists the LUN Manager features for fibre channel.

**Table 1-2: LUN Manager Features for Fibre Channel**

Feature	Description
Prevents illegal access from other hosts.	Logical units are grouped, and each group is registered in a port. LUN Manager specifies which host may access which logical unit, by assigning hosts and logical units to each host group.
The host connection mode can be set for each host connected.	The host connection mode can be set for each host group.
The logical unit mapping can be set for each connected host.	Logical unit numbers (H-LUN) recognized by a host can be assigned to each host group. Hosts that require LU0 can be connected to the same port.

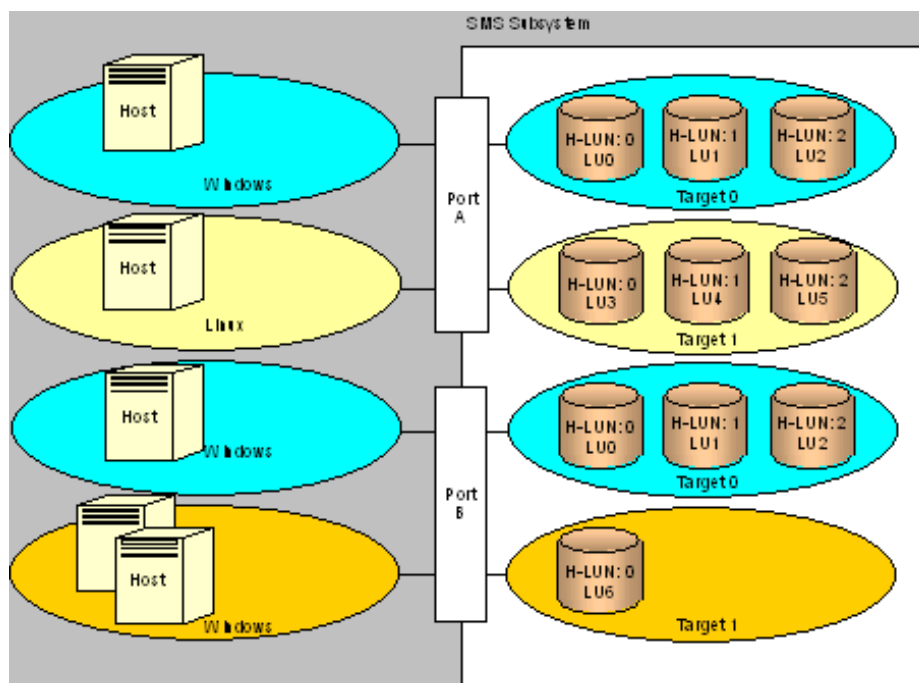
## iSCSI features

Table 1-3 lists the LUN Manager features for iSCSI.

**Table 1-3: LUN Manager Features for iSCSI**

Feature	Description
Connecting Hosts to Array Ports	<p>You can connect more than one host to an array port. On an array with two ports, port A can connect to a Windows<sup>®</sup> and Solaris<sup>™</sup> host, and port B can connect to another Windows<sup>®</sup>, AIX<sup>®</sup>, or HP-UX<sup>®</sup> host.</p> <p>When setting up host connections, specify the Host Connection Mode and iSCSI Name for each host. Each host can access a logical unit simulating a dedicated port to the host even if that host shares the port with other hosts</p>
Mapping Logical Units to Hosts	You can map or assign your array logical units to the hosts on your network. You can share or restrict logical unit access among hosts.
Network Security	You can enable or disable Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP), a security protocol that requires users to enter a secret for access.

Figure 1-5 shows how multiple hosts on an iSCSI network can share ports on an array. Note that the volumes are grouped into targets. Each host is associated with one target that can contain one or more volumes. Hosts can share targets so that the hosts have access to the same volumes.



**Figure 1-5: Targets (Volume Groups) Assigned to Hosts**

## iSCSI protocol

iSCSI is a network protocol standard that allows the SCSI protocol to be used over Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) networks. Technically speaking, iSCSI is a transport-layer protocol in the SCSI-3 specifications framework. Other protocols in the transport layer include SCSI Parallel Interface (SPI), Serial Attached SCSI (SAS), and fibre channel.

For more information about iSCSI, refer to the *Hitachi iSCSI Resource and Planning Guide (MK-97DF8105)*.

## iSCSI network configuration

iSCSI makes it possible to build an IP-SAN by connecting hosts and arrays at a low cost. However, iSCSI increases the input/output (I/O) workload of the network and array. When using iSCSI, configure the network so that the workload among the network, port, controller, and drive is properly distributed.

Even though the Local Area Network (LAN) switches and Network Interface Cards (NICs) are the same, there are differences when you use iSCSI, particularly regarding the LAN connection. Note the following:

- iSCSI uses most of the Ethernet bandwidth, and can degrade the iSCSI traffic and LAN performance. Therefore, separate the iSCSI IP-SAN and the office LAN.
- Host I/O load affects iSCSI response time. The more I/O traffic, the lower the iSCSI performance.
- You must have a failover path between the host and the iSCSI, to update the firmware without stopping the system.

## Performance Monitor

Performance Monitor obtains disk array performance and resource information ([Chapter 1, Performance Monitor Example](#)). When a problem such as slow response occurs in a host, the system administrator can quickly determine the source of the difficulty by using Performance Monitor.

The resource use, such as loads on the disks and ports, can be measured and displayed with line graphs. The graphs appear after the data is collected and after you make a choice from that data. This data can be output to a comma-separated value (CSV) file.

When an issue such as a slow response occurs in a host, the system administrator can quickly determine the source of the problem by using Performance Monitor. Figure 1-6 shows a Performance Monitor example.

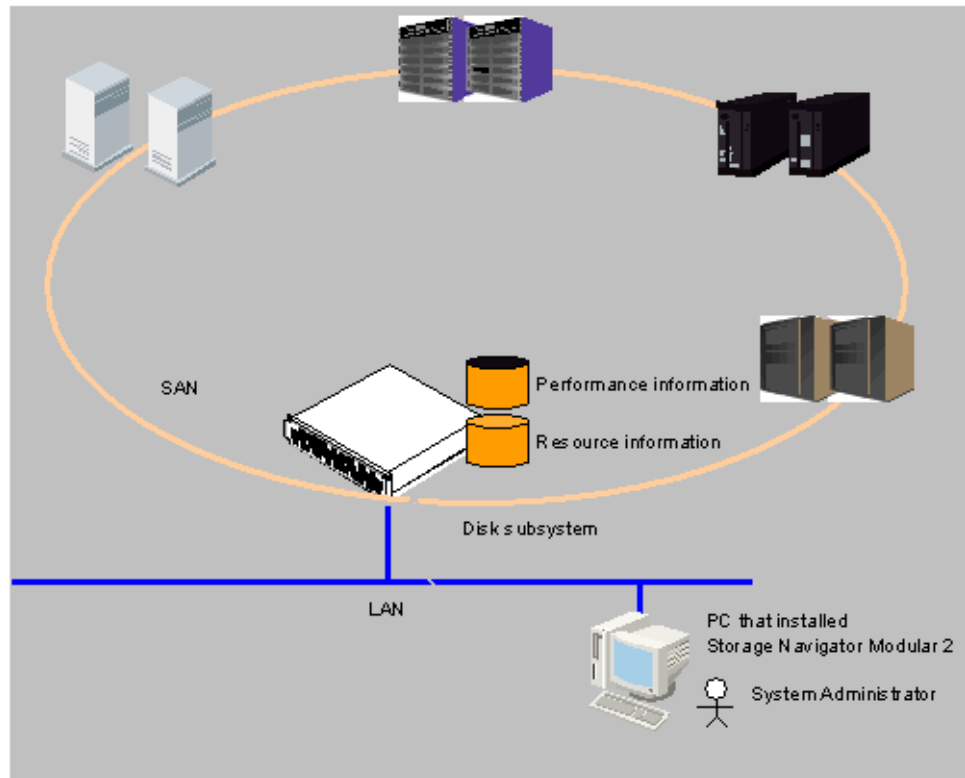


Figure 1-6: Performance Monitor Example

## SNMP Agent Support

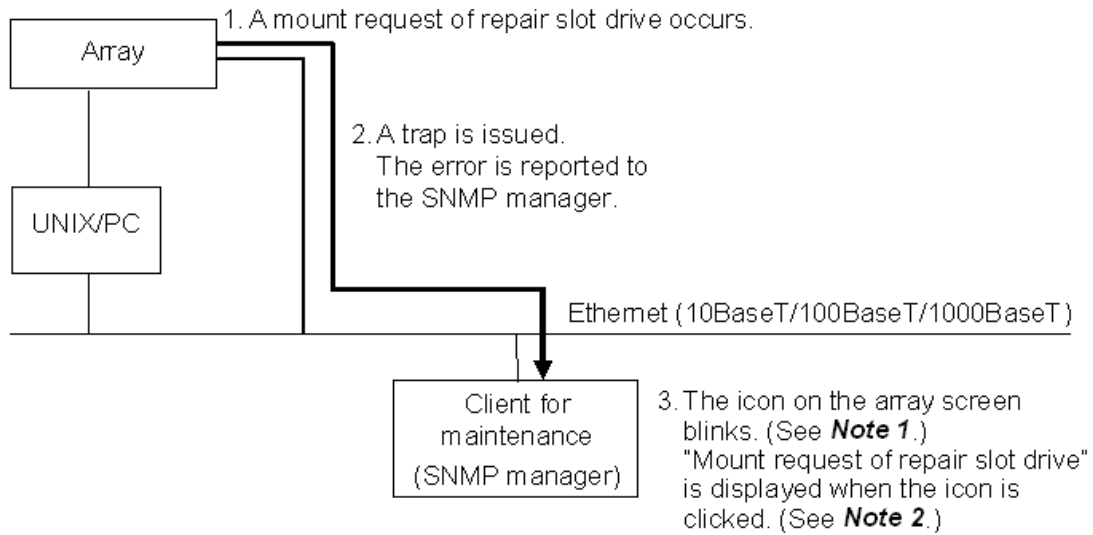
The SNMP Agent Support feature reports failures in the workstation for network monitoring to a properly configured SNMP manager application.

Command operating status (for example, number of commands received, number of cache hits, etc.) of the disk array is reported. This information can be used for performance tuning, since the command operating status, depending on the type of access from the host, can be referred to this function.

To use the SNMP Agent Support, you must have a LAN facility and a workstation in which the SNMP manager application (hereafter called SNMP manager) is installed.

## Trap-issuing processing

A trap-issuing event in the disk array causes the array to issue a trap to the SNMP manager asynchronously and report the error once (see [Figure 1-7](#)).



**Figure 1-7: Drive Blockade and Trap Issue Example**

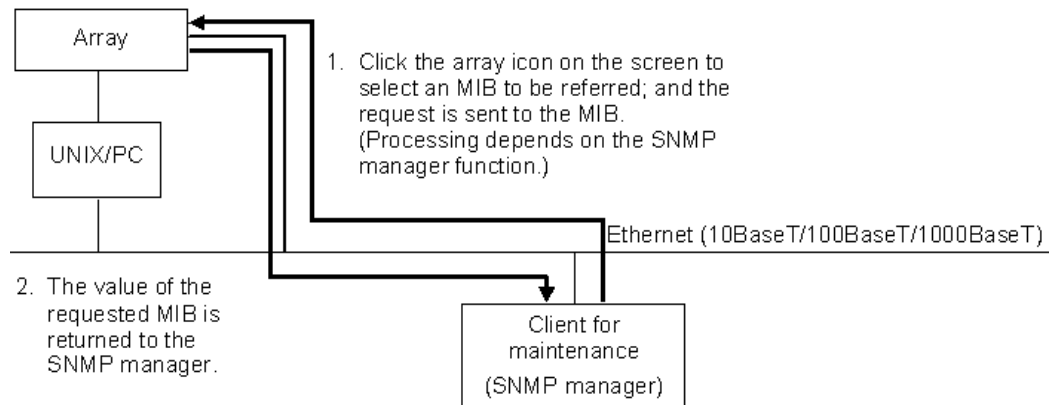
The trap indicates an error and the relevant regressed site only. The trap does not identify its exact location, for example, the drive number.



**NOTES:** The action taken at the time the trap is received, and the display operation and specification of the trap codes depends on the specification of the SNMP manager. The display operation and the display specification of the trap codes depend on the specification of the SNMP manager used.

## Request processing

This process returns the value of the Message Information Block (MIB) that the SNMP manager requested (Figure 1-8).



3. The value of the requested MIB is displayed on the screen.

**(Note 1)**

Example 1: Information specific to the device is displayed as shown below.

```
dfSystemProductName = HITACHI DF800F
dfSystemMicroRevision = 1811
```

Example 2: Information on the regressed portion is displayed (no error detected) as shown below.

```
dfRegressionStatus = 0
```

Example 3: Number of read command reception is graphically displayed as shown below. (Displays can be requested twice or more times at regular intervals.)

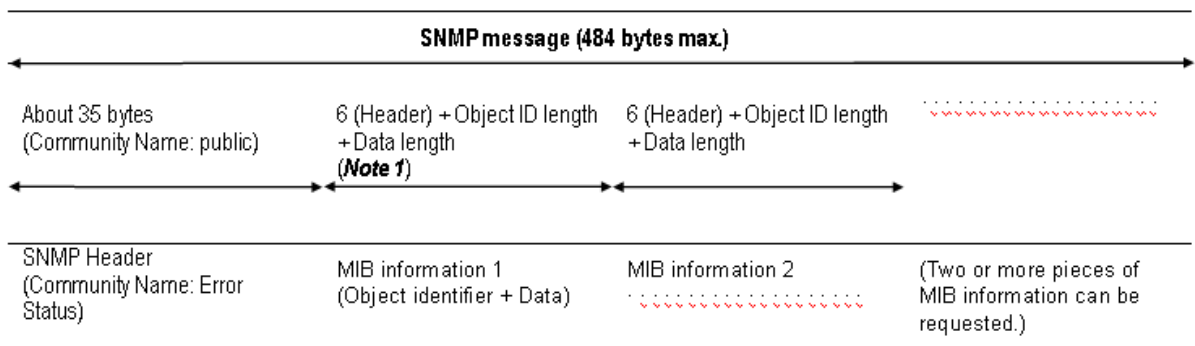


**Note 1:** The display specification of MIB depends on the specification of the SNMP manager used.

**Figure 1-8: Request Processing Example**

The regressed portion does not indicate the exact error location (for example, drive number). If the interval set for obtaining the MIB information is too short, the host command processing performance of the array can be affected.

The disk array cannot send/receive SNMP messages larger than 484 bytes, and in these cases, the message "tooBig" appears. Refer to [Figure 1-9 on page 1-14](#) for more details on message specifications.



**Figure 1-9: SNMP Message Management**



**NOTE:** The action that occurs when a trap is received depends on the specifications of the SNMP manager being used. MIB information 1 becomes 6+8+10 = 24 bytes long. Be aware that header lengths vary with the data length, as shown in [Table 1-4](#).

**Table 1-4: SNMP Data Length vs. Header Size**

Data Length (Bytes)	Header Size (Bytes)
0 to 115	6
116 to 127	7
128 to 242	8
243 to 255	9
256+	10

## Modular Volume Migration

Modular Volume Migration copies logical unit data to a logical unit in the other RAID group within the array. The host can continue the Read/Write operation even though data has migrated to another logical unit.

Figure 1-10 shows the status of the data migrated by Modular Volume Migration.

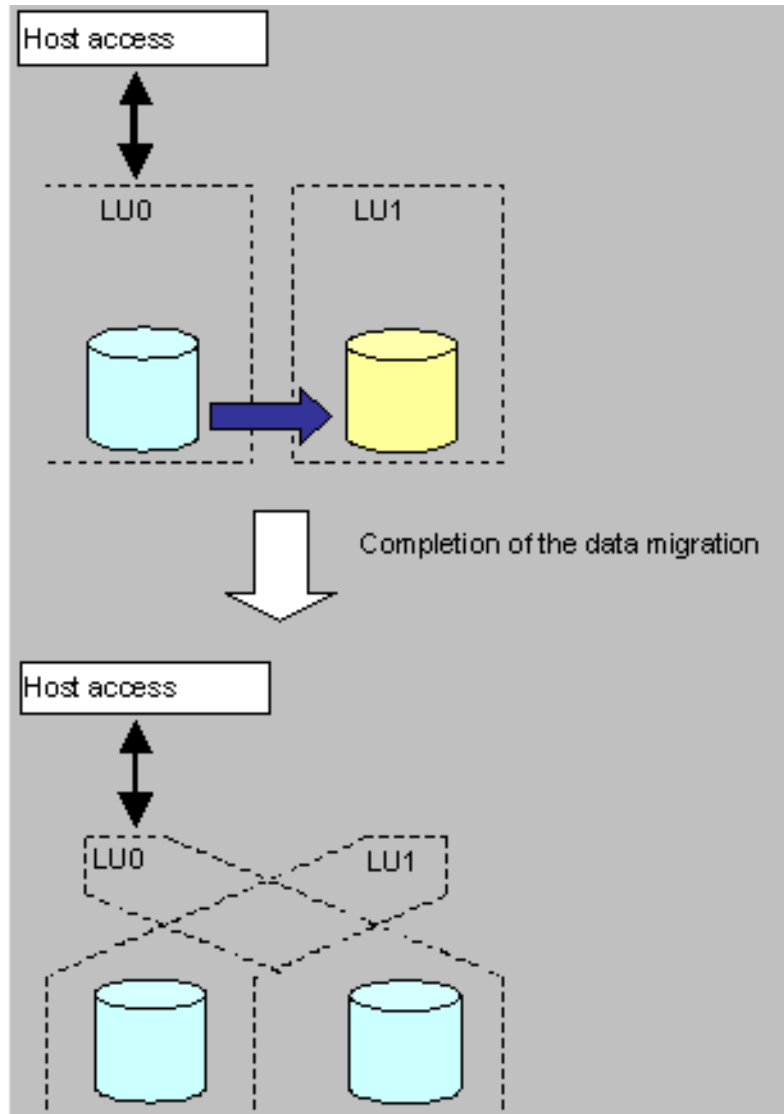
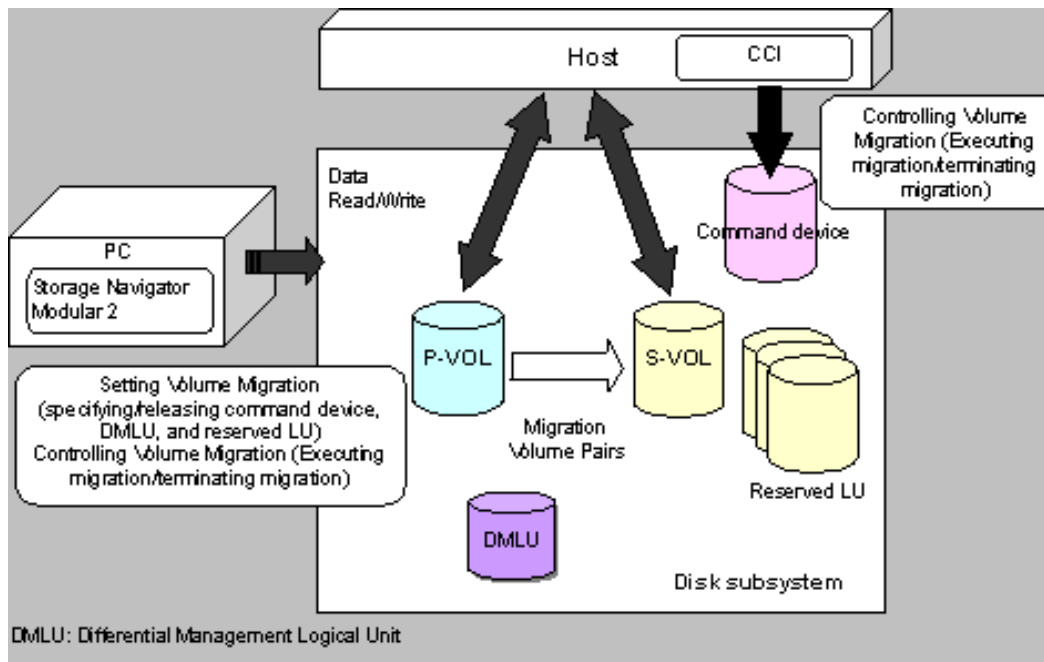


Figure 1-10: Modular Volume Migration Example

Modular Volume Migration requires a volume pair with a Primary Volume (P-VOL) which is the migration source of the data, and a Secondary Volume (S-VOL) which is the migration destination of the data, and a reserved logical unit. A typical Modular Volume Migration configuration appears in [Figure 1-11](#).



**Figure 1-11: Modular Volume Migration Components**

## Usage guidelines

Before installing, uninstalling, enabling, or disabling your features, review the guidelines in the following sections.

## Environments

Your system should be updated to the most recent firmware version and Navigator 2 software version to expose all the features currently available.

The current firmware, Navigator 2, and CCI versions applicable for this guide are as follows:

- Firmware version **18A0/A** or higher for the AMS 2100, 2300, or 2500 systems.
- Navigator 2 version **10.00/A** or higher for your computer.
- When using the command control interface (CCI), version 01-23-03/08 or higher is required for your computer.

## Requirements

- Storage feature license key(s).
- Controllers cannot be detached.
- When changing settings, reboot the array.
- When connecting the network interface, 10BASE-T, 100BASE-T, or 1000BASE-T (RJ-45 connector, twisted pair cable) is supported. The frame type must conform to Ethernet II (DIX) specifications.
- Two (2) controllers (dual configuration),
- Maximum of 128 command devices. Command devices are only required when the CCI is used for Volume Migration. The command device logical unit size must be 33 MB or more.
- Maximum of two Differential Management Logical Units (DMLUs). The DMLU size must be 10 GB or more. It is recommended that two DMLUs are set for different RAID groups.

The primary volume (P-VOL) size must equal the secondary volume (S-VOL) logical unit size.

## Requirements for installing and enabling features

Before you install or enable your features, read the following notes.

- Verify that the array is operating in a normal state. If a failure (for example a controller blockade) has occurred, installing cannot be performed.
- A key code or key file is required to install your feature. If you do not have the key file or code, you can obtain it from the download page on the HDS Support Portal, <http://support.hds.com>.

## Audit Logging

- This feature and the Syslog server to which logs are sent require compliance with the BSD syslog Protocol (RFC3164) standard.
- This feature supports a maximum of two (2) syslog servers

## Cache Partition Manager

If you plan to install Copy-on-Write Snapshot, True Copy Extended Distance (TCE), or Dynamic Provisioning after enabling and configuring Cache Partition Manager, note the following:

- SnapShot, TCE, and Dynamic Provisioning use a part of the cache area to manage array internal resources. As a result, the cache capacity that Cache Partition Manager can use becomes smaller than it otherwise would be.
- Check that the cache partition information is initialized properly when SnapShot, TCE, or Dynamic Provisioning is installed when Cache Partition Manager is enabled.
- Move the LUs to the master partitions on the side of the default owner controller.
- Delete all of the sub-partitions and reduce the size of each master partition to one half of the user data area, the user data capacity after installing the SS/TCE/HDP.

For more information, refer to the following documents:

- *Hitachi AMS 2000 Family TrueCopy Extended Distance User's Guide* (MK-97DF8054)
- *Hitachi AMS Copy-on-Write SnapShot User's Guide* (MK-97DF8124)

## Modular Volume Migration

- To install and enable the Modular Volume Migration license, follow the procedure provided in [Installing storage features on page 2-5](#), and select the license **LU-MIGRATION**.

## Requirements for uninstalling and disabling features

Before you uninstall or disable your features, read the following notes.

- Verify that the array is operating in a normal state. If a failure (for example a controller blockade) has occurred, uninstalling cannot be performed.
- A key code is required to uninstall your feature. This is the same key code you used when you installed your feature.

## Account Authentication

- You must have an Account Administrator role (View and Modify).
- When disabling this feature, every account, except yours, is logged out.
- Uninstalling this feature deletes all the account information except for the built-in account password. However, disabling this feature does not delete the account information.

## Cache Partition Manager

- Sub-partitions, except for the master partition, must be deleted.
- The capacity of the master partition must be the default partition size (see [Table 5-1 on page 5-2](#)).

## Data Retention

- You must return the logical unit attributes the Read/Write setting.

## LUN Manager

- The host group and target security on every port must be disabled.

## Modular Volume Migration

- All the volume migration pairs must be released, including those with a Completed or Error status.
- You cannot have logical units registered as reserved.

## SNMP Agent

- We recommend that the SNMP Agent Support acquires Message Information Block (MIB) information periodically, because the User Datagram Protocol (UDP) used for the SNMP Agent Support, does not guarantee correct error trap reporting to the SNMP manager.
- The array command processing performance is negatively affected if the interval for collecting MIB information is too short.
- If the SNMP manager is started after array failures, the failures are not reported with a trap. Acquire the MIB objects `dfRegressionStatus` after starting the SNMP manager, and verify whether failures occur.
- The SNMP Agent Support stops if the controller is blocked and the SNMP managers do not receive responses.
- When an array is configured from a dual system, hardware component failures (fan, battery, power supply, cache failure) during power-on before the array is Ready, or from the last power-off, are reported with a trap from both controllers. Failures in the array or while it is Ready, are reported with a trap from the controller that detects the failures.

- When an array is configured from a dual system, both controllers must be monitored by the SNMP manager. When only one of the controllers is monitored using the SNMP manager, monitor controller 0 and note the following:
  - Drive blockades detected by controller 1 are not reported with a trap.
  - Controller 1 is not reported as TRAP. The controller down is reported as systemDown TRAP by the controller that went down.
- After controller 0 is blocked, the SNMP Agent Support cannot be used.

## Additional guidelines

- Navigator 2 is used by service personnel to maintain the arrays; therefore, be sure they have accounts. Assign the Storage Administrator (View and Modify) for service personnel accounts.
- The Syslog server log may have omissions because the log is not reset when a failure on the communication path occurs.
- The audit log is sent to the Syslog server and conforms to the Berkeley Software Distribution (BSD) syslog protocol (RFC3164) standard.
- If you are auditing multiple arrays, synchronize the Network Time Protocol (NTP) server clock. For more details on setting the time on the NTP server, see the Hitachi Storage Navigator Modular 2 online help.
- Reboot the array when changing the logical unit cache memory or partition.

## Advanced Settings Java Applet

Users who access AMS arrays from Navigator 2 have an additional array tree item called **Advanced Settings** located under **[Array Name] > Settings**.

When you click **Advanced Settings**, a Java applet launches that provides additional system functionality. Some functions may require an additional license be installed and enabled.

You must have the proper Java Runtime Environment (JRE) loaded and the Java Console set properly on your system to view the Advanced Settings window. The requirements are as follows:

- JRE version required: **v1.6.0**
- Enter **-Xmx216m** to the Java Runtime Parameters field.



**CAUTION!** The Java applet window may time out after 20 minutes due to an automatic logout function. If this occurs, close the Web browser, stop the SNM2 Server and restart. Launch the SNM2 GUI and return to the array you want to manage.

---

When you use the JRE less than 1.6.0\_10, setting the **Java Runtime Parameters** are necessary in a client to start Navigator 2. When you use the JRE 1.6.0\_10 or more, setting the **Java Runtime Parameters** are not

necessary in a client to start Navigator 2. However, starting the **Open Advanced Settings**, when "DMEG0002F0: Since memories required for the Advanced Settings are insufficient, a screen cannot be displayed. Change a setup of Java Plug-in installed in the client and increase the usable memories." appears, set the following **Java Runtime Parameters**.

Windows:

The procedure is shown below.

1. In the Windows **Start** menu, choose **Settings, Control Panel**.
2. From the **Control Panel**, select the **Java**.
3. Click **View** of the upper position in the **Java** tab.
4. Enter **-Xmx216m** to the Java Runtime Parameters field.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Click **OK** in the **Java** tab.
7. Close the **Control Panel**.

For Linux and Solaris, perform the following steps:

1. Run the Java Control Panel from an XWindows terminal executing the  
<JRE installed directory> /bin/jcontrol.
2. Click **View** of the upper position in the Java tab.
3. Enter **-Xmx216m** to the Java Runtime Parameters field.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Click **OK** in the Java tab.



# Installing and enabling storage features

This chapter describes how to install, enable, disable, and uninstall storage features.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- ❑ [Preinstallation information](#)
- ❑ [Installing storage features](#)
- ❑ [Enabling storage features](#)
- ❑ [Disabling storage features](#)
- ❑ [Uninstalling storage features](#)

## Preinstallation information

Before installing storage features, review the preinstallation information in the following sections.

### Environments

Your system should be updated to the most recent firmware version and Navigator 2 software version to expose all the features currently available.

The current firmware, Navigator 2, and CCI versions applicable for this guide are as follows:

- Firmware version 08A0/B or higher for the AMS 2100, 2300, or 2500 systems.
- Navigator 2 version 08A0/B or higher for your computer.
- When using the command control interface (CCI), version 01-23-03/08 or higher is required for your computer.

### Storage feature requirements

Before installing storage features, be sure you meet the following requirements.

- Storage feature license key.
- Controllers cannot be detached.
- When changing settings, reboot the array.
- When connecting the network interface, 10BASE-T, 100BASE-T, or 1000BASE-T (RJ-45 connector, twisted pair cable) is supported. The frame type must conform to Ethernet II (DIX) specifications.
- Two (2) controllers (dual configuration),
- Maximum of 128 command devices. Command devices are only required when the CCI is used for Volume Migration. The command device logical unit size must be 33 MB or more.
- Maximum of two Differential Management Logical Units (DMLUs). The DMLU size must be 10 GB or more. It is recommended that two DMLUs are set for different RAID groups.

The primary volume (P-VOL) size must equal the secondary volume (S-VOL) logical unit size.

### Requirements for installing and enabling features

Before you install or enable your features:

- Verify that the array is operating in a normal state. If a failure (for example a controller blockade) has occurred, installing cannot be performed.

- Obtain the required key code or key file to install your feature. If you do not have it, obtain it from the download page on the HDS Support Portal: <http://support.hds.com>.

### Audit Logging requirements

- This feature and the Syslog server to which logs are sent require compliance with the BSD syslog Protocol (RFC3164) standard.
- This feature supports a maximum of two (2) syslog servers
- You must have an Account Administrator role (View and Modify).
- When disabling this feature, every account, except yours, is logged out.
- Uninstalling this feature deletes all the account information except for the built-in account password. However, disabling this feature does not delete the account information.

### Cache Partition Manager requirements

If you plan to install Copy-on-Write Snapshot, True Copy Extended Distance (TCE), or Dynamic Provisioning after enabling and configuring Cache Partition Manager, note the following:

- SnapShot, TCE, and Dynamic Provisioning use a part of the cache area to manage array internal resources. As a result, the cache capacity that Cache Partition Manager can use becomes smaller than it otherwise would be.
- Check that the cache partition information is initialized properly when SnapShot, TCE, or Dynamic Provisioning is installed when Cache Partition Manager is enabled.
- Move the LUs to the master partitions on the side of the default owner controller.
- Delete all of the sub-partitions and reduce the size of each master partition to one half of the user data area, the user data capacity after installing the SS/TCE/HDP.
- If you uninstall or disable this storage feature, sub-partitions, except for the master partition, must be deleted and the capacity of the master partition must be the default partition size (see [Table 5-1 on page 5-2](#)).

For more information, refer to the following documents:

- *Hitachi AMS 2000 Family TrueCopy Extended Distance User's Guide* (MK-97DF8054)
- *Hitachi AMS Copy-on-Write SnapShot User's Guide* (MK-97DF8124)

### Data Retention requirements

- If you uninstall or disable this storage feature, you must return the logical unit attributes the Read/Write setting.

## LUN Manager requirements

- If you uninstall or disable this storage feature, you must disable the host group and target security on every port.

## SNMP Agent requirements

- We recommend that the SNMP Agent Support acquires Message Information Block (MIB) information periodically, because the User Datagram Protocol (UDP) used for the SNMP Agent Support, does not guarantee correct error trap reporting to the SNMP manager.
- The array command processing performance is negatively affected if the interval for collecting MIB information is too short.
- If the SNMP manager is started after array failures, the failures are not reported with a trap. Acquire the MIB objects `dfRegressionStatus` after starting the SNMP manager, and verify whether failures occur.
- The SNMP Agent Support stops if the controller is blocked and the SNMP managers do not receive responses.
- When an array is configured from a dual system, hardware component failures (fan, battery, power supply, cache failure) during power-on before the array is Ready, or from the last power-off, are reported with a trap from both controllers. Failures in the array or while it is Ready, are reported with a trap from the controller that detects the failures.
- When an array is configured from a dual system, both controllers must be monitored by the SNMP manager. When only one of the controllers is monitored using the SNMP manager, monitor controller 0 and note the following:
  - Drive blockades detected by controller 1 are not reported with a trap.
  - Controller 1 is not reported as TRAP. The controller down is reported as systemDown TRAP by the controller that went down.
- After controller 0 is blocked, the SNMP Agent Support cannot be used.

## Modular Volume Migration requirements

- To install and enable the Modular Volume Migration license, follow the procedure provided in [Installing storage features on page 2-5](#), and select the license **LU-MIGRATION**.
- If you uninstall or disable this storage feature, all the volume migration pairs must be released, including those with a Completed or Error status. You cannot have logical units registered as reserved.

## Additional guidelines

- Navigator 2 is used by service personnel to maintain the arrays; therefore, be sure they have accounts. Assign the Storage Administrator (View and Modify) for service personnel accounts.
- The Syslog server log may have omissions because the log is not reset when a failure on the communication path occurs.
- The audit log is sent to the Syslog server and conforms to the Berkeley Software Distribution (BSD) syslog protocol (RFC3164) standard.
- If you are auditing multiple arrays, synchronize the Network Time Protocol (NTP) server clock. For more details on setting the time on the NTP server, see the Hitachi Storage Navigator Modular 2 online help.
- Reboot the array when changing the logical unit cache memory or partition.

## Installing storage features

### To install your features for each storage system

1. In Navigator 2, select the check box for the array where you want to install your feature, and then click **Show & Configure Array**.
2. On the Array screen under Common Array Tasks, click the **Licenses** in the Settings tree view.
3. In the Licenses list, click the feature name, for example, Data Retention.
4. In the Licenses list, click the **Key File** or **Key Code** button, then enter the file name or key code for the feature you want to install. You can browse for the Key File.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Follow the on-screen instructions. A message displays confirming the optional feature installed successfully. Mark the checkbox and click **Reboot Array**.
7. To complete the installation, restart the storage system. The feature will close upon restarting the storage system. The storage system cannot access the host until the reboot completes and the system restarts. Restarting usually takes from six to 25 minutes.



**NOTE:** The storage system may require more time to respond, depending on its condition. If it does not respond after 25 minutes, check the condition of the system.

---

## Enabling storage features

### To enable your features for each storage system

1. In Navigator 2, select the check box for the storage system where you are enabling or disabling your feature.
2. Click **Show & Configure Array**.
3. If Password Protection is installed and enabled, log in with the registered user ID and password for the array.

4. In the tree view, click **Settings**, and select **Licenses**.
5. Select the appropriate feature in the Licenses list.
6. Click **Change Status**. The Change License window appears.
7. Select the **Enable** check box.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Follow the on-screen instructions.

## Disabling storage features

Before you disable storage features

- Verify that the array is operating in a normal state. If a failure (for example a controller blockade) has occurred, uninstalling cannot be performed.
- A key code is required to uninstall your feature. This is the same key code you used when you installed your feature.

### To disable your features for each array

1. In Navigator 2, select the check box for the array where you are enabling or disabling your feature.
2. Click **Show & Configure Array**.
3. If Password Protection is installed and enabled, log in with the registered user ID and password for the array.
4. In the tree view, click **Settings**, and select **Licenses**.
5. Select the appropriate feature in the Licenses list.
6. Click **Change Status**. The Change License window appears.
7. Clear the **Enable** check box.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Follow the on-screen instructions.

## Uninstalling storage features

Before you uninstall storage features

- Verify that the array is operating in a normal state. If a failure (for example a controller blockade) has occurred, uninstalling cannot be performed.
- A key code is required to uninstall your feature. This is the same key code you used when you installed your feature.

### To uninstall your features for each array

1. In Navigator 2, select the check box for the array where you want to uninstall your feature, then click **Show & Configure Array**.
2. In the tree view, click **Settings**, then click **Licenses**.
3. On the Licenses screen, select your feature in the Licenses list and click **De-install License**.

4. On the De-Install License screen, enter the code in the **Key Code** box, and then click **OK**.
5. Follow the on-screen instructions.
6. To complete uninstalling the option, restart the storage system. The feature will close upon restarting the storage system. The system cannot access the host until the reboot completes and the system restarts. Restarting usually takes 6 to 25 minutes.



**NOTE:** The storage system may require more time to respond, depending on its condition. If it does not respond after 25 minutes, check the condition of the system.

---

7. Log out from the disk array.

Uninstalling of the feature is now complete.



# Account Authentication

This chapter describes Account Authentication. The topics covered in this chapter are:

- ❑ [Account Authentication overview](#)
- ❑ [Account Authentication procedures](#)
- ❑ [Troubleshooting](#)

## Account Authentication overview

The Account Authentication feature is pre-installed and enabled from the factory. Be sure to review carefully the information on the built-in default account in this section before you log in to the array for the first time. [Table 3-1](#) details the settings in the built-in default account.

**Table 3-1: Account Authentication Specifications**

Item	Description
Account creation	The account information includes a user ID, password, role, and whether the account is enabled or disabled. The password must have at least six (6) characters.
Number of accounts	You can register 20 accounts.
Number of users	256 users can log in. This includes duplicate log ins by the same user.
Number of roles per account	6 roles can be assigned to an account. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Storage Administrator (View and Modify)</li><li>• Storage Administrator (View)</li><li>• Account Administrator (View and Modify)</li><li>• Account Administrator (View)</li><li>• Audit Log Administrator (View and Modify)</li><li>• Audit Log Administrator (View)</li></ul>
Time before you are logged out	A log in can be set for 20-60 minutes in units of five minutes, 70-120 minutes in units of ten minutes, one day, or indefinitely (OFF).

We recommend that you also create a service personnel account and assign the Storage Administrator (View and Modify) role.

We recommend that you create a public account and assign the necessary role to it when operating the disk array. Create a monitoring account to monitor possible failures by Navigator 2 for disk array operation. Assign the Storage Administrator (View and Modify) role.

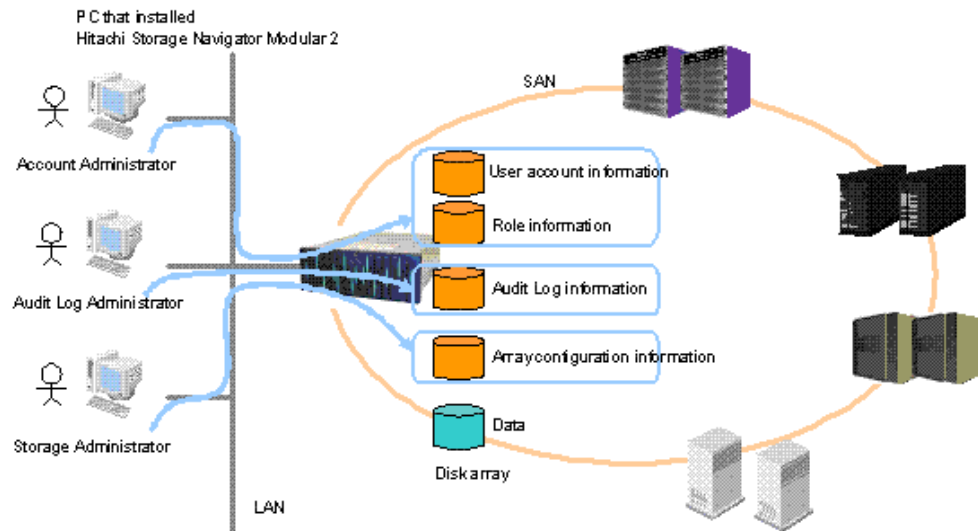
For more information on Sessions and Resources, see [Session on page 3-7](#).

## Overview of Account Authentication

A user who uses the storage system registers an account (user ID, password, etc.) before beginning to configure account authentication. When a user accesses the storage system, the Account Authentication feature verifies whether the user is registered. From this information, users who use the storage system can be discriminated and restricted.

A user who registered an account is given authority (role information) to view and modify the storage system resources according to each purpose of system management and the user can access each resource of the storage system within the range of the authority (Access control).

Since Account Authentication does not permit users who have not registered the accounts to access the storage system, it can prevent illegal break-in. Besides, since it can assign the authority to view and modify the resources according to each purpose of system management by the role information, it can place restrictions on illegal operation for another purpose other than the management of the storage system, even in the case of users who have registered their accounts. Figure 3-1 provides an outline of the Account Authentication process.



**Figure 3-1: Account Authentication Outline**

## Accounts

The account is the information (user ID, password, role, and validity/invalidity of the account) that is registered in the array. An account is required to access arrays where Account Authentication is enabled. The array authenticates a user at the time of the log in, and can allow the user to refer to, or update, the resources after the log in.

**Table 3-2: Registered Account Specifications**

Item	Description	Specification
User ID	An identifier for the account.	Number of characters: 1 to 256. Usable characters: ASCII code (0 to 9, A to Z, a to z, ! # \$ % & ` * + - . / = ? @ ^ _ ` {   } ~).
Password	Information for authenticating the account.	Number of characters: 6 to 256. Usable characters: ASCII code (0 to 9, A to Z, a to z, ! # \$ % & ` * + - . / = ? @ ^ _ ` {   } ~).
Role	A role that is assigned to the account.	Assignable role number: 1 to 6. For more information, see <a href="#">Roles on page 3-5</a> .
Information of Account (enable or disable)	Information on enabling or disabling authentication for the account.	Account: enable or disable.

## Account types

There are two types of accounts:

- Built-in
- Public

The built-in default account is a root account that has been originally registered with the array. The user ID, password, and role are preset. Administrators may create “public” accounts and define roles for them. When operating the storage system, create a public account as the normally used account, and assign the necessary role to it. See [Table 3-3](#) for account types and permissions that may be created.

The built-in default account may only have one active session and should be used only to create accounts/users. Any current session is terminated if attempting to log in again under this account.



**CAUTION!** To maintain security, change the built-in default password after you first log in to the array. Be sure to manage your root account information properly and keep it in a safe place. Without a valid username and password, you cannot access the array without reinstalling the firmware. Hitachi Data Systems Technical Support cannot retrieve the username or password.

**Table 3-3: Account Types**

Type	Initial User ID	Initial Password	Initial Assigned Role	Description
Built-In	<b>root</b> (cannot change)	<b>storage</b> (may change)	Account Administrator (View and Modify)	An account that has been registered with Account Authentication beforehand.
Public	Defined by administrator (cannot change)	Defined by administrator	Defined by administrator	An account that can be created after Account Authentication is enabled.

## Roles

A role defines the permissions level to operate array resources (View and Modify or View Only). To place restrictions, assign a role to an account.

**Table 3-4: Role Types and Permissions**

Type	Permissions	Role Description
Storage Administrator (View and Modify)	You can view and modify the storage.	Assigned to a user who manages the storage.
Storage Administrator (View Only)	You can only view the storage.	Assigned to a user who views the storage information and a user who cannot log in with the Storage Administrator (View and Modify) in the modify mode.
Account Administrator (View and Modify)	You can view and modify the account.	Assigned to a user who authenticates the account information.
Account Administrator (View Only)	You can only view the account.	Assigned to a user who views the account information. and a user who cannot log in with the Account Administrator (View and Modify) in the modify mode.
Audit Log Administrator (View and Modify)	You can view and modify the audit log settings.	Assigned to a user who manages the audit log.
Audit Log Administrator (View Only)	You can only view the audit log.	Assigned to a user who views the audit log and a user who cannot log in with the Audit Log Administrator (View and Modify) in the modify mode.

## Resources

The resource stores information (repository) that is defined by a role (for example, the function to create an LU and to delete an account).

**Table 3-5: Resources**

Resource Group	Repository	Description
Storage management	Role definition	Stores role information. What access a role has for a resource (role type, resource, whether or not you can operate).
Storage management	Key	Stores device authentication information (an authentication name for the CHAP authentication of the iSCSI and the secret (a password)).
Storage management	Storage resource	Stores storage management information such as that on the hosts, switches, volumes, and ports and settings.
Account management	Account	Stores user ID, password, etc. account information.
Account management	Role mapping	Stores information on the correspondence between an account and a role.
Account management	Account setting	Stores information on account functions For example, the time limit until the session times out, the minimum number of characters in a password, etc.

**Table 3-5: Resources (Continued)**

Resource Group	Repository	Description
Audit log management	Audit log setting	A repository for setting Audit Logging. (IP address of the transfer destination log server, etc.)
Audit log management	Audit log	A file that stores the audit log in the array.

The relationship between the roles and resource groups are shown in [Table 3-6](#). For example, an account which is assigned the Storage Administrator role (View and Modify) can perform the operations to view and modify the key repository and the storage resource.

**Table 3-6: Role and Resource Group Relationships**

Resource Group Name (Repository)	Role Definition	Key	Storage Resource	Account	Role Mapping	Account Setting	Audit Log Setting	Audit Log
Role Name								
Storage Administrator (View and Modify)	-	V/M	V/M	X	X	X	X	X
Storage Administrator (View Only)	-	V	V	X	X	X	X	X
Account Administrator (View and Modify)	-	X	X	V/M	V/M	V/M	X	X
Account Administrator (View Only)	-	X	X	V	V	V	X	X
Audit Log Administrator (View and Modify)	-	X	X	X	X	X	V/M	V
Audit Log Administrator (View Only)	-	X	X	X	X	X	V	V

Table Key:

- **V** = "View"
- **M** = "Modify"
- **V/M** = "View and Modify"
- **x** = "Cannot view or modify"
- **-** = "Not available"

## Session

A session is the period that you logged in and out from an array. Every log in starts a session, so the same user can have more than one session.

When the user logs in, the array issues a session ID to the program they are operating. 256 users can log in a single array at the same time (including multiple log ins by the same user).

The session ID is deleted when the following occurs (note that after the session ID is deleted, the array is not operational):

- A user logs out
- A user is forced to log out
- The status without an operation exceeds the log in validity
- The planned shutdown is executed



**NOTE:** Pressing the **Logout** button does not immediately terminate an active session. The status for the array remains “logged in” until the session timeout period is reached for either the array itself or by Navigator 2 reaching its timeout period.

One of two session timeout periods may be enforced from Navigator 2:

- Up to 17 minutes when a Navigator 2 session is terminated by pressing **Logout** from the main screen.
- Up to 34 minutes when a Navigator 2 session is terminated by closing the Web browser window.

## Session types for operating resources

A session type is used to avoid simultaneous resource updates by multiple users.

When multiple public accounts with the View and Modify role log in the array, the Modify role is given to the account that logs in first. The account that logs in after, only has the View role. However, if a user with the Storage Administrator (View and Modify) role logs in first, another user with the Account Administrator (View and Modify) role can still log in and have the Modify role because the roles are not duplicate.

**Table 3-7: Session Types**

Type	Operation	Maximum Number of Session IDs
Modify mode	View and modify (setting) array operations.	3 (Only one log in for each role)
View mode	Only view the array setting information.	256

The built-in account always logs in with the Modify mode. Therefore, after the built-in account logs in, a public account that has the same View and Modify role, is forced into the View mode.



**NOTE:** The built-in account is the root account and has all privileges. The Account Administrator (View and Modify or View Only) role can display account information, including which users have modification privileges.

## Warning banners

The warning banner is a function that allows users with **User Management** privileges to post a pre-login message for all users who log in to Navigator 2. This function is available from the main Navigator 2 Explorer tree, **Administration > Security > Warning Banner**.

The basic specifications for banners are as follows:

- Maximum message length: 1000 characters
- Usable characters: **0 to 9, A to Z, a to z, " ! # \$ % & ' ( ) \* + - . / : ; < = > ? @ [ \ ] ^ \_ ` { | } ~**

The following table describes attributes added to the access request.

**Table 1-4. Attribute Specifications Added to Access Request**

Item	Specification
User-Name	Entered user ID
User-Password	Encrypted password in the specified format that is used when selecting PAP as the authentication protocol.
CHAP-Password	MD5 hash value processed in the specified format used when selecting CHAP for authentication protocol.
NAS-Identifier	Fixed value: Hitachi SMS/AMS RADIUS Client
NAS-IP-Address	IPv4 address of the array management port.
NAS-IPv6-Address	IPv6 address of the array management port.

This section describes how to modify Account Authentication accounts and log in operations.



**CAUTION!** The Account Authentication license is pre-installed and enabled. You will be required to enter the built-in (default) username and password information when you first log in to the array.

# Audit Logging

This chapter describes Audit Logging. The topics covered in this chapter are:

- ❑ [Audit Logging overview](#)
- ❑ [Audit Logging procedures](#)

## Audit Logging overview

Table 4-1 describes specifications for Audit Logging.

**Table 4-1: Audit Logging Specifications**

Item	Description
Number of external Syslog server	Two IPv4 or IPv6 IP addresses can be registered.
External Syslog server transmission method	UDP port number 514 is to be used. The log conforms to the BSD syslog Protocol (RFC3164).
Audit log length	Less than 1,024 bytes per log. If the log (output) is more, the message may be incomplete. For the log of 1,024 bytes or more, only the first 1,024 bytes is output.
Audit log format	The end of a log is expressed with the LF (Line Feed) code. For more information, see the <i>Hitachi Storage Navigator Modular 2 Command Line Interface (CLI) User's Guide</i> (MK-97DF8089).
Audit log occurrence	The audit log is sent when any of the following occurs in the array. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Starting and stopping the array.</li><li>• Logging in and out using an account created with Account Authentication.</li><li>• Changing an array setting (for example, creating or deleting a logical unit).</li><li>• Initializing the log.</li></ul>
Sending the log to the external Syslog server	The log is sent when an audit event occurs. However, depending on the network traffic, there can be a delay of some seconds.
Number of events that can be stored	2,048 events (fixed). When the number of events exceeds 2,048, they are wrapped around. The audit log is stored inside the system disk.

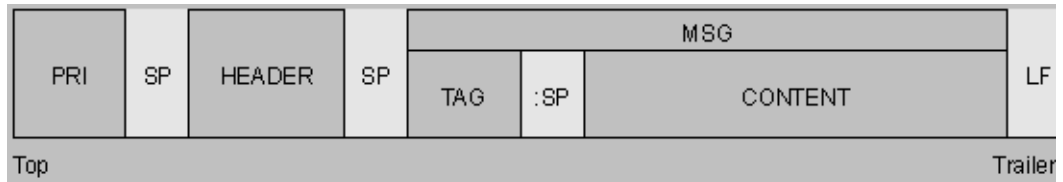
These events are not logged:

- Partial blockade of the array and recovery
- Reference/setting made from the array Web function
- Success/failure of the device authentication (iSCSI CHAP)



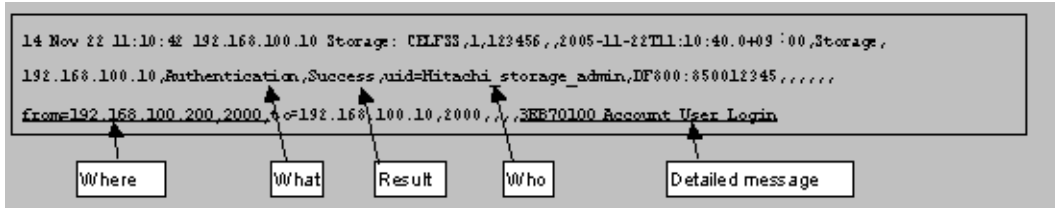
**NOTE:** CCI logs are not generated by Audit Logging because CCI outputs the log individually.

The audit log for an event has the format shown in [Figure 4-1](#).



**Figure 4-1: Audit Log Format**

The output of an audit log is shown in [Figure 4-2](#). Items are separated by commas. When there is no item to be output, nothing is output.



**Figure 4-2: Log Example**

For more details about Audit log format, see the *Hitachi Storage Navigator Modular 2 Command Line Interface (CLI) User's Guide* (MK-97DF8089).

## Audit Logging procedures

The following sections describe the Audit Logging procedures.

### Initial settings

#### To configure initial settings

1. Verify that you have the environments and requirements for Audit Logging (see [Preinstallation information on page 2-2](#)).
2. Set the Syslog Server (see [Table 4-1 on page 4-2](#)).

### Optional operations

#### To configure optional operations

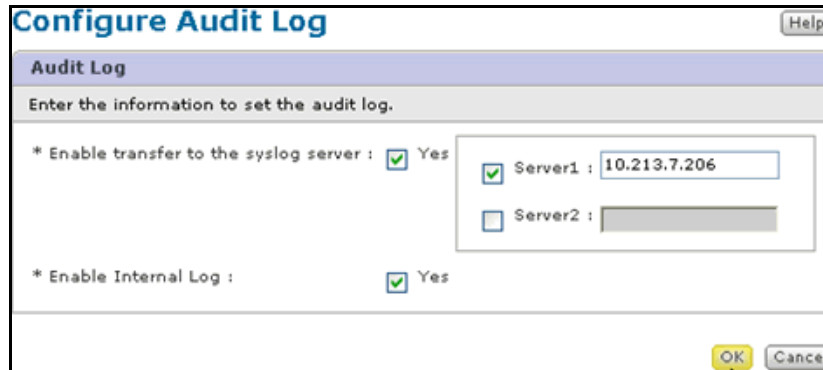
1. Export the internal logged data.
2. Initialize the internal logged data (see [Initializing logs on page 4-6](#)).

### Enabling Audit Log data transfers

#### To transfer data to the Syslog server

1. Start Navigator 2 and log in. The Arrays window appears

2. Select the appropriate array and click **Show & Configure Array**.
3. Log in as an **Audit Log Administrator** (View and Modify).
4. Select the **Audit Logging** icon in the Security tree view. The Audit Logging window is displayed.
5. Click **Configure Audit Log**. The Configure Audit Log window is displayed. See [Figure 4-3](#).



**Figure 4-3: Audit Logging Window-Audit Log Tab**

6. Select the **Enable transfer to syslog server** check box.
7. Select the **Server 1** checkbox and enter the IP address for server 1. To add a second Syslog server, select the **Server 2** checkbox and enter the IP address for server 2.
8. To save a copy of the log on the array itself, select **Yes** under **Enable Internal Log**.



**NOTE:** This is recommended, because the log is sent to the Syslog server uses UDP, may not record all events if there is a failure along the communication path. See *Storage Navigator Modular 2 Command Line Interface (CLI) User's Guide (MK-97DF8089)* for information on exporting the internal log.

---

9. Click **OK**.

If the Syslog server is successfully configured, a confirmation message is sent to the Syslog server. If that confirmation message is not received at the server, verify the following:

- The IP address of the destination Syslog server
- The management port IP address
- The subnet mask
- The default gateway

## Viewing Audit Log data

This section describes how to view audit log data.



**NOTE:** You must be logged on to the array as an **Audit Log Administrator** (View or View and Modify) to perform this task if the array is secured using Account Authentication.

### To display the audit log

1. Start Navigator 2 and log in. The Arrays window appears
2. Select the appropriate array and click **Show & Configure Array**.
3. Log in as an **Account Administrator** (View and Modify) or an Account Administrator (View Only).
4. Select the **Audit Logging** icon in the Security tree view. The Audit Logging window is displayed.
5. Click **Show Internal Log**. The Show Internal Log confirmation screen appears as shown in [Figure 4-4](#).

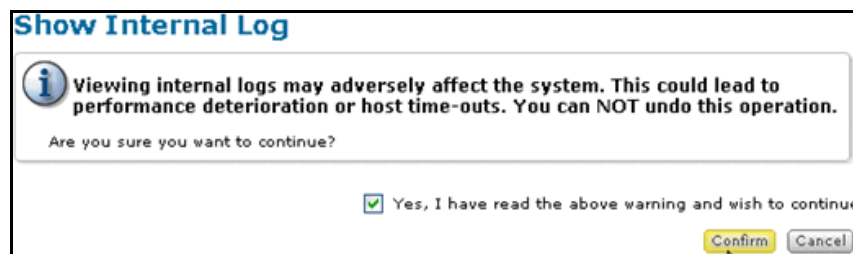


Figure 4-4: Show Internal Log Confirmation

6. Select the **Yes, I have read the above warning and wish to continue** check box and press **Confirm**. The Internal Log screen opens (see [Figure 4-5](#)).

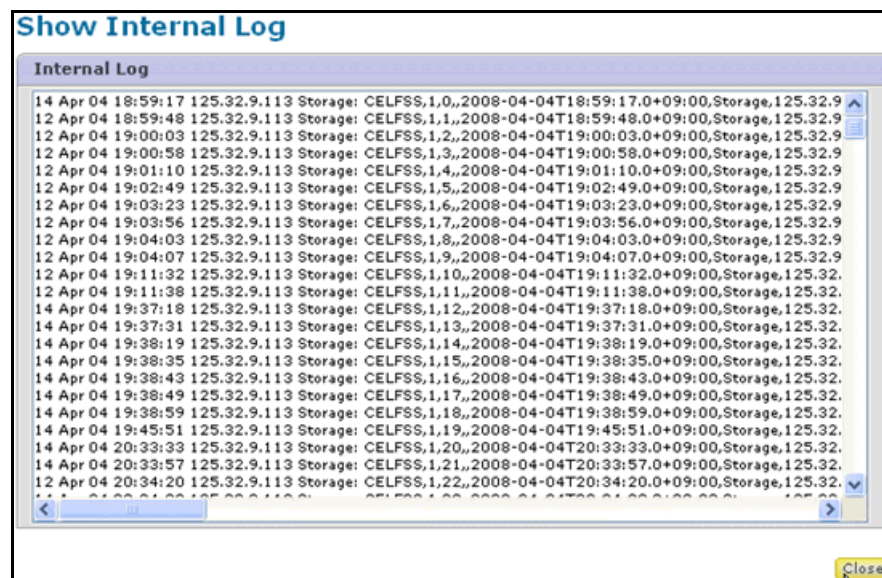


Figure 4-5: Internal Log Window

7. Click **Close** when you are finished viewing the internal log.



**NOTE:** The output can only be executed by one user at a time. If the output fails due to a LAN or controller failure, wait 3 minutes and then execute the output again.

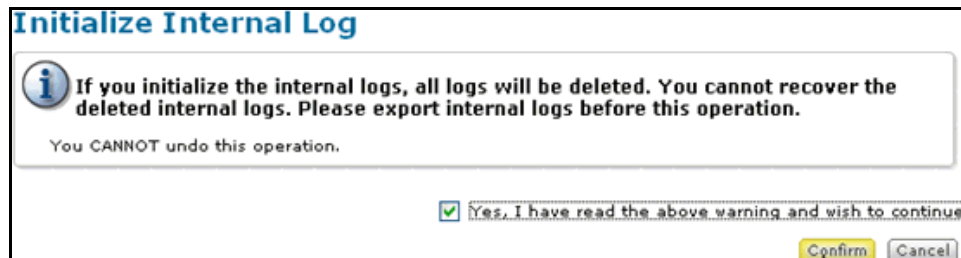
---

## Initializing logs

When logs are initialized, the stored logs are deleted and cannot be restored. Be sure you export logs before initializing them. For more information, see *Storage Navigator Modular 2 Command Line Interface (CLI) User's Guide* (MK-97DF8089).

### To initialize logs

1. Start Navigator 2 and log in. The Arrays window appears
2. Select the appropriate array and click **Show & Configure Array**.
3. Log in to Navigator 2. If the array is secured with Account Authentication, you must log on as an **Account Administrator** (View and Modify) or an Account Administrator (View Only).
4. Select the **Audit Logging** icon in the Security tree view. The Audit Logging window is displayed (see [Figure 4-6](#)).



**Figure 4-6: Initialize Internal Log Window**

5. Select the **Yes, I have read the above warning and wish to continue** check box and click **Confirm**.
6. Review the confirmation message and click **Close**.



**NOTE:** All stored internal log information is deleted when you initialize the log. This information cannot be restored.

---

## Configuring Audit Logging to an external Syslog server

If you are configuring Audit Logging to send log information from the array to an external syslog server, observe the following key points:

- Edit the syslog configuration file for the OS under which the syslog server runs to specify an output log file you name.

For example, under Linux syslogd, edit **syslog.conf** and add a proper path to the target log file, such as `"/var/log/Audit_Logging.log"`.

- Configure the syslog server to accept external log data
- Restart the syslog services for the OS under which the syslog server runs

We recommend that you refer to the user documentation for the OS that you use for your syslog data for more information on managing external log data transfers.



# Cache Partition Manager

This chapter describes Cache Partition Manager. The topics covered in this chapter are:

- ❑ [Cache Partition Manager overview](#)
- ❑ [Cache Partition Manager settings](#)

## Cache Partition Manager overview

**Table 5-1: Cache Partition Manager Specifications**

Item	Description
Cache memory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>AMS2100: 2, 4 GB/controller</li> <li>AMS2300: 2, 4, 8 GB/controller</li> <li>AMS2500: 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 16 GB/controller</li> </ul>
Number of partitions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>AMS2100 (2 GB/controller): 2 to 6</li> <li>AMS2100 (4 GB/controller): 2 to 16</li> <li>AMS2300 (2 GB/controller): 2 to 6</li> <li>AMS2300 (4 GB/controller): 2 to 16</li> <li>AMS2300 (8 GB/controller): 2 to 32</li> <li>AMS2500 (4 GB/controller): 2 to 6</li> <li>AMS2500 (6 GB/controller): 2 to 12</li> <li>AMS2500 (8 GB/controller): 2 to 16</li> <li>AMS 2500 (10 GB/controller): 2 to 20</li> <li>AMS 2500 (12 GB/controller): 2 to 26</li> <li>AMS 2500 (16 GB/controller): 2 to 32</li> </ul> <p>The number of partitions including the two master partitions, is shown. The maximum number of partitions varies depending on the capacity allocated to each partition.</p>
Partition capacity	The partition capacity depends on the array and the capacity of the cache memory installed in the controller. For more information, see <a href="#">Cache Partition Manager settings on page 5-15</a> .
Memory segment size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Master partition: Fixed 16 KB</li> <li>Sub partition: 4, 8, 16, 64, 256, or 512 KB</li> </ul> <p>When changing the segment size, make sure you refer to <a href="#">Specifying Partition Capacity on page 5-16</a>.</p>
Pair cache partition	The default setting is "Auto" and you can specify the partition. It is recommended that you use Load Balancing in the "Auto" mode. For more information, see <a href="#">Restrictions on page 5-15</a> .
Partition mirroring	Always On (it is always mirrored).

## Cache Partition Manager

**Table 5-2: Cache Partition Manager Specifications**

Item	Description
Cache memory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>AMS2100: 2, 4 GB/controller</li> <li>AMS2300: 2, 4, 8 GB/controller</li> <li>AMS2500: 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 16 GB/controller</li> </ul>

**Table 5-2: Cache Partition Manager Specifications**

Item	Description
Number of partitions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• AMS2100 (2 GB/controller): 2 to 6</li> <li>• AMS2100 (4 GB/controller): 2 to 16</li> <li>• AMS2300 (2 GB/controller): 2 to 6</li> <li>• AMS2300 (4 GB/controller): 2 to 16</li> <li>• AMS2300 (8 GB/controller): 2 to 32</li> <li>• AMS2500 (4 GB/controller): 2 to 6</li> <li>• AMS2500 (6 GB/controller): 2 to 12</li> <li>• AMS2500 (8 GB/controller): 2 to 16</li> <li>• AMS 2500 (10 GB/controller): 2 to 20</li> <li>• AMS 2500 (12 GB/controller): 2 to 26</li> <li>• AMS 2500 (16 GB/controller): 2 to 32</li> </ul> <p>The number of partitions including the two master partitions, is shown. The maximum number of partitions varies depending on the capacity allocated to each partition.</p>
Partition capacity	<p>The partition capacity depends on the array and the capacity of the cache memory installed in the controller. For more information, see <a href="#">Cache Partition Manager settings on page 5-15</a>.</p>
Memory segment size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Master partition: Fixed 16 KB</li> <li>• Sub partition: 4, 8, 16, 64, 256, or 512 KB</li> </ul> <p>When changing the segment size, make sure you refer to <a href="#">Specifying Partition Capacity on page 5-16</a>.</p>
Pair cache partition	<p>The default setting is "Auto" and you can specify the partition. It is recommended that you use Load Balancing in the "Auto" mode. For more information, see <a href="#">Restrictions on page 5-15</a>.</p>
Partition mirroring	<p>Always On (it is always mirrored).</p>

## Partition Capacity

The partition capacity depends on the user data area of the cache memory and the segment size.

### User Data Area

The user data area depends on the array type, controller configuration (dual or single), and the controller cache memory. You cannot create a partition that is larger than the user data area.

### Default Partition Size

[Table 5-7 on page 5-6](#), [Table 5-8 on page 5-7](#), and [Table 5-12 on page 5-9](#) show partition sizes in MB for Cache Partition Manager. When you stop using Cache Partition Manager, you must set the partition size to the default size. The default partition size is equal to one half of the user data area for dual controller configurations, and the whole user data area for single controller configurations.

## Partitions Size for Small Segments

This applies to partitions using 4 KB or 8 KB segments, and the value depends on the array type. Sizes of partitions using all 4 KB or 8 KB segments must meet specific criteria for maximum partitions size of small segments.

[(The size of partitions using all 4 KB segments in MB) + (The size of partitions using all 8 KB segments is shown in MB/3)] has to be less or equal to maximum partition size of small segments (in MB) from the table.

If you are using Copy-on-Write SnapShot, True Copy Extended Distance (TCE), or Dynamic Provisioning, the supported capacity of the partition that can be created is changed because a portion of the user data area is needed to manage the internal resources.

## Supported Partition Capacity for Hardware Revision 0100

The supported partition capacity is determined depending on the user data area of the cache memory and a specified segment size and the supported partition capacity (when the hardware revision is 0100). All units are in Megabytes (MB). [Table 5-3](#) describes the supported partition capacity tables for hardware revision 0100.

**Table 5-3: Supported Partition Capacity Tables for Hardware Revision 0100**

Table	Controller	Snapshot or TCE	Dynamic Provisioning	Dynamic Provisioning Capacity Mode
<a href="#">Table 5-4 on page 5-5</a>	Dual	Disabled	Disabled	Partial
<a href="#">Table 5-5 on page 5-5</a>	Dual	Enabled	Disabled	Partial
<a href="#">Table 5-6 on page 5-6</a>	Dual	Enabled	Enabled	Partial
<a href="#">Table 5-7 on page 5-6</a>	Dual	Enabled	Enabled	Maximum
<a href="#">Table 5-8 on page 5-7</a>	Dual	Disabled	Enabled	Partial
<a href="#">Table 5-9 on page 5-7</a>	Dual	Disabled	Enabled	Maximum
<a href="#">Table 5-10 on page 5-8</a>	Single	--	--	--

**Table 5-4: Supported Partition Capacity (Dual Controller Configuration and SnapShot, TCE, and Dynamic Provisioning are Disabled)**

AMS Equipment	Cache	User Data Area	Default Partition Size	Default Minimum Size	Default Maximum Size	Partition Capacity for Small Segment
2100	2 GB/CTL	1,520	760	200	1,320	1,120
2100	4 GB/CTL	3,520	1,760	200	3,320	1,520
2300	2 GB/CTL	1,440	720	200	1,240	1,040
2300	4 GB/CTL	3,280	1,640	200	3,080	2,880
2300	8 GB/CTL	7,160	3,580	200	6,960	3,280
2500	4 GB/CTL	2,960	1,480	400	2,560	2,160
2500	6 GB/CTL	4,840	2,420	400	4,440	4,040
2500	8 GB/CTL	6,740	3,370	400	6,340	5,940
2500	10 GB/CTL	8,620	4,310	400	8,220	6,740
2500	12 GB/CTL	10,500	5,250	400	10,100	6,740
2500	16 GB/CTL	14,420	7,210	400	14,020	6,740

When SnapShot, TCE, or Dynamic Provisioning is used, the supported capacity of the partition that can be created is changed because a part of the user data area is used for manage the internal resources. The following table shows the supported capacity in case where SnapShot or TCE is used.

**Table 5-5: Supported Partition Capacity (Dual Controller Configuration and SnapShot or TCE is Enabled and Dynamic Provisioning is Disabled)**

AMS Equipment	Cache	User Data Area	Default Partition Size	Default Minimum Size	Default Maximum Size	Partition Capacity for Small Segment
2100	2 GB/CTL	1,000	500	200	800	600
2100	4 GB/CTL	1,480	740	200	1,280	1,080
2300	2 GB/CTL	920	460	200	720	520
2300	4 GB/CTL	1,220	610	200	1,020	820
2300	8 GB/CTL	3,060	1,530	200	2,860	2,660
2500	4 GB/CTL	1,420	710	400	1,020	620
2500	6 GB/CTL	1,760	880	400	1,360	960
2500	8 GB/CTL	2,640	1,320	400	2,240	1,840
2500	10 GB/CTL	3,500	1,750	400	3,100	2,700
2500	12 GB/CTL	4,360	2,180	400	3,960	3,560
2500	16 GB/CTL	6,220	3,110	400	5,820	5,420

**Table 5-6: Supported Partition Capacity (Dual Controller Configuration and SnapShot or TCE and Dynamic Provisioning are Enabled)**

AMS Equipment	Cache	User Data Area	Default Partition Size	Default Minimum Size	Default Maximum Size	Partition Capacity for Small Segment
2100	2 GB/CTL	940	470	200	740	540
2100	4 GB/CTL	1,400	700	200	1,200	1,000
2300	2 GB/CTL	780	390	200	580	380
2300	4 GB/CTL	1,080	540	200	880	680
2300	8 GB/CTL	2,920	1,460	200	2,720	2,520
2500	4 GB/CTL	1,120	560	400	720	320
2500	6 GB/CTL	1,480	740	400	1,080	680
2500	8 GB/CTL	2,340	1,170	400	1,940	1,540
2500	10 GB/CTL	3,200	1,600	400	2,800	2,400
2500	12 GB/CTL	4,060	2,030	400	3,660	3,260
2500	16 GB/CTL	5,940	2,970	400	5,540	5,140

**Table 5-7: Supported Partition Capacity (Dual Controller Configuration and SnapShot or TCE is Enabled and Dynamic Provisioning is Enabled and DP Capacity is Maximum Capacity)**

AMS Equipment	Cache	User Data Area	Default Partition Size	Default Minimum Size	Default Maximum Size	Partition Capacity for Small Segment
2100	2 GB/CTL	800	400	200	600	400
2100	4 GB/CTL	1,280	640	200	1,080	880
2300	2 GB/CTL	620	310	200	420	220
2300	4 GB/CTL	920	460	200	720	520
2300	8 GB/CTL	2,760	1,380	200	2,560	2,360
2500	4 GB/CTL	900	450	400	500	100
2500	6 GB/CTL	1,260	630	400	860	460
2500	8 GB/CTL	2,120	1,060	400	1,720	1,320
2500	10 GB/CTL	2,980	1,490	400	2,580	2,180
2500	12 GB/CTL	3,840	1,920	400	3,440	3,040
2500	16 GB/CTL	5,700	2,850	400	5,300	4,900

**Table 5-8: Supported Partition Capacity (Dual Controller Configuration and SnapShot and TCE is Disabled and Dynamic Provisioning is Enabled)**

AMS Equipment	Cache	User Data Area	Default Partition Size	Default Minimum Size	Default Maximum Size	Partition Capacity for Small Segment
2100	2 GB/CTL	1,440	720	200	1,240	1,040
2100	4 GB/CTL	3,460	1,730	200	3,260	1,520
2300	2 GB/CTL	1,300	650	200	1,100	900
2300	4 GB/CTL	3,120	1,560	200	2,920	2,720
2300	8 GB/CTL	7,020	3,510	200	6,820	3,280
2500	4 GB/CTL	2,660	1,330	400	2,260	1,860
2500	6 GB/CTL	4,560	2,280	400	4,160	3,760
2500	8 GB/CTL	6,440	3,220	400	6,040	5,640
2500	10 GB/CTL	8,320	4,160	400	7,920	6,740
2500	12 GB/CTL	10,200	5,100	400	9,800	6,740
2500	16 GB/CTL	14,120	7,060	400	13,720	6,740

**Table 5-9: Supported Partition Capacity (Dual Controller Configuration and SnapShot and TCE is Disabled and Dynamic Provisioning is Enabled, and DP Capacity Mode is Maximum Capacity)**

AMS Equipment	Cache	User Data Area	Default Partition Size	Default Minimum Size	Default Maximum Size	Partition Capacity for Small Segment
2100	2 GB/CTL	1,320	660	200	1,120	920
2100	4 GB/CTL	3,320	1,660	200	3,120	1,520
2300	2 GB/CTL	1,120	560	200	920	720
2300	4 GB/CTL	2,960	1,480	200	2,760	2,560
2300	8 GB/CTL	6,860	3,430	200	6,660	3,280
2500	4 GB/CTL	2,440	1,220	400	2,040	1,640
2500	6 GB/CTL	4,320	2,160	400	3,920	3,520
2500	8 GB/CTL	6,220	3,110	400	5,820	5,420
2500	10 GB/CTL	8,100	4,050	400	7,700	6,740
2500	12 GB/CTL	9,980	4,990	400	9,580	6,740
2500	16 GB/CTL	13,900	6,950	400	13,500	6,740

**Table 5-10: Supported Partition Capacity (Single Controller Configuration)**

AMS Equipment	Cache	User Data Area	Default Partition Size	Default Minimum Size	Default Maximum Size	Partition Capacity for Small Segment
2100	2 GB/CTL	1,520	1,520	Master Partition: 400 Sub Partition: 200	1,520	1,120
2100	4 GB/CTL	3,530	3,530		3,530	1,520
2300	2 GB/CTL	1,440	1,440		1,440	1,040
2300	4 GB/CTL	3,280	3,280		3,280	2,880
2300	8 GB/CTL	7,170	7,170		7,170	3,280

### Supported Partition Capacity for Hardware Revision 0200

The supported partition capacity is determined depending on the user data area of the cache memory and a specified segment size and the supported partition capacity (when the hardware revision is 0200). The supported capacity of partitions that can be set is shown below. [Table 5-11](#) describes the supported partition capacity tables for hardware revision 0200.

**Table 5-11: Supported Partition Capacity Tables for Hardware Revision 0200**

Table	Controller	Snapshot or TCE	Dynamic Provisioning	Dynamic Provisioning Capacity Mode
<a href="#">Table 5-12 on page 5-9</a>	Dual	Disabled	Disabled	Partial
<a href="#">Table 5-13 on page 5-9</a>	Dual	Enabled	Disabled	Partial
<a href="#">Table 5-14 on page 5-10</a>	Dual	Enabled	Enabled	Partial
<a href="#">Table 5-15 on page 5-10</a>	Dual	Enabled	Enabled	Maximum
<a href="#">Table 5-16 on page 5-11</a>	Dual	Disabled	Enabled	Partial
<a href="#">Table 5-17 on page 5-11</a>	Dual	Disabled	Enabled	Maximum
<a href="#">Table 5-18 on page 5-12</a>	Single	--	--	--

**Table 5-12: Supported Partition Capacity (Dual Controller Configuration and SnapShot, TCE, and Dynamic Provisioning are Disabled)**

AMS Equipment	Cache	User Data Area	Default Partition Size	Default Minimum Size	Default Maximum Size	Partition Capacity for Small Segment
2100	2 GB/CTL	1,380	690	200	1,180	980
2100	4 GB/CTL	3,360	1,680	200	3,160	1,520
2300	2 GB/CTL	1,340	670	200	1,140	940
2300	4 GB/CTL	3,100	1,550	200	2,900	2,700
2300	8 GB/CTL	6,940	3,470	200	6,740	3,280
2500	4 GB/CTL	2,780	1,390	400	2,380	1,980
2500	6 GB/CTL	4,660	2,330	400	4,260	3,860
2500	8 GB/CTL	6,440	3,220	400	6,040	5,640
2500	10 GB/CTL	8,320	4,160	400	7,920	6,740
2500	12 GB/CTL	9,980	4,990	400	9,580	6,740
2500	16 GB/CTL	14,060	7,030	400	13,660	6,740

When SnapShot, TCE, or Dynamic Provisioning is used, the supported capacity of the partition that can be created is changed because a part of the user data area is used for manage the internal resources. The following table shows the supported capacity in case where SnapShot or TCE is used.

**Table 5-13: Supported Partition Capacity (Dual Controller Configuration and SnapShot or TCE is Enabled and Dynamic Provisioning is Disabled)**

AMS Equipment	Cache	User Data Area	Default Partition Size	Default Minimum Size	Default Maximum Size	Partition Capacity for Small Segment
2100	2 GB/CTL	880	440	200	680	480
2100	4 GB/CTL	1,300	650	200	1,100	900
2300	2 GB/CTL	820	410	200	620	420
2300	4 GB/CTL	1,060	530	200	860	660
2300	8 GB/CTL	2,840	1,420	200	2,640	2,440
2500	4 GB/CTL	1,240	620	400	840	440
2500	6 GB/CTL	1,600	800	400	1,200	800
2500	8 GB/CTL	2,360	1,180	400	1,960	1,560
2500	10 GB/CTL	3,200	1,600	400	2,800	2,400
2500	12 GB/CTL	3,820	1,910	400	3,420	3,020
2500	16 GB/CTL	5,880	2,940	400	5,480	5,080

**Table 5-14: Supported Partition Capacity (Dual Controller Configuration and SnapShot or TCE and Dynamic Provisioning are Enabled)**

AMS Equipment	Cache	User Data Area	Default Partition Size	Default Minimum Size	Default Maximum Size	Partition Capacity for Small Segment
2100	2 GB/CTL	800	400	200	600	400
2100	4 GB/CTL	1,240	620	200	1,040	840
2300	2 GB/CTL	680	340	200	480	280
2300	4 GB/CTL	900	450	200	700	500
2300	8 GB/CTL	2,680	1,340	200	2,480	2,280
2500	4 GB/CTL	940	470	400	540	140
2500	6 GB/CTL	1,300	650	400	900	500
2500	8 GB/CTL	2,060	1,030	400	1,660	1,260
2500	10 GB/CTL	2,920	1,460	400	2,520	2,120
2500	12 GB/CTL	3,540	1,770	400	3,140	2,740
2500	16 GB/CTL	5,580	2,790	400	5,180	4,780

**Table 5-15: Supported Partition Capacity (Dual Controller Configuration and SnapShot or TCE and Dynamic Provisioning are Enabled, and DP Capacity Mode is Maximum Capacity)**

AMS Equipment	Cache	User Data Area	Default Partition Size	Default Minimum Size	Default Maximum Size	Partition Capacity for Small Segment
2100	2 GB/CTL	680	340	200	480	280
2100	4 GB/CTL	1,100	550	200	900	700
2300	2 GB/CTL	520	260	200	320	120
2300	4 GB/CTL	740	370	200	540	340
2300	8 GB/CTL	2,520	1,260	200	2,320	2,120
2500	4 GB/CTL	N/A	N/A	400	N/A	N/A
2500	6 GB/CTL	1,080	540	400	680	280
2500	8 GB/CTL	1,840	920	400	1,440	1,040
2500	10 GB/CTL	2,680	1,340	400	2,280	1,880
2500	12 GB/CTL	3,320	1,660	400	2,920	2,520
2500	16 GB/CTL	5,360	2,680	400	4,960	4,560

**Table 5-16: Supported Partition Capacity (Dual Controller Configuration and SnapShot or TCE is Disabled and Dynamic Provisioning are Enabled)**

AMS Equipment	Cache	User Data Area	Default Partition Size	Default Minimum Size	Default Maximum Size	Partition Capacity for Small Segment
2100	2 GB/CTL	1,320	660	200	1,120	920
2100	4 GB/CTL	3,280	1,640	200	3,080	1,520
2300	2 GB/CTL	1,200	600	200	1,000	800
2300	4 GB/CTL	2,960	1,480	200	2,760	2,560
2300	8 GB/CTL	6,780	3,390	300	6,580	3,280
2500	4 GB/CTL	2,480	1,240	400	2,080	1,680
2500	6 GB/CTL	4,380	2,190	400	3,980	3,580
2500	8 GB/CTL	6,160	3,080	400	5,760	5,360
2500	10 GB/CTL	8,040	4,020	400	7,640	6,740
2500	12 GB/CTL	9,680	4,840	400	9,280	6,740
2500	16 GB/CTL	13,780	6,890	400	13,380	6,740

**Table 5-17: Supported Partition Capacity (Dual Controller Configuration and SnapShot and TCE are Disabled and Dynamic Provisioning is Enabled, and DP Capacity Mode is Maximum Capacity)**

AMS Equipment	Cache	User Data Area	Default Partition Size	Default Minimum Size	Default Maximum Size	Partition Capacity for Small Segment
2100	2 GB/CTL	1,180	590	200	980	780
2100	4 GB/CTL	3,160	1,580	200	2,960	1,520
2300	2 GB/CTL	1,020	510	200	820	620
2300	4 GB/CTL	2,800	1,400	200	2,600	2,400
2300	8 GB/CTL	6,620	3,310	200	6,420	3,280
2500	4 GB/CTL	2,260	1,130	400	1,860	1,460
2500	6 GB/CTL	4,140	2,070	400	3,740	3,340
2500	8 GB/CTL	5,940	2,970	400	5,540	5,140
2500	10 GB/CTL	7,800	3,900	400	7,400	6,740
2500	12 GB/CTL	9,460	4,730	400	9,060	6,740
2500	16 GB/CTL	13,560	6,780	400	13,160	6,740

**Table 5-18: Supported Partition Capacity (Single Controller Configuration)**

AMS Equipment	Cache	User Data Area	Default Partition Size	Default Minimum Size	Default Maximum Size	Partition Capacity for Small Segment
2100	2 GB/CTL	1,390	1,390	Master Partition: 400 Sub Partition: 200	1,390	990
2100	4 GB/CTL	3,360	3,360		3,360	1,520
2300	2 GB/CTL	1,340	1,340		1,340	940
2300	4 GB/CTL	3,110	3,110		3,110	2,710
2300	8 GB/CTL	6,940	6,940		6,940	3,280

**Table 5-19: Segment And Stripe Size Combinations**

Segment	64 KB Stripe	256 KB Stripe	512 KB Stripe
4 KB	Yes	No	No
8 KB	Yes	Yes	No
16 KB	Yes	Yes (Default)	Yes
64 KB	Yes	Yes	Yes
256 KB	No	Yes	Yes
512 KB	No	No	Yes

The sum capacities of all the partitions cannot exceed the capacity of the user data area. The maximum partition capacity above is a value that can be calculated when the capacity of the other partition is established as the minimum in the case of a configuration with only the master partitions. You can calculate the residual capacity by using Navigator 2. Also, sizes of partitions using all 4 Kbyte and 8 Kbyte segments must be within the limits of the relational values shown in the next section.

## Segment and Stripe Size Restrictions

A logical unit stripe size depends on the segment size of the partition, as shown in [Table 5-20 on page 5-15](#). The default stripe size is 256 KB.

**Table 5-20: Cache Partition Manager Restrictions**

Item	Description
Modifying settings	If you delete or add a partition, or change a partition or segment size, you must restart the array.
Pair cache partition	The segment size of a logical unit partition must be the same as the specified partition. When a cache partition is changed to a pair cache partition, the other partition cannot be specified as a change destination.
Changing single or dual configurations	The configuration cannot be changed when Cache Partition Manager is enabled.

**Table 5-20: Cache Partition Manager Restrictions**

Item	Description
Concurrent use of ShadowImage	When using ShadowImage, see <a href="#">Using ShadowImage, SnapShot, or TCE on page 5-17</a> .
Concurrent use of SnapShot	When SnapShot is enabled, the partition status is initialized. When using SnapShot, see <a href="#">Using ShadowImage, SnapShot, or TCE on page 5-17</a> .
Concurrent use of a unified LU	All the default partitions of the logical unit must be the same partition.
LU Expansion	You cannot expand LUs while making changes with the Cache Partition Manager.
Concurrent use of RAID group Expansion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You cannot change the Cache Partition Manager configuration for logical units belonging to a RAID group that is being expanded.</li> <li>You cannot expand RAID groups while making changes with the Cache Partition Manager.</li> </ul>
Concurrent use of Cache Residency Manager	Only the master partition can be used together. A segment size of the partition to which a Cache Residency logical unit belongs to, cannot be changed.
Concurrent use of Volume Migration	A logical unit that belongs to a partition cannot carry over. When the migration is completed, the logical unit belonging to a partition is changed to destination partition.
Copy of partition information by Navigator 2	Not available. Cache partition information cannot be copied.
Load Balancing	Load balancing is not available for logical units where there is no cache partition with the same segment size available on the destination controller.
DP-VOLs	The DP-VOLs can be set as a partition the same as the normal LU. The DP pool cannot be set as a partition.



**NOTE:** You can only make changes when the cache is empty. Restart the array after the cache is empty.

### Specifying Partition Capacity

When the number of RAID group drives (to which logical units belong to) increases, the use capacity of the Cache also increases. When a logical unit exceeds 17 (15D+2P or more) of the number of disk drives that configure the RAID group, using a partition with the capacity of the minimum partition capacity +100 MB or more is recommended.

### Using a Large Segment

When a large segment is used, performance can deteriorate if you do not have enough partition capacity. The recommended partition capacity when changing the segment size appears in [Table 5-22 on page 5-17](#).

**Table 5-21: Partition Capacity when Changing Segment Size**

Segment Size	Partition Capacity	
	AMS2100/2300	AMS2500
64 KB	More than 300 MB	More than 600 MB
256 KB	More than 500 MB	More than 1,000 MB
512 KB	More than 1,000 MB	More than 2,000 MB

### Using Load Balancing

The logical unit partition can be automatically moved to a pair partition according to the array CPU load condition of the CPU. If you do not want to move the logical unit partition, invalidate the load balance.

### Using ShadowImage, SnapShot, TrueCopy Remote, or True Copy Extended

The recommended segment size of the ShadowImage S-VOL, SnapShot, TrueCopy Remote (TrueCopy), TrueCopy Extended (TCE) or Volume Migration is 16 KB. When a different segment size is used, the performance and copy pace of the P-VOL may deteriorate.

You must satisfy one of the following conditions when using these features with Cache Partition Manager to pair the LUs:

- The P-VOL and S-VOL (V-VOL in the case of SnapShot) belong to the master partition (partition 0 or 1).
- The LU partitions that are used as the P-VOL and S-VOL are controlled by the same controller.

You can check the information on the partitions, to which each LU belongs, and the controllers that control the partitions in the setup window of Cache Partition Manager. The detail is explained in the Chapter 4. For the pair creation procedures, and so forth, please refer to the *Hitachi AMS 2000 Family ShadowImage In-system Replication User's Guide* (MK-97DF8129) or *Hitachi AMS 2000 Family Copy-on-Write SnapShot User's Guide* (MK-97DF8124).

The P-VOL and S-VOL/V-VOL partitions that you want to specify as LUs must be controlled by the same controller. See page 4 17 for more information.

After creating the pair, monitor the partitions for each LU to ensure they are controlled by the same controller.

### Adding or Reducing Cache Memory

You can add or reduce the cache memory used by Cache Partition Manager, unless the following conditions apply.

- A sub-partition exists or is reserved.

- For dual controllers, the master partitions 0 and 1 sizes are different, or the partition size reserved for the change is different.

## Cache Partition Manager settings

The following sections describe Cache Partition Manager settings.

### Initial settings

If a cache partition is added, deleted, or modified during power down, power down can fail. If this happens, power down again and verify that no RAID group in the Power Saving Status of Normal (Command Monitoring) exists. Then, you can add, delete, or modify the Cache Partition.

#### To configure initial settings

1. Verify that you have the environments and requirements for Cache Partition Manager (see [Preinstallation information on page 2-2](#)).
2. Change the partition size of the master partition (*Note 1*).
3. Add a sub partition (*Note 1*).
4. Change the partition the logical unit belongs to (*Note 1*).
5. Restart the array (*Note 1*).
6. Create a logical unit (*Note 3*).
7. Operate the cache partition.



**NOTE:** 1. When you modify partition settings, the change is validated after the array is restarted.

---



**NOTE:** 2. You only have to restart the array once to validate multiple partition setting modifications.

---



**NOTE:** 3. To create a logical unit with the partition you created, determine the partition beforehand. Then, add the logical unit after the array is restarted and the partition is validated.

---

### Stopping Cache Partition Manager

The array must be restarted before you stop using Cache Partition Manager.

#### To stop Cache Partition Manager

1. In the master partition, change logical unit partitions.
2. Delete sub partitions.
3. Return the master partition size (#0 and #1) to their default size.
4. Restart the array.

5. Disable or remove Cache Partition Manager.

## Working with cache partitions

Cache Partition Manager helps you segregate the workloads within an array. Using Cache Partition Manager allows you to configure the following parameters in the system memory cache:

- Selectable segment size — Allows the customization of the cache segment size for a user application
- Partitioning of cache memory — Allows the separation of workloads by dividing cache into individually managed, multiple partitions. A partition can then be customized to best match the I/O characteristics of the assigned LUs.
- Selectable stripe size — Helps increase performance by customizing the disk access size.



**NOTE:** The following will occur when you restart an array on the remote side of TrueCopy or TCE after setting, deleting, or changing of Cache Partition Manager:

- Both paths of TrueCopy or TCE are blocked. When a path is blocked, an SNMP TRAP is sent if you are using the SNMP Agent Support feature. Be sure to inform the storage administrators prior to restarting the storage system. The paths are recovered after the storage system has restarted.
- When the pair status of TrueCopy or TCE is either **Paired** or **Synchronizing**, the array status changes to **Failure**.

We recommend you change the pair status of TrueCopy or TCE to **Split** before making changes using Cache Partition Manager.

---



**NOTE:** If you are using the Power Savings feature and make any changes to the cache partition during a spin-down of the disks, the spin-down process may fail. In this case, re-execute the spin-down.

We recommend that you verify that the array is not in spin-down mode and that no RAID group is in Power Savings **Normal** status before making any changes to a cache partition.

---

The Cache Partition Manager runs under the Java applet used for some of the storage features. Please see [Advanced Settings Java Applet on page 1-20](#) for more information on JRE and Java console settings.

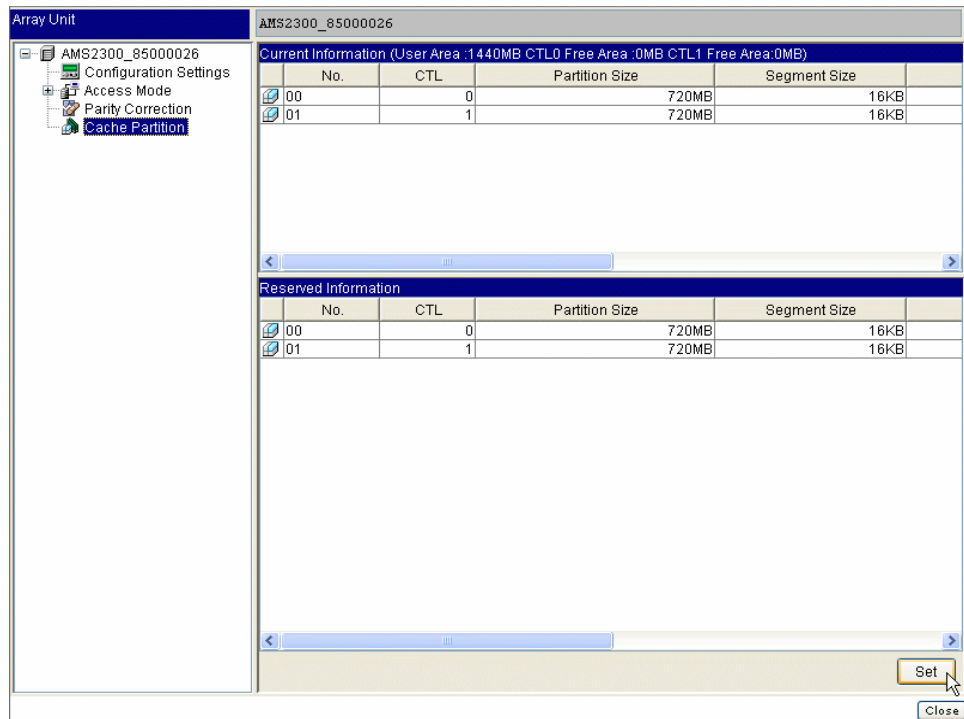
After making changes to cache partitions, you must restart the array.

## Adding cache partitions

To add cache partitions:

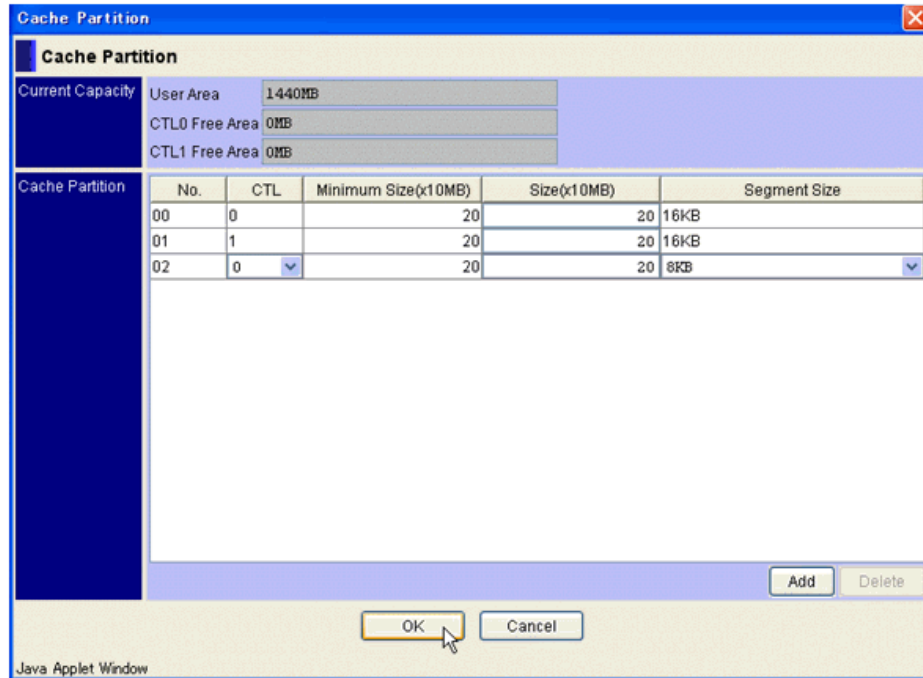
1. Start Navigator 2 and log in. The Arrays window appears

2. Click the appropriate array.
3. Expand the **Settings** list, and click **Advanced Settings**.
4. Click **Open Advanced Settings**. After some minutes, the Array Unit window appears.
5. Click **Cache Partition**. [Figure 5-1](#) appears.



**Figure 5-1: Cache Partition**

- Click **Set**. The Cache Partition dialog box appears, as shown in Figure 5-2.



**Figure 5-2: Cache Partition Dialog Box**

- Select cache partition **00** or **01**, and click **Add**. Cache partition 02 is added.
- Specify the following for partition 02:
  - Select **0** or **1** from the **CTL** drop-down menu.
  - Double-click the **Size** field and specify the size. The actual size is 10 times the specified number.
  - Select the segment size from the **Segment Size** drop-down menu.

See [Cache Partition Manager settings on page 5-15](#) for more information about supported partition sizes.
- Click **OK** and follow the on-screen instructions.

## Deleting cache partitions

Before deleting a cache partition, move the logical unit that has been assigned to it, to another partition.

### To delete cache partitions

- Start Navigator 2 and log in. The Arrays window appears
- Click the appropriate array.
- Expand the **Settings** list, and click **Advanced Settings**.
- Click **Open Advanced Settings**. After some minutes, the Array Unit window appears.
- Click **Cache Partition**. [Figure 5-1 on page 5-17](#) appears.

- Click **Set**. The Cache Partition dialog box appears, as shown in [Figure 5-2 on page 5-18](#).
- Select the cache partition number that you are deleting, and click **Delete**.
- Click **OK** and follow the on-screen instructions. Restarting the storage system takes approximately six to 25 minutes.

## Assigning cache partitions

If you do not assign a logical unit to a cache partition, it is assigned to the master partition. Also, note that the controllers for the logical unit and pair cache partitions must be different.

### To assign cache partitions

- Start Navigator 2 and log in.
- Select the appropriate array.
- Click **Show & Configure Array**.
- Under Arrays, click **Groups**.
- Click the **Logical Units** tab. [Figure 5-3](#) appears.

LUN	Capacity	Consumed Capacity	RAID Group	DP Pool	RAID Level	Stripe Size	Cache Partition	Pair Cache Partition	Drive Type	Status
0000	1.0TB	N/A	000	N/A	RAID6(4D+2P)	256KB	00	00	SAS	Normal
0001	33.0MB	N/A	000	N/A	RAID6(4D+2P)	256KB	00	00	SAS	Normal
0002	10.0GB	N/A	001	N/A	RAID6(8D+2P)	256KB	00	00	SAS	Normal
0003	50.0MB	N/A	000	N/A	RAID6(4D+2P)	256KB	00	00	SAS	Normal
0004	10.0GB	N/A	001	N/A	RAID6(8D+2P)	256KB	00	00	SAS	Normal
0008	10.0GB	N/A	000	N/A	RAID6(4D+2P)	256KB	00	00	SAS	Normal
0009	10.0GB	N/A	000	N/A	RAID6(4D+2P)	256KB	00	00	SAS	Normal

**Figure 5-3: Logical Units Tab**

- Select a logical unit from the **LUN** list, and click **Edit Cache Partition**.
- Select a partition number from the **Cache Partition** drop-down menu, and click **OK**.
- Follow the on-screen instructions. Restarting the storage system takes approximately six to 25 minutes.



**NOTE:** The rebooting process will execute after you change the settings.

## Setting a pair cache partition

This section describes how to configure a pair cache partition.

We recommend you observe the following when setting a pair cache partition:

- Use the default "Auto" mode.

- Set **Load Balancing** to **Disable** (use **Enable** if you want the partition to change with Load Balancing)



**NOTE:** The owner controller must be different for the partition where the LU is located and the partition pair cache is located.

---

#### To set a pair cache partition

1. Start Navigator 2 and log in.
2. Select the appropriate array.
3. Click **Show & Configure Array**.
4. Under Arrays, click **Groups**.
5. Click the **Logical Units** tab. (See [Figure 5-3 on page 5-19](#))
6. Select a logical unit from the LUN list and click **Edit Cache Partition**.
7. Select a partition number from the **Pair Cache Partition** drop-down list and click **OK**.
8. Click **Close** after successfully creating the pair cache partition.

### Changing cache partitions

Before you change a cache partition, please note the following:

- You can only change the size of a cache sub-partition
- You must reboot the array for the changes to take effect

#### To change cache partitions

1. Start Navigator 2 and log in. The Arrays window appears
2. Click the appropriate array.
3. Expand the **Settings** list, and click **Advanced Settings**.
4. Click **Open Advanced Settings**. After some minutes, the Array Unit window is displayed.
5. Click **Cache Partition**. [Figure 5-1 on page 5-17](#) appears.
6. Click **Set**. The Cache Partition dialog box appears, as shown in [Figure 5-2 on page 5-18](#).
7. To change capacity, double-click the **Size (x10MB)** field and make the desired change.
8. To change the segment size, select **segment size** from the drop-down menu to the left of **Segment Size**.
9. Follow the on-screen instructions.

### Changing cache partition owner controllers

The controller that processes the I/O of a LUN is referred to as the owner controller.

To change cache partitions owner controllers:

1. Start Navigator 2 and log in. The Arrays window appears
2. Click the appropriate array.
3. Expand the **Settings** list, and click **Advanced Settings**.
4. Click **Open Advanced Settings**. After some minutes, the Array Unit window appears.
5. Click **Cache Partition**. [Figure 5-1 on page 5-17](#) appears.
6. Click **Set**. The Cache Partition dialog box appears, as shown in [Figure 5-2 on page 5-18](#).
7. Select the Cache Partition number and the controller (CTL) number (0 or 1) from the drop-down menu and click **OK**.
8. Follow the on-screen instructions.
9. The **Automatic Pair Cache Partition Confirmation** message box displays.

Depending on the type of change you make, the setting of the pair cache partition may be switched to Auto. Verify this by checking the setting after restarting the storage system.

Click **OK** to continue. The **Restart Array** message is displayed. You must restart the storage system to validate the settings, however, you do not have to do it at this time. Restarting the storage system takes approximately six to 25 minutes.

10. To restart now, click **OK**. Restarting the storage system takes approximately six to 25 minutes. To restart later, click **Cancel**.

Your changes will be retained and implemented the next time you restart the array.

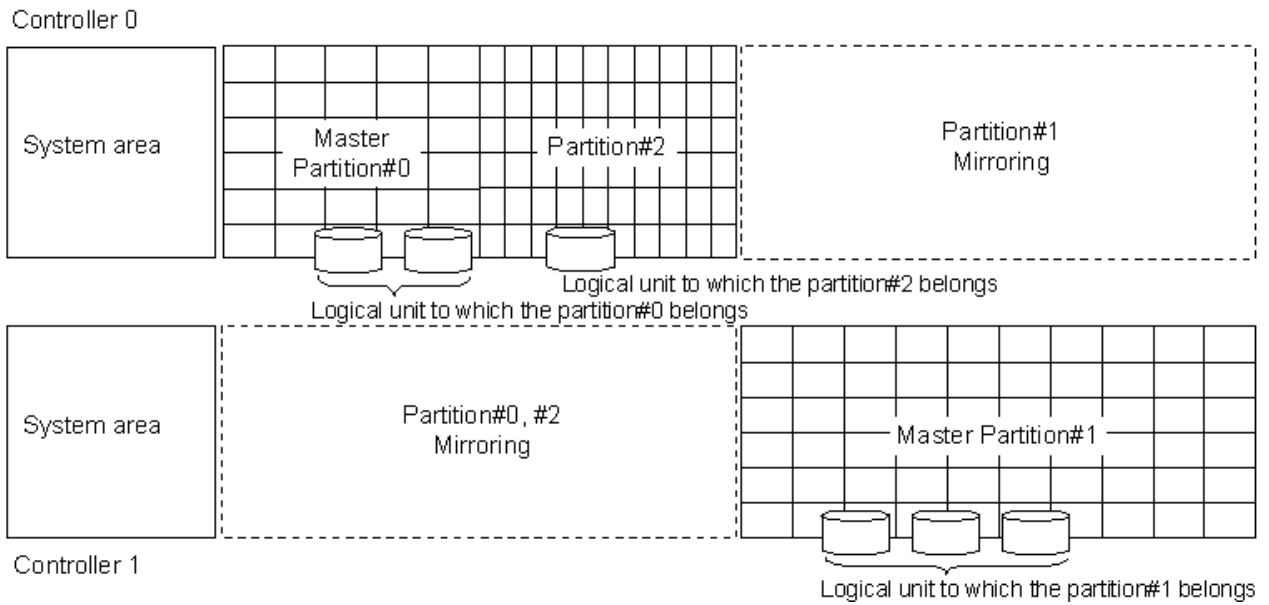
## Installing SnapShot or TCE or Dynamic Provisioning under Cache Partition Manager

SnapShot, TrueCopy Extended Distance (TCE), and Dynamic Provisioning use a portion of the cache to manage internal resources. This means that the cache capacity available to Cache Partition Manager becomes smaller (see [Table 5-15 on page 5-13](#) for additional details).

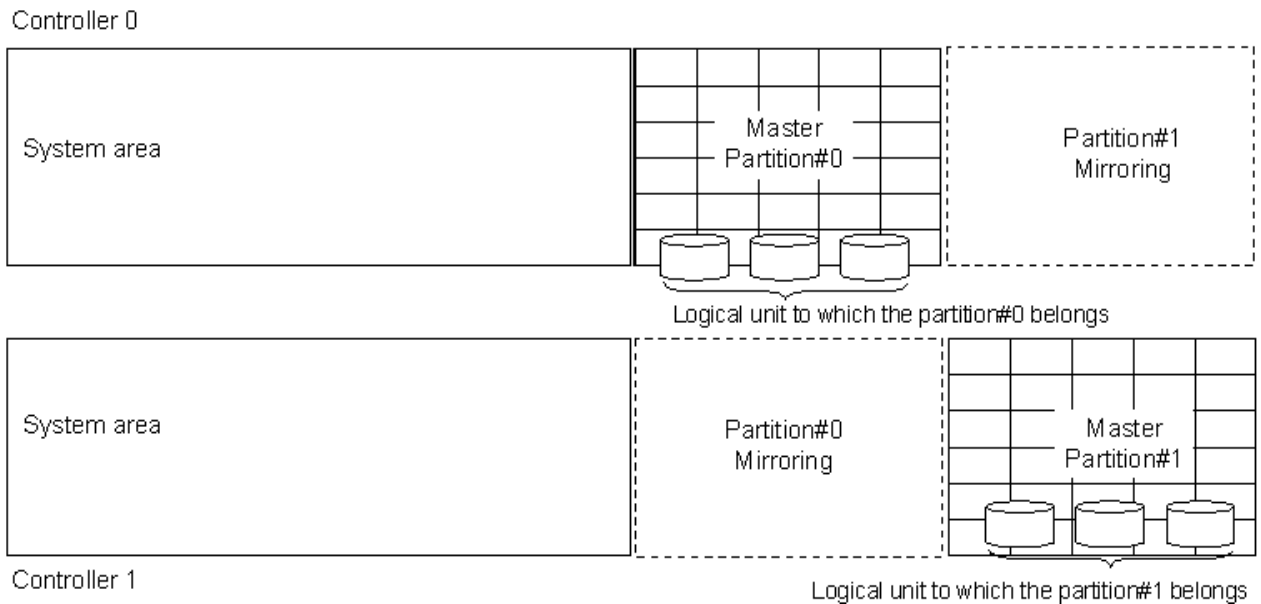
Note the following:

- Make sure that the cache partition information is initialized as shown below when SnapShot, TCE, or Dynamic Provisioning is installed under Cache Partition Manager.
- All the logical units are moved to the master partitions on the side of the default owner controller.
- All the sub-partitions are deleted and the size of the each master partition is reduced to a half of the user data area after the installation of either SnapShot, TCE, or Dynamic Provisioning.

Examples where Cache Partition Manager is used without and together with SnapShot, TCE, and Dynamic Provisioning are shown in [Figure 5-4](#) and [Figure 5-5](#) respectively.



**Figure 5-4: Cache Partition Manager without SnapShot, TCE, or Dynamic Provisioning**



**Figure 5-5: Cache Partition Manager with SnapShot, TCE, or Dynamic Provisioning**

See [Advanced Settings Java Applet on page 1-20](#) for information about the Java Runtime settings required to access the Cache Partition Manager from the Advanced Settings window.

## VMWare and Cache Partition Manager

The VMWare ESX has a function that clones the virtual machine. If the source LU and the target LU cloning are different, and the LUs belong to subpartitions, the time required for a clone to occur may become too long when vStorage APIs for array integration (VAAI) function is enabled. If you need to clone between LUs which belong to subpartitions, please disable the VAAI function of ESX to achieve higher performance.



# Cache Residency Manager

This chapter describes the Cache Residency Manager.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- ❑ [Cache Residency Manager overview](#)
- ❑ [Cache Residency Manager operations](#)

## Cache Residency Manager overview

The controller executes read/write commands to the logical unit using the Cache Residency Manager as follows:

- Read data accessed by the host is stored in the cache memory until the array is turned off. Subsequent host access to the previously accessed area is transferred from the cache memory without accessing the disk drives.
- Write data from the host is stored in the cache memory, and not written to the disk drives until the array is turned off.
- The cache memory utilizes a battery backup and the write data is duplicated (stored in the cache memory on both controllers).
- Write data stored in the cache memory is written to disk drives when the array is turned off and when the Cache Residency Manager is stopped by failures.

The internal controller operation is the same as that of the commands issued to other logical units, except that the read/write command to the logical unit with the Cache Residency Manager can be transferred from/to the cache memory without accessing the disk drives.

A delay can occur in the following cases even if Cache Residency Manager is applied to the logical units.

- The command execution may wait for the completion of commands issued to other logical units.
- The command execution may wait for the completion of commands other than read/write commands (such as the Mode Select command) issued to the same logical unit.
- The command execution may wait for the completion of processing for internal operation such as data reconstruction, etc.

### Termination Conditions

The following conditions terminate Cache Residency Manager. Cache Residency Manager restarts when the failures are corrected.

**Table 6-1: Cache Residency Manager Termination**

Condition	Description
The array is turned off	Normal case.
The cache capacity is changed and the available capacity of the cache memory is less than logical unit size	Cache uninstallation.
A controller failure	Failure.
The battery alarm occurs	Failure.
A battery backup circuit failure	Failure.

**Table 6-1: Cache Residency Manager Termination (Continued)**

Condition	Description
The number of PIN data (data unable to be written to disk drives because of failures) exceeds the threshold value	Failure.

Cache Residency Manager operations are restarted after failures are corrected.

## Disabling Conditions

The following conditions disable Cache Residency Manager.

**Table 6-2: Cache Residency Manager Disabling**

Condition	Description
The Cache Residency Manager setting is cleared	Caused by the user.
The Cache Residency Manager is disabled or uninstalled (locked)	Caused by the user.
The Cache Residency Manager logical unit or RAID group is deleted	Caused by the user.
The controller configuration is changed (Dual/Single)	Caused by the user.



**NOTE:** When the controller configuration is changed from single to dual after setting up the Cache Residency logical unit, the Cache Residency logical unit is cancelled. You can open the Cache Residency Manager in single configuration, but neither setup nor operation can be performed.

## Equipment

The following equipment is required for Cache Residency Manager.

**Table 6-3: Cache Residency Manager Equipment**

Item	Description
Controller configuration	Dual Controller configuration and controller is not blocked.
RAID level	RAID 5, RAID 6, or RAID 1+0.
Cache partition	Only the logical unit belonging to a master partition.
Number of logical units with the Cache Residency function	1/controller (2/arrays)

## Logical Unit Capacity

The maximum size of the Cache Residency Manager logical unit depends on the cache memory. Note that the Cache Residency logical unit is only assigned a master partition.

The capacity varies with Cache Partition Manager and SnapShot or TCE. There are three scenarios:

- Cache Partition Manager and SnapShot/TCE/Dynamic Provisioning re disabled
- Cache Partition Manager is disabled, while SnapShot/TCE/Dynamic Provisioning is enabled
- Cache Partition Manager is enabled, while SnapShot/TCE/Dynamic Provisioning is enabled or disabled
- Only when Dynamic Provisioning is valid

Note the following restrictions:

- When the hardware revision is 0200 and Dynamic Provisioning is valid, a supported capacity changes the DP Capacity Mode setting.
- When Cache Partition Manager, SnapShot/TCE/Dynamic provisioning are invalid (when the hardware revision is 0100).

Note the following restrictions:

- When Cache Partition Manager, SnapShot/TCE/Dynamic Provisioning are disabled when the hardware revision is 0100:
- When Cache Partition Manager, SnapShot/TCE/Dynamic provisioning are disabled, the maximum capacity of Cache Residency LU is as follows.

**Table 6-4: Supported Capacity of Cache Residency LU with Cache Partition Manager, SnapShot/TCE/Dynamic Provisioning Disabled**

AMS Equipment	Cache	Logical Unit Capacity
2100	1 GB/CTL	Approximately 88 MB
2100	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 551 MB
2100	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,535 MB
2300	1 GB/CTL	Approximately 49 MB
2300	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 511 MB
2300	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,417 MB
2300	8 GB/CTL	Approximately 3,327 MB
2500	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 167 MB
2500	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,063 MB
2500	6 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,988 MB
2500	8 GB/CTL	Approximately 2,923 MB
2500	10 GB/CTL	Approximately 3,848 MB
2500	12 GB/CTL	Approximately 4,774 MB

**Table 6-4: Supported Capacity of Cache Residency LU with Cache Partition Manager, SnapShot/TCE/Dynamic Provisioning Disabled**

AMS Equipment	Cache	Logical Unit Capacity
2500	16 GB/CTL	Approximately 6,703 MB

When Cache Partition Manager/Dynamic Provisioning are disabled, and SnapShot/TCE is enabled (when the hardware revision is 0100):

When Cache Partition Manager/Dynamic Provisioning are disabled, and SnapShot/TCE is enabled, the maximum capacity of Cache Residency LU is as follows.

**Table 6-5: Supported Capacity of Cache Residency LU with Cache Partition Manager/Dynamic Provisioning Disabled and SnapShot/TCE Enabled**

AMS Equipment	Cache	Logical Unit Capacity
2100	1 GB/CTL	SnapShot is not available.
2100	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 295 MB
2100	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 531 MB
2300	1 GB/CTL	SnapShot is not available.
2300	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 255 MB
2300	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 403 MB
2300	8 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,309 MB
2500	2 GB/CTL	SnapShot cannot be used together with Cache Residency Manager. The Cache Residency LU will be canceled.
2500	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 305 MB
2500	6 GB/CTL	Approximately 472 MB
2500	8 GB/CTL	Approximately 905 MB
2500	10 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,328 MB
2500	12 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,752 MB
2500	16 GB/CTL	Approximately 2,667 MB

When only Dynamic Provisioning is enabled (when the hardware revision is 0100):

When only Dynamic Provisioning is enabled, the maximum capacity of Cache Residency LU is as follows;

**Table 6-6: Supported Capacity of Cache Residency LU With Dynamic Provisioning Enabled**

AMS Equipment	Cache	Logical Unit Capacity
2100	1 GB/CTL	Approximately 59 MB
2100	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 511 MB
2100	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,506 MB

**Table 6-6: Supported Capacity of Cache Residency LU With Dynamic Provisioning Enabled**

AMS Equipment	Cache	Logical Unit Capacity
2300	1 GB/CTL	Dynamic Provisioning cannot be used together with Cache Residency Manager. the Cache Residency LU will be canceled.
2300	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 442 MB
2300	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,338 MB
2300	8 GB/CTL	Approximately 3,258 MB
2500	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 29 MB
2500	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 915 MB
2500	6 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,850 MB
2500	8 GB/CTL	Approximately 2,775 MB
2500	10 GB/CTL	Approximately 3,701 MB
2500	12 GB/CTL	Approximately 4,626 MB
2500	16 GB/CTL	Approximately 6,555 MB

**Table 6-7: Supported Capacity of Cache Residency LU with Dynamic Provisioning Enabled and DP Capacity Mode is Maximum Capacity**

AMS Equipment	Cache	Logical Unit Capacity
2100	1 GB/CTL	Snapshot not available
2100	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 452 MB
2100	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,437 MB
2300	1 GB/CTL	Snapshot not available
2300	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 354 MB
2300	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,260 MB
2300	8 GB/CTL	Approximately 3,179 MB
2500	2 GB/CTL	Snapshot not available
2500	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 807 MB
2500	6 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,732 MB
2500	8 GB/CTL	Approximately 2,667 MB
2500	10 GB/CTL	Approximately 3,592 MB
2500	12 GB/CTL	Approximately 4,518 MB
2500	16 GB/CTL	Approximately 6,447 MB

When Cache Partition Manager is disabled, and SnapShot/TCE/Dynamic Provisioning are enabled (when the hardware revision is 0100):

When Cache Partition Manager is disabled and SnapShot/TCE/Dynamic Provisioning are enabled, the maximum capacity of Cache Residency LU is as follows:

**Table 6-8: Supported Capacity of Cache Residency LU With Cache Partition Manager Disabled and SnapShot/TCE/Dynamic Provisioning Enabled**

AMS Equipment	Cache	Logical Unit Capacity
2100	1 GB/CTL	SnapShot is not available
2100	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 265 MB
2100	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 492 MB
2300	1 GB/CTL	SnapShot is not available
2300	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 187 MB
2300	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 334 MB
2300	8 GB/CTL	Approx 1,240 MB
2500	2 GB/CTL	SnapShot cannot be used together with Cache Residency Manager.
2500	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 157MB
2500	6 GB/CTL	Approximately 334 MB
2500	8 GB/CTL	Approximately 757 MB
2500	10 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,181 MB
2500	12 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,604 MB
2500	16 GB/CTL	Approximately 2,529 MB

**Table 6-9: Supported Capacity of Cache Residency LU With Cache Partition Manager is Disabled, and SnapShot/TCE/Dynamic Provisioning Enabled and DP Capacity Mode is Maximum Capacity**

AMS Equipment	Cache	Logical Unit Capacity
2100	1 GB/CTL	SnapShot not available
2100	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 196 MB
2100	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 433 MB
2300	1 GB/CTL	SnapShot not available
2300	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 108 MB
2300	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 255 MB
2300	8 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,161 MB
2500	2 GB/CTL	SnapShot not available
2500	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 49 MB
2500	6 GB/CTL	Approximately 226 MB
2500	8 GB/CTL	Approximately 649 MB
2500	10 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,072MB
2500	12 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,496 MB
2500	16 GB/CTL	Approximately 2,411 MB

When Cache Partition Manager, SnapShot/TCE/Dynamic Provisioning are disabled when the hardware revision is 0200:

When Cache Partition manager, SnapShot/TCE/Dynamic Provisioning are disabled, the maximum capacity of Cache Residency LU is as follows:

**Table 6-10: Supported Capacity of Cache Residency LU with Cache Partition Manager, SnapShot/TCE/Dynamic Provisioning Disabled**

AMS Equipment	Cache	Logical Unit Capacity
2100	1 GB/CTL	Approximately 88 MB
2100	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 482 MB
2100	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,456 MB
2300	1 GB/CTL	Approximately 49 MB
2300	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 462 MB
2300	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,328 MB
2300	8 GB/CTL	Approximately 3,218MB
2500	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 167 MB
2500	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 974 MB
2500	6 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,899 MB
2500	8 GB/CTL	Approximately 2,775 MB
2500	10 GB/CTL	Approximately 3,701 MB
2500	12 GB/CTL	Approximately 4,518 MB
2500	16 GB/CTL	Approximately 6,526 MB

**Table 6-11: Supported Capacity of Cache Residency LU with Cache Partition Manager/Dynamic Provisioning Disabled and SnapShot/TCE Enabled**

AMS Equipment	Cache	Logical Unit Capacity
2100	1 GB/CTL	SnapShot is not available.
2100	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 236 MB
2100	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 442 MB
2300	1 GB/CTL	SnapShot is not available.
2300	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 206 MB
2300	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 324 MB
2300	8 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,200 MB
2500	2 GB/CTL	SnapShot cannot be used together with Cache Residency Manager. The Cache Residency LU will be canceled.
2500	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 216 MB
2500	6 GB/CTL	Approximately 393 MB
2500	8 GB/CTL	Approximately 767 MB
2500	10 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,049 MB
2500	12 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,486 MB
2500	16 GB/CTL	Approximately 2,500 MB

A case exists when only Dynamic Provisioning is valid (when the hardware revision is 0200).

[Table 6-12 on page 6-9](#) details the maximum capacity of Cache Residency LU when only Dynamic Provisioning is valid.

**Table 6-12: Supported Capacity of Cache Residency LU With Dynamic Provisioning Enabled**

AMS Equipment	Cache	Logical Unit Capacity
2100	1 GB/CTL	Approximately 49 MB
2100	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 452 MB
2100	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,417 MB
2300	1 GB/CTL	Dynamic Provisioning cannot be used together with Cache Residency Manager. The Cache Residency LU will be canceled.
2300	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 393 MB
2300	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,260 MB
2300	8 GB/CTL	Approximately. 3,140 MB
2500	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 29MB
2500	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 826 MB
2500	6 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,762 MB
2500	8 GB/CTL	Approximately 2,638 MB
2500	10 GB/CTL	Approximately 3,563 MB
2500	12 GB/CTL	Approximately 4,370 MB
2500	16 GB/CTL	Approximately 6,388 MB

**Table 6-13: Supported Capacity of Cache Residency LU (When only Dynamic Provisioning is Enabled and DP Capacity Mode is Maximum Capacity)**

AMS Equipment	Cache	Logical Unit Capacity
2100	1 GB/CTL	Snapshot not available
2100	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 383 MB
2100	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,358 MB
2300	1 GB/CTL	Snapshot not available
2300	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 305 MB
2300	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,181 MB
2300	8 GB/CTL	Approximately 3,061 MB
2500	2 GB/CTL	Snapshot not available
2500	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 718 MB
2500	6 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,643 MB
2500	8 GB/CTL	Approximately 2,529 MB
2500	10 GB/CTL	Approximately 3,445 MB
2500	12 GB/CTL	Approximately 4,262 MB
2500	16 GB/CTL	Approximately 6,280 MB

When the following are true, the maximum capacity of the Cache Residency LU is as follows:

- When Cache Partition Manager is disabled and SnapShote/TCE/Dynamic Provisioning are enabled (when the hardware revision is 0200)
- When Cache Partition Manager is disabled and SnapShot/TCE/Dynamic Provisioning are enabled

**Table 6-14: Supported Capacity of Cache Residency LU (When Cache Partition Manager is Disabled, and SnapShot/TCE/Dynamic Provisioning are Enabled)**

AMS Equipment	Cache	Logical Unit Capacity
2100	1 GB/CTL	Snapshot not available
2100	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 196 MB
2100	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 413 MB
2300	1 GB/CTL	-(SnapShot is not available)
2300	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 137 MB
2300	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 246 MB
2300	8 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,122 MB
2500	2 GB/CTL	Snapshot not available
2500	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 68 MB
2500	6 GB/CTL	Approximately 246 MB

**Table 6-14: Supported Capacity of Cache Residency LU (When Cache Partition Manager is Disabled, and SnapShot/TCE/Dynamic Provisioning are Enabled)**

AMS Equipment	Cache	Logical Unit Capacity
2500	8 GB/CTL	Approximately 620 MB
2500	10 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,043 MB
2500	12 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,348 MB
2500	16 GB/CTL	Approximately 2,352 MB

**Table 6-15: Supported Capacity of Cache Residency LU (Cache Partition Manager is Disabled, and SnapShot/TCE/Dynamic Provisioning are Enabled, and DP Capacity Mode is Maximum Capacity)**

AMS Equipment	Cache	Logical Unit Capacity
2100	1 GB/CTL	SnapShot is not available
2100	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 137 MB
2100	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 344 MB
2300	1 GB/CTL	SnapShot is not available
2300	2 GB/CTL	Approximately 59 MB
2300	4 GB/CTL	Approximately 167 MB
2300	8 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,043 MB
2500	2 GB/CTL	Snapshot not available
2500	4 GB/CTL	Snapshot not available
2500	6 GB/CTL	Approximately 137 MB
2500	8 GB/CTL	Approximately 511 MB
2500	10 GB/CTL	Approximately 925 MB
2500	12 GB/CTL	Approximately 1,240 MB
2500	16 GB/CTL	Approximately 2,244 MB

When the following is true, the maximum capacity is decided by the capacity of a master partition:

- When Cache Partition Manager is enabled
- When Cache Partition Manager is valid, supported capacity of Cache Residency LU is not concerned SnapShot/TCE/Dynamic Provisioning is enabled or disabled

**Table 6-16: Supported Capacity of Cache Residency LU with Cache Partition Manager Enabled**

AMS Equipment	Cache	Cache Residency Logical Unit Capacity
2100	1 GB/CTL	Cache Partition Manager is not available.
2100	2 GB/CTL	(The master partition size (MB) See Note 1 - 200 MB) x 2,016 (Blocks)
2100	4 GB/CTL	
2300	1 GB/CTL	Cache Partition Manager is not available.
2300	2 GB/CTL	(The master partition size (MB) See Note 1 - 200 MB) x 2,016 (Blocks)
2300	4 GB/CTL	
2300	8 GB/CTL	
2500	2 GB/CTL	Cache Partition Manager is not available.
2500	4 GB/CTL	(The master partition size (MB) See Note 1 - 400 MB) x 2,016 (Blocks)
2500	6 GB/CTL	
2500	8 GB/CTL	
2500	10 GB/CTL	
2500	12 GB/CTL	
2500	16 GB/CTL	



**NOTE:** 1. The size becomes effective next time you start and is the master partition size. Use the value of the smaller one in a formula.



**NOTE:** 2. One (1) block = 512 bytes, and a fraction less than 2,047 MB is omitted.

## Restrictions

The following sections provide Cache Residency Manager restrictions.

**Table 6-17: Cache Residency Manager Restrictions**

Item	Description
Concurrent use of SnapShot	The Cache Residency Manager logical unit (logical unit cache residence) cannot be set to P-VOL, V-VOL, or data Pool volume. When using SnapShot, the logical unit capacity that can be specified as a cache residency is limited. For more information, see <a href="#">Table 2-24 on page 2-22</a> .
Concurrent use of Cache Partition Manager	You cannot change a partition affiliated with the Cache Residency logical unit. After you cancel the Cache Residency logical unit, you must set it up again.
Concurrent use of Volume Migration	The Cache Residency Manager logical unit (logical unit cache residence) cannot be set to P-VOL or S-VOL. After you cancel the Cache Residency logical unit, you must set it up again.
Concurrent use of Power Saving	A RAID group logical unit that has powered down can be specified as the Cache Residency logical unit. However, if a host accesses a Cache Residency RAID group logical unit that has powered down, and error occurs.
Concurrent use of TCE	The LU specified for Cache Residency Manager (LU cache residence) cannot be set to P-VOL, S-VOL, or a data pool volume.  When using TCE concurrently, LU capacity is limited.
Concurrent use of LUN Expansion	The unified LU cannot be set to the Cache Residency LU.  The Cache Residency LU cannot be used as a unified LU.
Concurrent use of RAID group expansion	You cannot configure an LU as a Cache Residency LU while executing a RAID group expansion.  You cannot execute a RAID group expansion for a RAID group that contains a Cache Residency LU.
LU Expansion	You cannot configure an LU as a Cache Residency LU if that LU has been expanded. growing as a Cache Residency LU.  You cannot expand LUs that have been configured as Cache Residency LUs.
LU Reduction (shrinking)	You can specify the LU after the LU reduction as a Cache Residency LU. However, you cannot execute an LU reduction for a Cache Residency LU.
Load balancing	The LU specified for Cache Residency Manager is out of the range of load balancing.
DP-VOLs	You cannot specify the DP-VOLs created by Dynamic Provisioning.

:

## Enabling cache residency

### To enable cache residency

1. Click **Set**. The Cache Residency dialog box appears, as shown in [Figure 6-1](#).

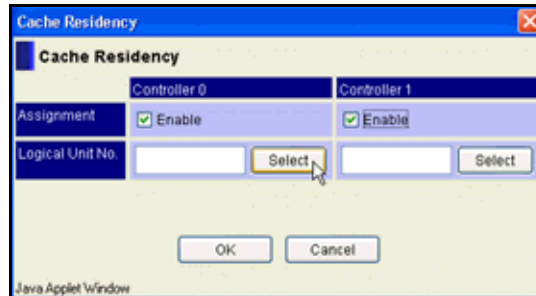


Figure 6-1: Cache Residency Dialog Box

2. In the **Assignment** field, do one of the following:
  - Select the **Enable** checkbox to set the residency logical unit.
  - Clear the **Enable** checkbox to cancel the residency logical unit.
3. In **Logical Unit No.** field, specify the logical unit number where you are setting or canceling the cache residency information. You can also click **Select** and specify the logical unit number.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Follow the on-screen instructions.



**NOTE:** Before you restart the array, be sure the host is not accessing data.

---

## Cache Residency Manager operations

The procedure for Cache Residency Manager appears below.

### Initial settings

#### To configure initial settings

1. Verify that you have the environments and requirements for Cache Residency Manager (see [Preinstallation information on page 2-2](#)).
2. Set the Cache Residency Manager (see [Setting and canceling residency logical units on page 6-15](#)).

## Stopping Cache Residency Manager

### To stop Cache Residency Manager

1. Cancel the logical unit (see [Setting and canceling residency logical units on page 6-15](#)).
2. Disable Cache Residency Manager (see [Setting and canceling residency logical units on page 6-15](#)).

Before managing cache residency logical units, make sure that they have been defined.

## Setting and canceling residency logical units

### To set and cancel residency logical units

1. Start Navigator 2 and log in. The Arrays window appears
2. Click the appropriate array.
3. Expand the **Settings** list, and click **Advanced Settings**.
4. Click **Open Advanced Settings**. After some minutes, the Array Unit window appears.
5. Click **Cache Residency** from the Performance option in the tree view. The Cache Residency dialog box displays as shown in [Figure 6-2](#).

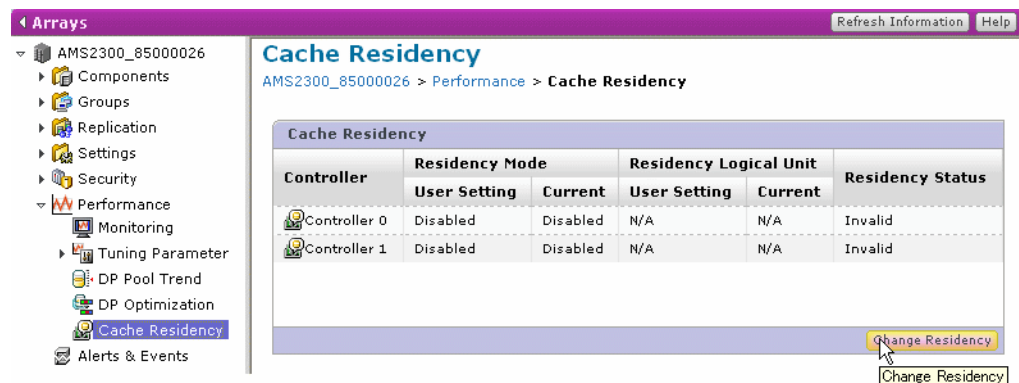


Figure 6-2: Cache Residency dialog box

6. Click **Change Residency**. The Change Residency screen displays as shown in [Figure 6-3](#).

## Change Residency

Help

**Residency Property**

Enter the information for Cache Residency. When you let logical unit be resident newly, click Residency Mode, a logical unit check box in the available list. When you release it, click off Residency Mode.

Controller 0: Residency Mode:  Enable

Logical Unit:

Available logical units					
Rows/Page: 25					
Page 1 of 1					
<input type="checkbox"/>	LUN	Capacity	RAID Group	RAID Level	Dri
<input type="checkbox"/>	0100	35.0MB	000	RAID5(4D+1P)	SAE
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0200	50.0MB	000	RAID5(4D+1P)	SAE
<input type="checkbox"/>	0300	100.0MB	000	RAID5(4D+1P)	SAE

Controller 1: Residency Mode:  Enable

Logical Unit:

Available logical units					
Rows/Page: 25					
Page 1 of 1					
<input type="checkbox"/>	LUN	Capacity	RAID Group	RAID Level	Dri
<input type="checkbox"/>	0100	35.0MB	000	RAID5(4D+1P)	SAE
<input type="checkbox"/>	0200	50.0MB	000	RAID5(4D+1P)	SAE
<input type="checkbox"/>	0300	100.0MB	000	RAID5(4D+1P)	SAE

OK Cancel

**Figure 6-3: Change Residency dialog box**

7. Click the **Enable** checkbox of the Controller 0 or Controller 1. To cancel Cache Residency, uncheck the **Enable** checkbox for the selected controller.
8. Select a LUN and click **Ok**. A message box displays.
9. Follow the on-screen instructions. A message displays confirming the optional feature installed successfully. Mark the checkbox and click **Reboot Array**.
10. To complete the installation, restart the storage system. The feature will close upon restarting the storage system. The storage system cannot access the host until the reboot completes and the system restarts. Restarting usually takes from six to 25 minutes.



**NOTE:** The storage system may require more time to respond, depending on its condition. If it does not respond after 25 minutes, check the condition of the system.

## NAS Unit Considerations

The following items are considerations for using the NAS unit when it is connected to the storage system.

- Check the following items in advance:
- NAS unit is connected to the storage system. (\*1).

- NAS unit is in operation (\*2).
- A failure has not occurred on the NAS unit. (\*3).
  - Confirm with the storage system administrator to check whether the NAS unit is connected or not.
  - Confirm with the NAS unit administrator to check whether the NAS service is operating or not.
  - Ask the NAS unit administrator to check whether failure has occurred or not by checking with the NAS administration software, NAS Manager GUI, List of RAS Information, etc. In case of failure, execute the maintenance operation together with the NAS maintenance personal.
- Correspondence when connecting the NAS unit:
 

If the NAS unit is connected, ask the NAS unit administrator for termination of NAS OS and planned shutdown of the NAS unit.
- Points to be checked after completing this operation:
 

Ask the NAS unit administrator to reboot the NAS unit. After rebooting, ask the NAS unit administrator to refer to "Recovering from FC path errors" in "Hitachi NAS Manager User's Guide" and check the status of the Fibre Channel path and to recover the FC path if it is in a failure status.

In addition, if there are any personnel for the NAS unit maintenance, ask the NAS unit maintenance personnel to reboot the NAS unit.

## VMware and Cache Residency Manager

The VMware ESX has a function to clone the virtual machine. If the source LU or the target LU of cloning is set the Residency LU, the time required for the clone may become long when vStorage APIs for Array Integration (VAAI) function is enabled. If you need to clone the Residency LU, please disable the VAAI function of ESX.



# Data Retention Utility

This chapter describes the Data Retention utility.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- ❑ [Data Retention Utility overview](#)
- ❑ [Data Retention Utility operations](#)

## Data Retention Utility overview

Table 7-1 describes the Data Retention Utility specifications.

**Table 7-1: Data Retention Specifications**

Item	Description
Logical unit setting	Set each logical unit. However, the expiration Lock is set for each array.
Number of logical units you can set	AMS2100: 2,048 logical units. AMS2300 and AMS2500: 4,096 logical units.
Access attributes	Read/Write (default). S-VOL Disable. Read Only. Protect. Read Capacity 0 (can only be set with CCI). Invisible from Inquiry Command (can only be set with CCI).
Protection against access attribute changes	A change from Read Only, Protect, Read Capacity 0, or invisible from Inquiry Command to Read/Write is rejected when the Retention Term does not expire or the Expiration Lock is on.
Unsupported logical units	Command devices. DMLUs. Sub-logical units (of a unified logical unit). Unformatted logical units. Logical units set as a Pool volumes in SnapShot.
Relation with ShadowImage/ SnapShot	When setting S-VOL Disable for a logical unit, the pair formation using the logical unit as an S-VOL (Pool volume) is suppressed. Setting of the S-VOL Disable of a volume that has already become an S-VOL (V-VOL or Pool volume) is not suppressed when the pair status is Split. When the S-VOL Disable is set for a P-VOL, you cannot restore SnapShot and ShadowImage.
Powering off/on	An access attribute that has been set is retained even when the power is turned off/on.
Controller detachment	An access attribute that has been set is retained even when a controller detaches.
Relation with drive restoration	A correction copy, dynamic sparing, and copy back are performed as a usual logical unit.
Logical unit detachment	An access attribute that has been set for a logical unit is retained even when the logical unit is detached.
Firmware replacement	For logical units whose access attributes are not Read/Write or S-VOL Disable, the initial setting up and initialization of settings (Configuration Clear) are suppressed.
Access attribute setting	The following operations cannot be performed for logical units whose access attributes are not Read/Write, and for RAID groups that include logical units: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Logical unit deletion</li> <li>• Logical unit formatting</li> <li>• RAID group deletion</li> </ul>

**Table 7-1: Data Retention Specifications (Continued)**

Item	Description
Setting by Navigator 2	When Navigator 2 sets an access attribute, it can only be set for one logical unit at a time.
Unified logical units	A unified logical unit whose access level is not Read/Write, cannot be composed or dissolved.
Deleting, expanding, or reducing LU	An LU that has been configured for data retention where an access attribute has been set cannot be deleted, expanded, or reduced. You may set an access attribute after an LU has been expanded or reduced.
Cache Residency Manager	A logical unit whose access attribute is set can be used for the Cache Residency Manager. Conversely, an access attribute can be set for a logical unit in the Cache Residency Manager.
Concurrent use of LUN Manager	Yes.
Concurrent use of Volume Migration	Yes. The logical unit which executed the migration carries over the access attribute and retention term set by Data Retention, to the logical unit of the migration destination. When the access attribute is not Read/Write, the logical unit cannot be specified as an S-VOL of Volume Migration.
Concurrent use of SNMP Agent	Yes.
Concurrent use of Cache Partition Manager	Yes.
Concurrent Use of Dynamic Provisioning	Available. However, the DP-VOLs created by Dynamic Provisioning cannot be used. The Data Retention Utility can be executed for the normal logical unit.
Setting range of Retention Term	Unlimited.

## Usage

This section provides notes on using Data Retention.

### Logical unit access attributes

Do not modify logical unit access attributes while operations are performed on the data residing on the logical unit, or the operation may terminate abnormally.

You cannot change access attributes for the following logical volumes:

- A logical unit assigned to command device
- A logical unit assigned to a DMLU
- An uninstalled logical unit
- A unformatted logical unit

## Unified logical units

You cannot combine logical volumes that do not have a Read/Write attribute. Unification of a unified logical unit, whose access attribute is not Read/Write, cannot be dissolved.

## SnapShot and TCE

A logical unit whose access attribute is not Read/Write, cannot be assigned to a data pool. Additionally, an access attribute that is not Read/Write cannot be set for a logical unit that has been assigned to a data pool.

## SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command

When a SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command is received from a host, it usually writes the write pending data stored in the cache memory to drives. However, with Data Retention, the write pending data is not written to drives on the SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command.

When you need to write the write pending data stored in the cache memory, turn on the Synchronize Cache Execution Mode through Navigator 2. When you are done, turn it off, or the host application may fail.

## Host Side Application example

Uses IXOS-eCONserver.

## Operating System (OS) Restrictions

This section describes the restrictions of each operating system.

### Logical units attributes set from the operating system

If you set access attributes from the OS, you must do so before mounting the logical unit. If the access attributes are set after the logical unit is mounted, the system may not operate properly.

When a command (create partition, format, etc.) is issued to a logical unit with access attributes, it appears as if the command ended normally. However, although the information is written to the host cache memory, the new information is not reflected on the logical unit.

A OS may not recognize a logical unit when the logical unit number (LUN) is larger than the one on which Invisible mode was set.

### Windows 2000

A logical unit with a Read Only access attribute cannot be mounted.

## **Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2008**

When mounting a logical unit with a Read Only attribute, do not use the diskpart command to mount and unmount a volume. Use the **-x mount** and **-x umount** CCI commands.

## **Windows 2000/Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2008**

When setting a volume, Data Retention can only be used for basic disks. When Data Retention is applied to dynamic disks, logical units are not correctly recognized.

## **Unix**

When mounting a logical unit with a Read Only attribute, mount it as Read Only (using the mount **-r** command).

## **Hewlett Packard Unix (HP-UX)**

If there is a logical unit with a Read Only attribute, host shutdown may not be possible. When shutting down the host, change the logical unit attribute from Read Only to Protect.

If there is a logical unit with Protect attribute, host startup time may be lengthy. When starting the host, change the logical unit attribute to Read Only, or make the logical unit unrecognizable from the host by using mapping functions.

If a write is completed on the logical unit with a Read Only attribute, this may result in no response; therefore, do not perform write commands (e.g., dd command).

If Read/Write is done on a logical unit with a Protect attribute, this may result in no response; therefore, do not perform read or write commands (e.g. dd command).

## **Logical Volume Manager (LVM)**

When changing the LVM configuration, the specified logical unit must be temporarily suspended using the `raidvchkset -vg` command. Place the logical unit again in the status in which it is checked when the LVM configuration change is completed.

## **HA Cluster Software**

At times, a logical unit cannot be used as a resource for the HA cluster software (such as the MSCS), because the HA cluster software periodically writes management information in the management area to check resource propriety.

# Data Retention Utility operations

## Initial settings

### To configure initial settings

1. Verify that you have the environments and requirements for Data Retention (see [Preinstallation information on page 2-2](#)).
2. Set the command device using the CCI. Refer to the following documentation for more information on the CCI:
  - *Hitachi AMS 2000 Family Command Control Interface (CCI) Reference Guide* (MK-97DF8121)
  - *Hitachi AMS 2000 Family Command Control Interface (CCI) Installation Guide* (MK-97DF8122)
  - *Hitachi AMS 2000 Family Command Control Interface (CCI) User's Guide* (MK-97DF8123)
3. Set the configuration definition file using the CCI. Refer to the appropriate CCI end-user document (see list above).
4. Set the environment variable using the CCI. Refer to the appropriate CCI end-user document (see list above).

## Optional operations

### To configure optional operations

1. Set an attribute (see [Setting attributes on page 7-8](#)).
2. Changing the retention term (see [Setting attributes on page 7-8](#)).
3. Set an S-VOL (see [Setting S-VOLs on page 7-8](#)).
4. Set the expiration lock (see [Setting expiration locks on page 7-8](#)).

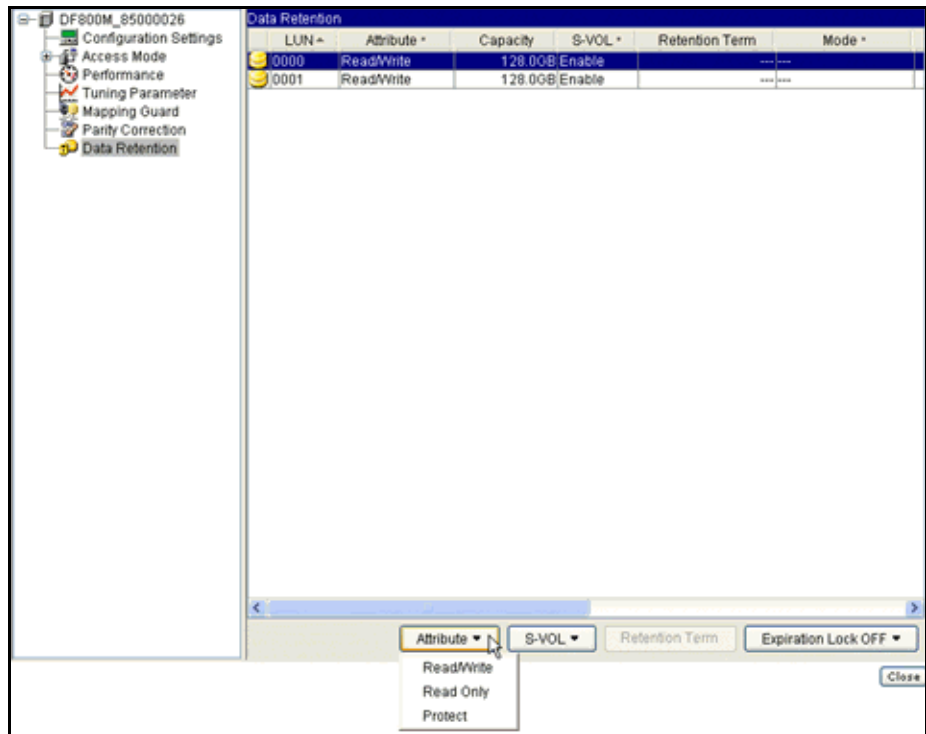
## Opening the Data Retention window

To open the Data Retention window:

1. Start Navigator 2 and log in. The Arrays window appears
2. Click the appropriate array.
3. Expand the **Settings** list, and click **Advanced Settings**.
4. Click **Open Advanced Settings**. After some minutes, the Array Unit window appears.

The Java applet window may time out after 20 minutes due to an automatic logout function. If this occurs, close the Web browser, stop the SNM2 Server and restart. Launch the SNM2 GUI and return to the array you want to manage.

5. Click **Data Retention**. [Figure 7-1](#) appears.



**Figure 7-1: Data Retention Window**

6. The following options are available:
- **LUN** - logical unit number
  - **Attribute** - Read/Write, Read Only, Protect, or Can't Guard
  - **Capacity** - logical unit size
  - **S-VOL** - whether the logical unit can be set to S-VOL (Enable) or not (Disable)
  - **Mode** - the retention mode
  - **Retention Term** - how long the data is retained



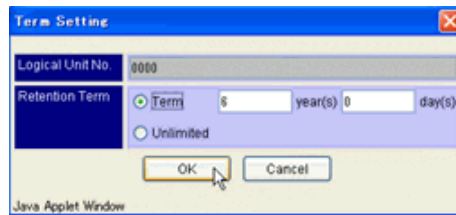
**NOTE:** When the attribute Read Only or Protect is set, the S-VOL is disabled.

7. Continue with the following sections to configure the desired Data Retention attributes.

## Setting attributes

### To set data retention attributes

1. Select a LUN, and from the **Attribute** drop-down menu, specify the appropriate information. The **Term Setting** dialog box appears, as shown in [Figure 7-2](#).



**Figure 7-2: Term Setting Dialog Box**

2. In the **Retention** Term field, specify the appropriate information and click **OK**.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions.

## Setting S-VOLs

### To set S-VOLs

1. Select a LUN, and from the **S-VOL** drop-down menu, select **Disable**.
2. Follow the on-screen instructions.

## Setting expiration locks

### To set expiration locks

1. From the **Expiration Lock** drop-down menu, select **ON**.
2. Follow the on-screen instructions.

# LUN Manager

This chapter describes LUN Manager. This chapter covers the following topics:

- ❑ [LUN Manager overview](#)
- ❑ [LUN Manager operations](#)

## LUN Manager overview

This section provides the Fibre Channel and iSCSI specifications for LUN Manager.

**Table 8-1: LUN Manager Fibre Channel Specifications**

Item	LUN Manager Fibre Channel Specifications
Host Group	128 host groups can be set for each port, and host group 0 (zero) is required.
Setting and Deleting Host Groups	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Host groups 1-127 can be set or deleted.</li> <li>Host group 0 cannot be deleted. To delete the World Wide Name (WWN) and logical unit mapping of Host group 0, initialize Host group 0.</li> </ul>
Host Group Name	A name is assigned to a host group when it is created, and this name can be changed.
WWN (Port Name)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Up to 128 WWNs can be set for each port.</li> <li>128 WWNs for host bus adaptors (HBAs) and be set for a host group or port.</li> <li>The WWN cannot be assigned to another host group on the same port.</li> <li>A WWN may also be set to the host group by selecting it from an HBA WWN connected to the port.</li> </ul>
Nickname	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An optional name may be assigned to a WWN allocated to a host group.</li> <li>A name assigned to a WWN is valid until the WWN is deleted.</li> </ul>
Host Connection Mode	The host connection mode of a host group can be changed.
Logical Unit Mapping	Logical unit mapping can be set to the host group. 2,048 logical unit mappings can be set for a host group, and 16,384 can be set for a port.
Enable and Disable Port Settings	LUN Manager can be enabled or disabled for each port. When LUN Manager is disabled, the information is available when it is enabled again.
Online Setting	When adding, modifying, or deleting settings, restarting the array is not required. To modify settings, Navigator 2 is required.
Maximum Queue Depth	32 commands per logical unit, and 512 commands per port.

**Table 8-2: LUN Manager iSCSI Specifications**

Item	LUN Manager Fibre Channel Specifications
Target	255 targets can be set for each port, and target 0 (zero) is required.
Setting/Deleting a Target	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Targets 1 through 254 can be set or deleted.</li> <li>Target 0 (zero) cannot be deleted. To delete the initiator</li> <li>iSCSI Name, options, and logical unit mapping of target 0 (zero), initialize target 0.</li> </ul>

**Table 8-2: LUN Manager iSCSI Specifications (Continued)**

Item	LUN Manager Fibre Channel Specifications
Target alias	A name is assigned to a target upon creation. This alias can be changed.
iSCSI Name	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Used for identifying initiators and targets. iSCSI Name needs to have a World Wide Name (World Wide Unique), and iqu and eui are supported.</li> <li>• The iSCSI Name of a target is set as a World Wide Unique name when initializing the target.</li> </ul>
Initiator iSCSI Name	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Up to 255 Initiator iSCSI Names can be set for each port.</li> <li>• 256 initiator drivers or HBA iSCSI names can be set per target per port.</li> <li>• The same Initiator iSCSI Name can be used by both targets on the same port.</li> <li>• The Initiator iSCSI Name to be set to the target can also be selected from the initiator drivers connected to the port, and the detected Initiators of the HBA.</li> </ul>
Target iSCSI Name	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Target iSCSI Name The Target iSCSI Name can be set for each target.</li> <li>• The same Target iSCSI Name cannot be set to another target on the same port.</li> </ul>
Initiator Name	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An Initiator Name can be assigned to an initiator iSCSI</li> <li>• Name allocated to the target. An Initiator Name can be deleted.</li> <li>• An Initiator Name assigned to an initiator iSCSI Name is valid until the initiator iSCSI Name is deleted.</li> </ul>
Discovery	SendTargets and iSNS are supported.
Authentication of login	None and CHAP are supported.
User Authentication Information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• User authentication may can be set for 512 ports.</li> <li>• The user authentication information can be set to the target that has been set by the LUN Manager.</li> <li>• The same user authentication information can also be set to other targets on the same port.</li> </ul>
Host Connection Mode	The Host Connection Mode of the target can be changed.
Logical Unit Mapping	A logical unit can be set to the target. 2,048 logical unit mappings can be set for a target. Up to 16,384 logical unit mappings can be set for a port.
Enable/Disable Settings for Each Port	When LUN Manager is disabled, the LUN Manager information is saved.
Online Setting	When adding, modifying, or deleting settings, you do not have to restart the array.
Other Settings	Navigator 2 is required.
Using LUN Manager with Other Features	The maximum number of configurable hosts is 239 if TrueCopy is installed on the array.
iSCSI target settings copy function	iSCSI target settings can be copied to the other ports to configure an alternate path.

**Table 8-3: Operating System (OS) and Host Bus Adapter (HBA) iSCSI Combinations**

Operating System	Software Initiator/Host Bus Adapter
Windows XP <sup>®</sup>	Microsoft iSCSI Software initiator + NIC
Windows <sup>®</sup> Server <sup>™</sup> 2003	Microsoft iSCSI Software initiator + NIC Qlogic <sup>®</sup> HBA
Windows 2000 <sup>®</sup>	Microsoft iSCSI Software initiator + NIC Qlogic HBA
Linux <sup>®</sup>	SourceForge iSCSI Software initiator + NIC Qlogic HBA

For additional OS support information, please review the following document located at the Hitachi Data Systems support site. Alternatively, go to <http://www.hds.com/products/interoperability/>.

## Design configurations and best practices

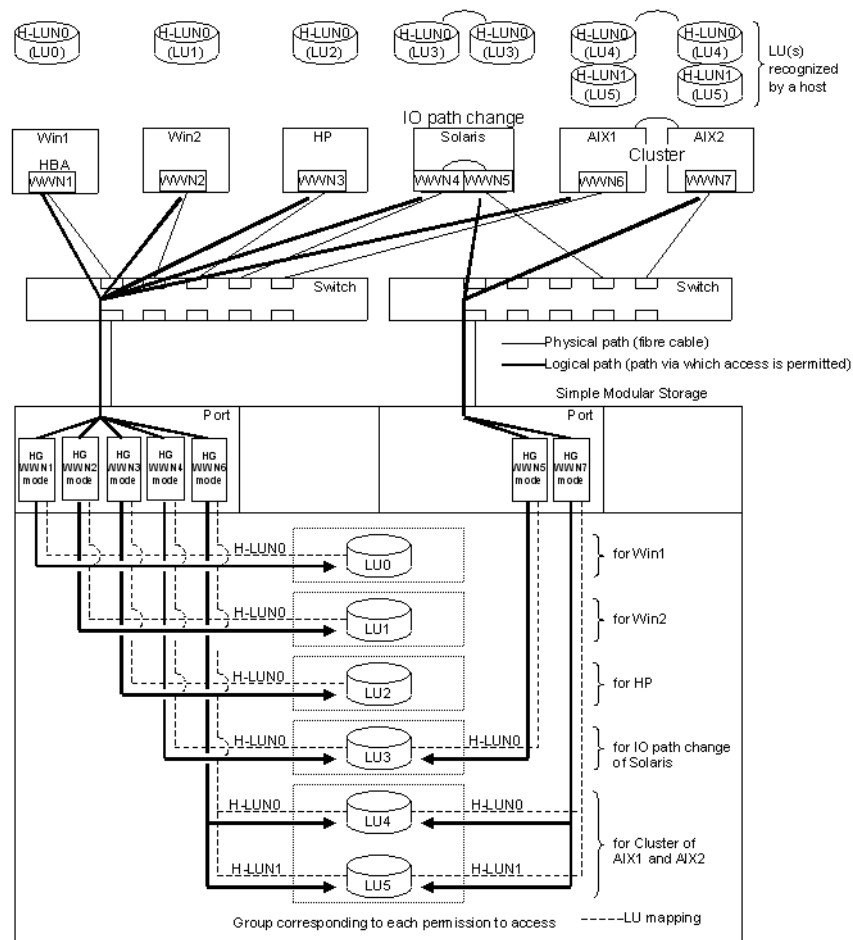
The following sections provide some basic design configurations and best practices information on setting up arrays under the Fibre Channel and iSCSI protocols.

### Fibre Channel configuration

The array is connected to the host with an optical fibre cable. The end of the cable on the host side is connected to a host bus adapter (HBA) and the end of the cable on the array is connected to the array port.

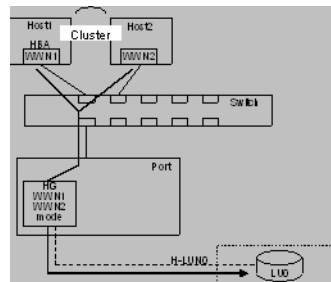
Logical units can be grouped and assigned to a port as a host group. You can specify which HBA can access that group by assigning the WWNs of the HBAs to each host group.

Identify which logical units you want to use with a host, and then define a host group on that port for them (see [Figure 8-1 on page 8-5](#)).

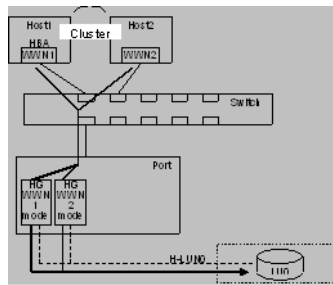


**Figure 8-1: Fibre Channel System Configuration**

Examples of configurations for creating host groups in multipathed and clustered environments appear in [Figure 8-2](#) and [Figure 8-3](#).



**Figure 8-2: One Host Group Fibre Channel Configuration**



**Figure 8-3: Two Host Groups Fibre Channel Configuration**

## Fibre Channel design considerations

When connecting multiple hosts to an array port, make sure you do the following.

### Fibre Channel system design

- Assign logical units to hosts. Group logical units into host groups. Specify the host group when using LUN Manager.
- Assign logical units to RAID groups. A logical unit belongs to a RAID group. When two logical units (belonging to the same RAID group) are accessed at the same time, performance may decrease. When operating more than one host at the same time, assign logical units to separate RAID groups.
- Determine how to prevent unauthorized access. Determine input/output paths between hosts and logical units. The input/output path is a route through which access from the host is permitted.

Set switch zoning to prevent interference from the other hosts that share the same switch. When the zoning is set, ports outside the zone do not affect ports within the zone.

If you do not have enough ports, increase their number using the fibre channel switch.

- Determine queue depth. Multiple hosts can be connected to a single port. However, the queue depth that can be handled by one port is limited, and performance drops if that limit is exceeded. To avoid performance drops, specify the queue depth so that the sum for all hosts does not exceed the port's limit.

### Fibre system configuration

To specify the input/output paths between hosts and logical units, set the following for each array. Keep a record of the array settings. For example, if an HBA is replaced, change the WWN name accordingly.

- Host group
- WWN of HBA
- Logical unit mapping

- Host connection mode

Connect the hosts and the array to a switch, and set a zone for the switch. Create a diagram and keep a record of the connections between the switch and hosts, and between the switch and the array. For example, when the switch is replaced, replace the connections.

## iSCSI system design considerations

This section provides information on what you should consider when setting up your iSCSI network using LUN Manager.

### Overview

To set up and manage iSCSI network storage using LUN Manager:



---

**CAUTION! To prevent unauthorized access to the array during setup, perform the first two bullets with the array not connected to the network.**

---

- Use Storage Navigator Modular 2 to set up logical units on the array.
- Use LUN Manager to set up the following on the array:
  - For each array port that will connect to the network, add one or more targets and set up target options.
  - Map the logical units to targets.
  - Register CHAP users that are authorized to access the logical units.
  - Keep a record of the iSCSI names and related settings to simplify making any changes later.
- Physically connect the array to the network.
- Connect hosts to their targets on the array by using the Initiator function in LUN Manager to select the host's initiator driver or the initiator iSCSI name of the HBA.
- As a security measure, use LUN Manager in assignment mode to determine input/output paths between hosts and logical units. The input/output path is a route through which access from the host is permitted.
- When connecting multiple hosts to an array port, verify and set the queue depth. If additional commands from the additional hosts exceed the port's limit, increase the queue depth setting.
- Test host connections to the logical units on the array.
- Perform maintenance as needed: host and HBA addition, logical unit addition, HBA replacement, and switch replacement. Refer to your HBA vendor's documentation and Web site.

### iSCSI network port and switch considerations

This section provides information on when to use switches and what type of network ports you should use for your application.

- Design the connections of the hosts and the arrays for constructing the iSCSI environment. When connecting the array to more hosts than its ports, design the Network Switch connection and the Virtual LAN (VLAN).
- Choose a network interface for each host, either an iSCSI HBA (host bus adapter) or a NIC (network interface card) with a software initiator driver. The NIC and software initiator combination costs less. However, the HBA, with its own processor, minimizes the demand on the host from protocol processing.
- If the number of hosts to connect is greater than the number of iSCSI ports, network switches are needed to connect them.
- Array iSCSI cannot connect directly to a switch that does not support 1000BASE-T (full-duplex). However, a switch that supports both 1000BASE-T (full-duplex) and 1000BASE-SX or 100BASE-TX, will allow communication with 1000BASE-SX or 100BASE-TX.
- All connections direct to iSCSI in the IP-SAN should be 1000BASE-T (full-duplex).
- 100BASE-T decreases IP-SAN performance. Instead, use 1000BASE-T (full-duplex) for all connections.
- Array iSCSI does not support direct or indirect connections to a network peripheral that only supports 10BASE.
- The network switch is available as long as it is transparent to the arrays (port base VLAN, etc.).
- Array iSCSI does not support tagged VLAN or link aggregation. The packets to transfer such protocols should be filtered out in switches.
- When IP-SAN is designed, it is similar to construct the traditional network. Overlapping of addresses or a loop made in a subnet will cause serious degrade of communication performance and even cause disconnections.
- Network switches with management functions such as SNMP can facilitate network troubleshooting.
- To achieve the performance or security of iSCSI communication, you need to separate an IP-SAN (i.e., the network on which iSCSI communication is done) from the other network (management LAN, office LAN, other IP-SAN, etc.). The switch port VLAN function will be able to separate the networks logically.
- When multiple NICs are installed in a host, they should have addresses that belong to different network segments.

For iSCSI port network settings, note the following:

- Make sure to set the IP address (IPv4) to each iSCSI port so that it does not overlap the other ports (including other network equipment ports). Then set the appropriate subnet mask and default gateway address to each port.
- Targets are set to the subordinate of iSCSI ports. Target 0 is made in default for each iSCSI ports.
- Each iSCSI target is assigned its iSCSI name automatically.

- When connecting hosts and one port of the array using the network switch, a control to distinguish accessible host is required for each LU.

### Additional system design considerations

Consider the following before configuring the array for your iSCSI network.

- Network boot disk is not supported. You cannot use an array as a “netboot” device as it does not support operation as a network boot disk
- Array reboot is not required for LUN manager changes.  
With LUN Manager, you can add, modify, or delete a target during system operation. For example, if an additional disk is installed or an additional host is connected, an additional target may still be created. If removing an existing host, the target that is connected to the host is deleted first and then the host is removed.
- Ensure that the host demand on an array does not exceed bandwidth.
- Use redundant paths to help ensure array availability if hardware components fail.
- Multiple host connects can affect performance.  
Up to 255 hosts can be connected to an iSCSI port. It is possible to connect up to 255 hosts to an iSCSI port. Too many hosts, however, can increase network traffic beyond the processing capacity of the port. When using LUN Manager, you should design a system configuration to evenly distribute traffic concentrated at the port, controller, and disk drive.
- Use iSNS where possible to facility target discovery and management. Doing so eliminates the need to know IP addresses. Hosts must be connected to the IP-SAN to implement iSNS.
- iSCSI digests and performance.  
For arrays that support both an iSCSI Header digest and an iSCSI Data digest, you can enable the digests to verify the integrity of network data. However, the verification has a modest cost in processing power at the hosts and arrays, in order to generate and check the data digest code. Typically data transfer decreases to about 90%. (This rate will be affected by network configuration, host performance, host application, and so forth).



**NOTE:** Enable digests when using an L3 switch (including router) to connect the host to the array iSCSI port.

---

To enable header and data digests, refer to your iSCSI initiator documentation, which may describe it as Cyclical Redundancy Checking (CRC), CRC32, or a checksum parameter Host Competition for Disk Access within a RAID Group Lowers Performance.

- Providing iSCSI network security. To provide network security, consider implementing one or more of the following:

- Closed IP-SAN

It is best to design IP-SANs completely isolated from the other external networks.

- CHAP authentication

You must register the CHAP user who is authorized for the connection and the secret in the array. The user can be authenticated for each target by using LUN Manager.

The user name and the secret for the user authentication on the host side are first set to the port, and then assigned to the target. The same user name and secret may be assigned to multiple targets within the same port.

You can import CHAP authentication information in a CSV format file. For security, you can only import, and not export CHAP authentication files with LUN Manager. Always keep CSV files secure in order to prevent others from using the information to gain unauthorized access.

When registering for CHAP authentication you must use the iSCSI name, acquiring the iSCSI Name for each platform and each HBA. Set the port-based VLAN of the network switch if necessary.

- Verify host/logical unit paths with LUN Manager

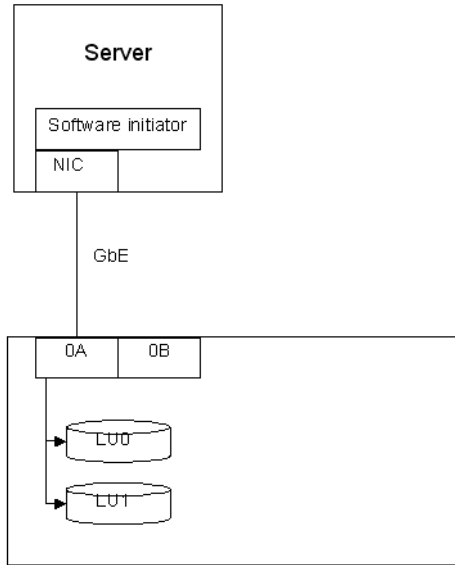
Determine input/output paths between hosts and logical units according to the assignment mode using LUN Manager. The input/output path is a route through which access from the host is permitted.

### **System topology examples**

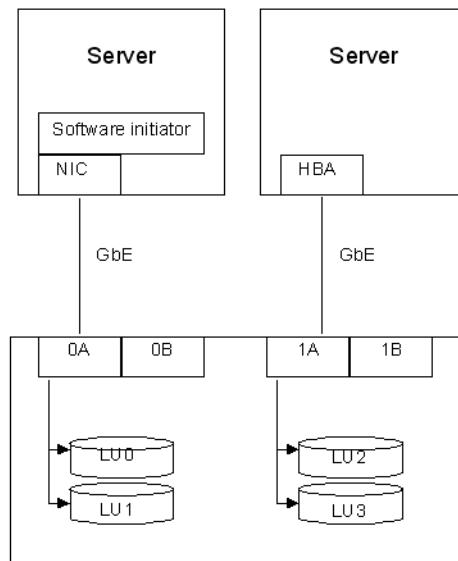
The array is connected to a host with an Ethernet cable (category 6). The end of the cable on the host side is connected to an iSCSI HBA or Network Interface Card (NIC). The end of the cable on the array side is connected to a port of the array.

Direct Attached and the Network Switch (Network Attached) are supported connection methods, and an IP-SAN connection using a Layer 2 or Layer 3 switch is also supported.

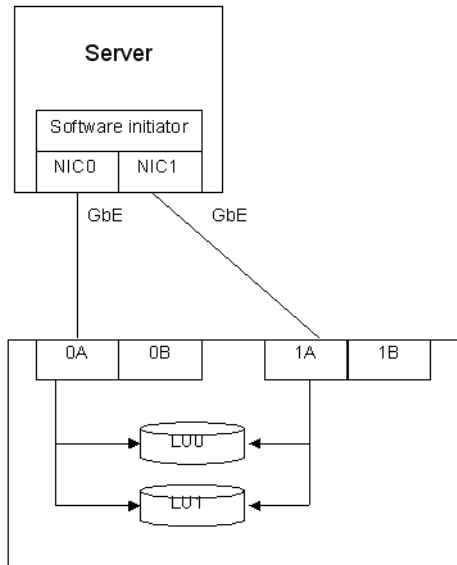
The following illustrations show possible topologies for direct attached connections.



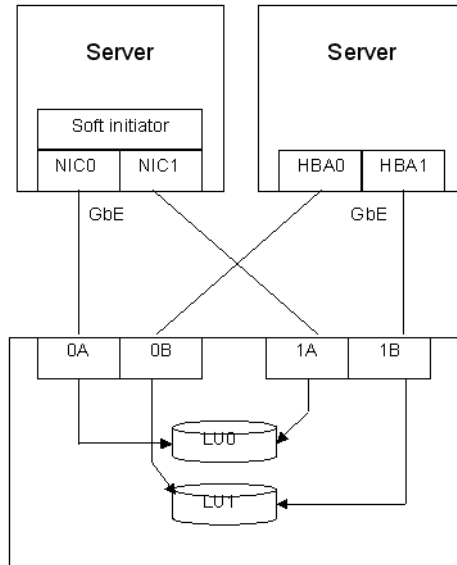
**Figure 8-4: Direct Attached Type 1 for iSCSI**



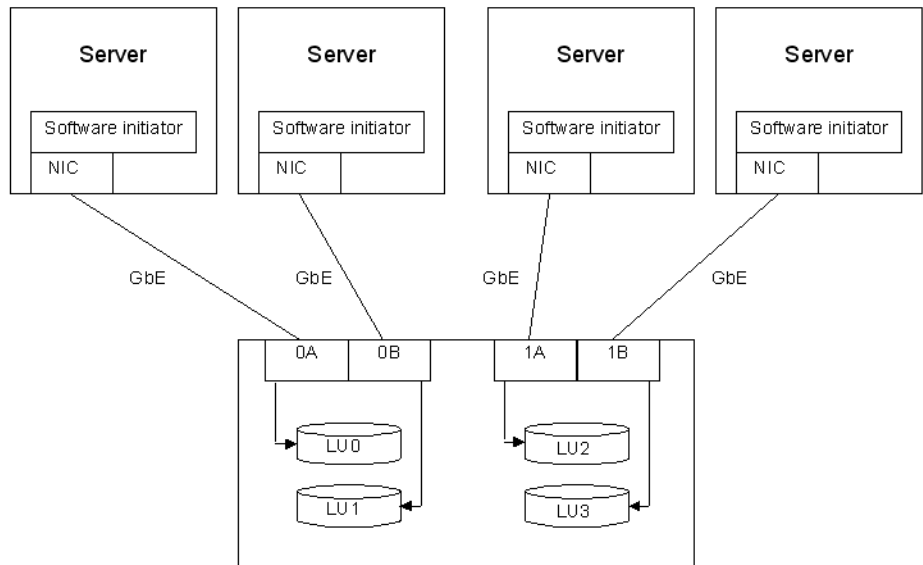
**Figure 8-5: Direct Attached Type 2 for iSCSI**



**Figure 8-6: Direct Attached Type 3 for iSCSI**

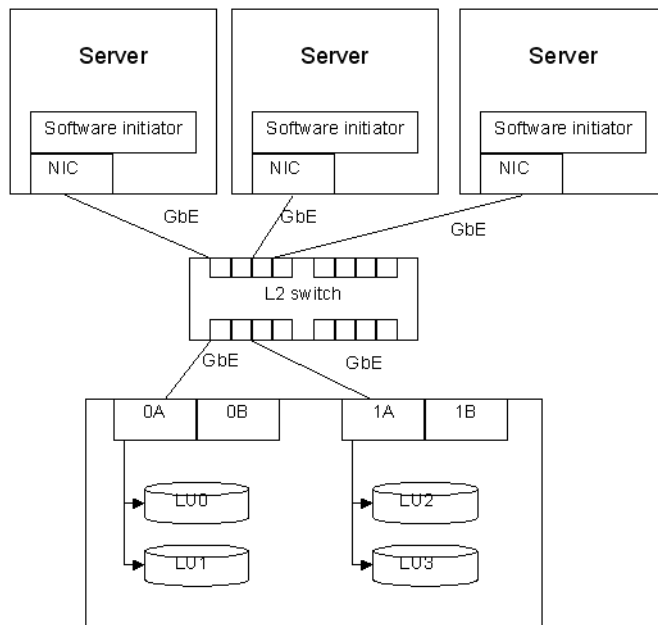


**Figure 8-7: Direct Attached Type 4 for iSCSI**

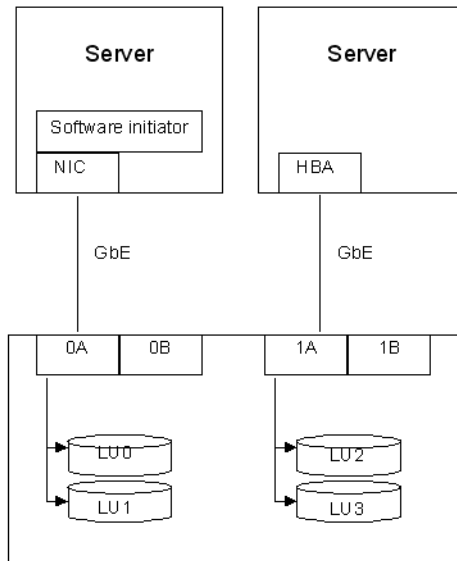


**Figure 8-8: Direct Attached Type 5 for iSCSI**

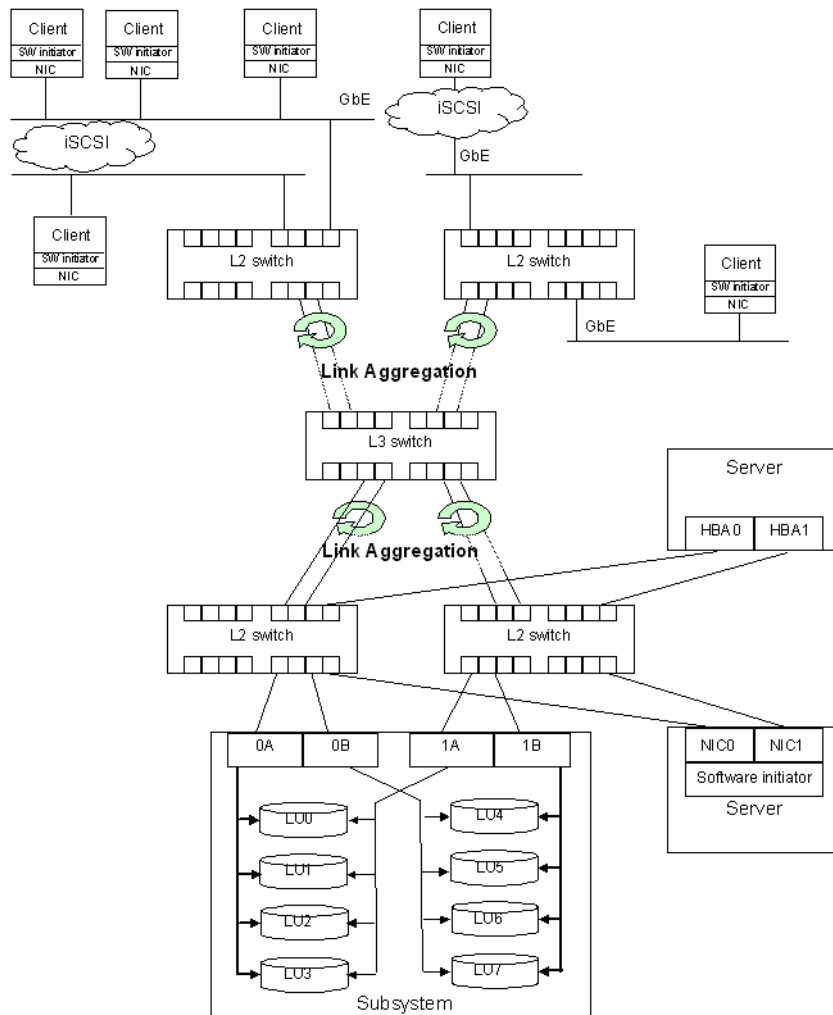
The following figures show possible topologies for switch-attached connections.



**Figure 8-9: Switch Attached Type 1 for iSCSI**



**Figure 8-10: Switch Attached Type 2 for iSCSI**

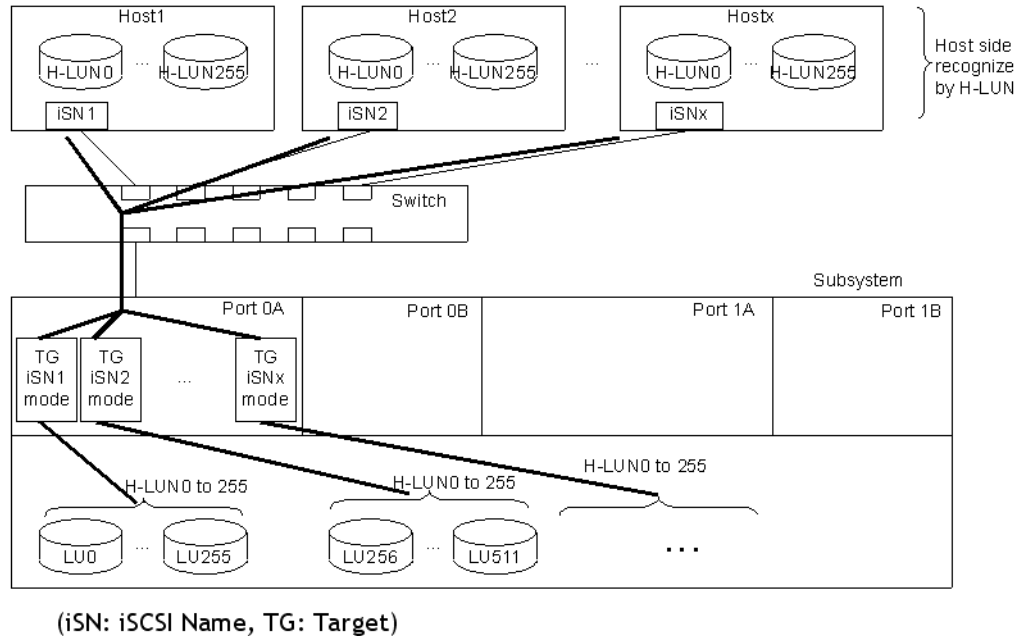


**Figure 8-11: Switch Attached Type 3 for iSCSI**

## Assigning iSCSI targets and volumes to hosts

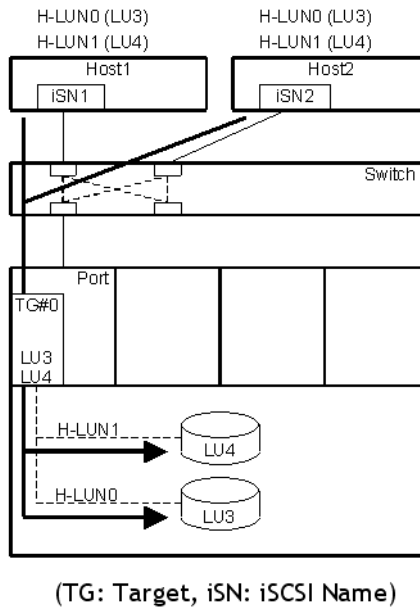
The host recognizes LUN between H-LUN0 and H-LUN255. When you assign volumes of more than 256 logical units to the host, you must set the target logical unit mapping to be between H-LUN0 and H-LUN255.

- Up to 2,048 logical unit mappings can be set for a target.
- Up to 16,384 logical unit mappings can be set for a port.

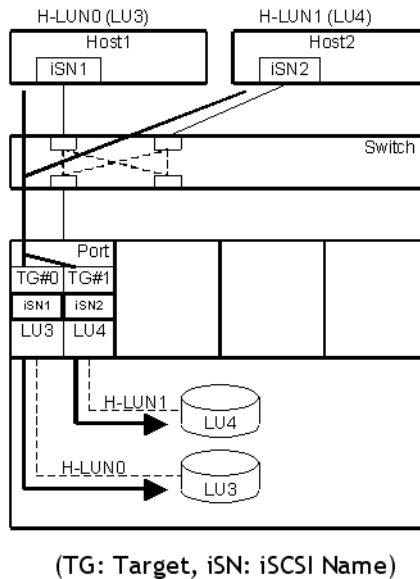


**Figure 8-12: Mapping Volumes Between LU256-511 to the Host**

When assigning LU3 to Host 1 and LU4 to Host 2, both hosts can access the same volume if the volume mapping is set alone as shown in [Figure 8-13 on page 8-16](#). When LUN Manager or CHAP is used in this case, the host (iSCSI Name) access to each volume can be distinguished even in the same port as shown in [Figure 8-14 on page 8-16](#).



**Figure 8-13: LUN Mapping—Different Hosts Can Access Volumes**

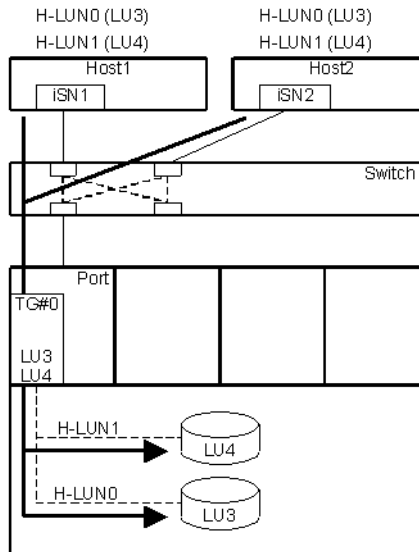


**Figure 8-14: LUN Target Assignment—Separate Host Access to Volumes**

## Preventing unauthorized SAN access

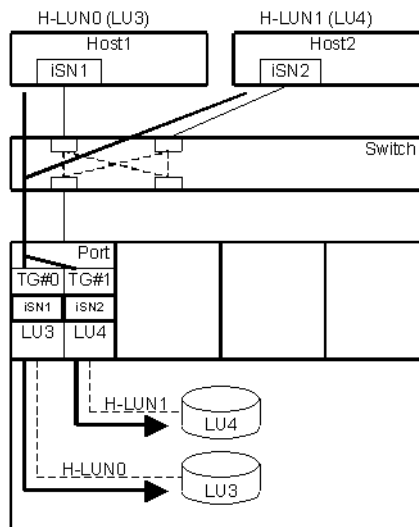
When connecting hosts to one port of an array using a switch, you must assign an accessible host for each logical unit.

When assigning LU3 to Host 1 and LU4 to Host 2 as in [Figure 8-15 on page 8-17](#), both hosts can access the same logical unit if the mapping is set separately.



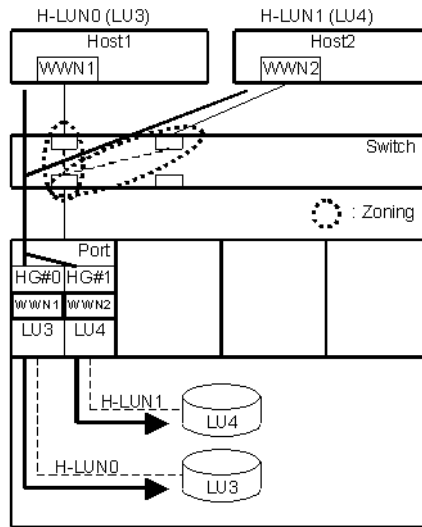
**Figure 8-15: Volume Mapping—No Host Access Restrictions**

When LUN Manager or CHAP is used, the host (iSCSI Name) access to each volume can be distinguished even within in the same port as shown in [Figure 8-16 on page 8-17](#).



**Figure 8-16: LUN Manager/CHAP—Restricted Host Access**

To prevent ports of the array from being affected by other hosts even when LUN Manager is used, it is recommended that zoning be set, as shown in [Figure 8-17 on page 8-18](#).



**Figure 8-17: Switch Zoning**

## Avoiding RAID Group Conflicts

When multiple hosts are connected to an array and the logical units assigned to each host belong to the same RAID group, concurrent access to the same disk can occur and performance can decrease. To avoid conflicts, only have one host access multiple LUNs in one RAID group.

The number of RAID groups that can be created is determined by the number of mounted drives and the RAID level of the RAID groups you are creating. If you cannot create as many RAID groups as hosts to be connected, organize the RAID groups according to the operational states of the hosts (see [Figure 8-18 on page 8-19](#) and [Figure 8-19 on page 8-19](#)).

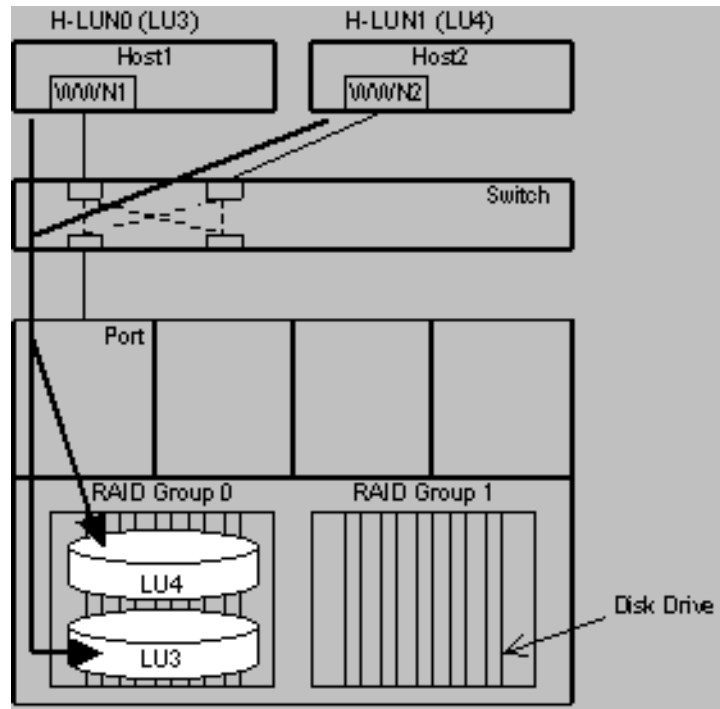


Figure 8-18: Hosts Connected to the Same RAID Group

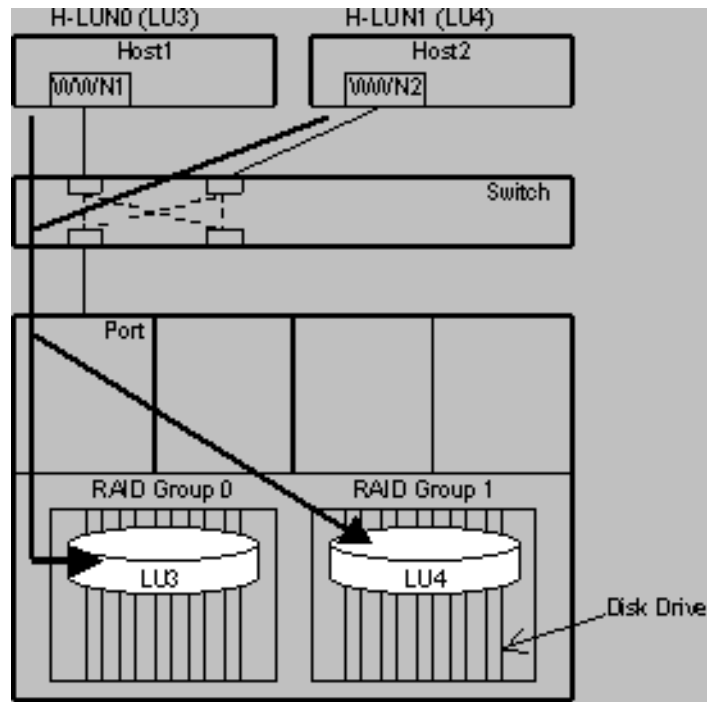


Figure 8-19: Hosts Connected to Different RAID Groups

## SAN queue depth setting

A host can queue array commands, and queue depth is the number of times commands are issued. When more than one host is connected to an array port, the number of queue commands increases because the host issues commands to each array separately.

Multiple hosts can be connected to a single port. However, the queue depth that can be handled by one port is limited, and performance drops if that limit is exceeded. To avoid performance drops, specify the queue depth so that the sum for all hosts does not exceed the port's limit.



**NOTES:** If the queue depth is increased, array traffic also increases, and host and switch traffic can increase. The formula for defining host queue depth depends on the operating system or HBA. When determining the host queue depth, consider the port limit. The formula for defining queue depth on the host side varies depending on the type of operating system or HBA. When determining the overall queue depth settings for hosts, consideration should be given to the port limit.

For iSCSI configurations, each operating and HBA configuration has an individual queue depth value unit and setting unit, as shown in [Table 8-4 on page 8-20](#).

**Table 8-4: iSCSI Queue Depth Configuration**

Platform	Product	Queue Depth (Unit)	Queue Depth (Default)	Unit of Setting
Windows	Microsoft Initiator			
	Qlogic	Port	16	HBA
Linux	Software initiator			
	Qlogic	Port	16	HBA



**NOTE:** If the host operating system is either Microsoft Windows NT or Microsoft Windows 2000/2003 and is connected to a single array port, you must set the Queue Depth to a maximum of 16 commands per port for the QLogic HBA.

## Increasing queue depth and port sharing

[Figure 8-20 on page 8-21](#) shows how to determine the queue depth when a port is shared. In this example, Host 1, 2, 3, and 4, are connected to a port with a 512 command limit. Specify the queue depth so that the queue depth for Hosts A, B, C, and D, does not exceed X.

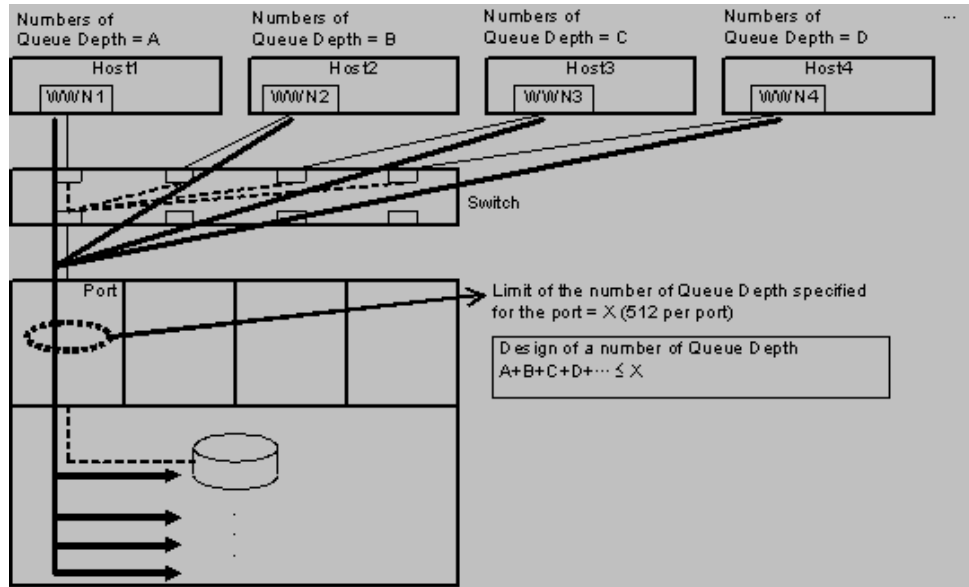


Figure 8-20: Queue Depth Does Not Exceed Port Limit

### Increasing queue depth through path switching

Figure 8-21 on page 8-22 shows how to determine queue depth when an alternative path is configured. Host 1 and 2 are assigned to the primary and secondary paths, respectively.

Commands are issued to a logical unit via the primary path on Host 1. In this configuration, commands to be issued via the primary path are moved to the secondary path because of path switching, and the queue depth for a port connected to a host on the secondary path is increased. You must specify the appropriate queue depth for each host so that the number does not exceed its limit after the path switching.

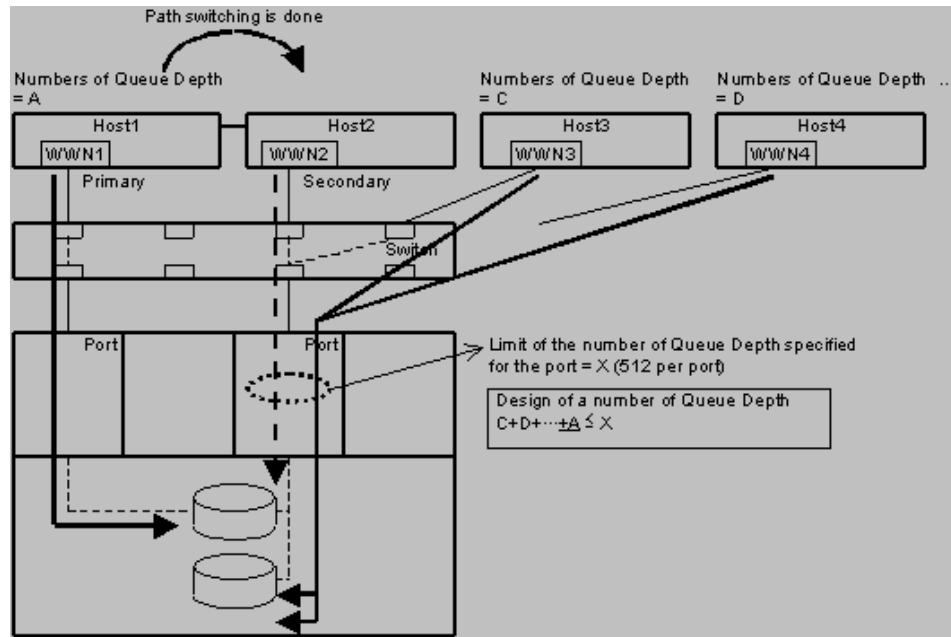


Figure 8-21: Queue Depth Increase From Path Switching

### Queue depth allocation according to host job priority

Figure 8-22 on page 8-22 shows how to determine the queue depth when priority is given connected hosts. To increase the priority of the host job individually, increase the host queue depth. When the host queue depth is increased, the port cannot exceed its limit. If the array does not have a prioritized order, allocate the host queue depth.

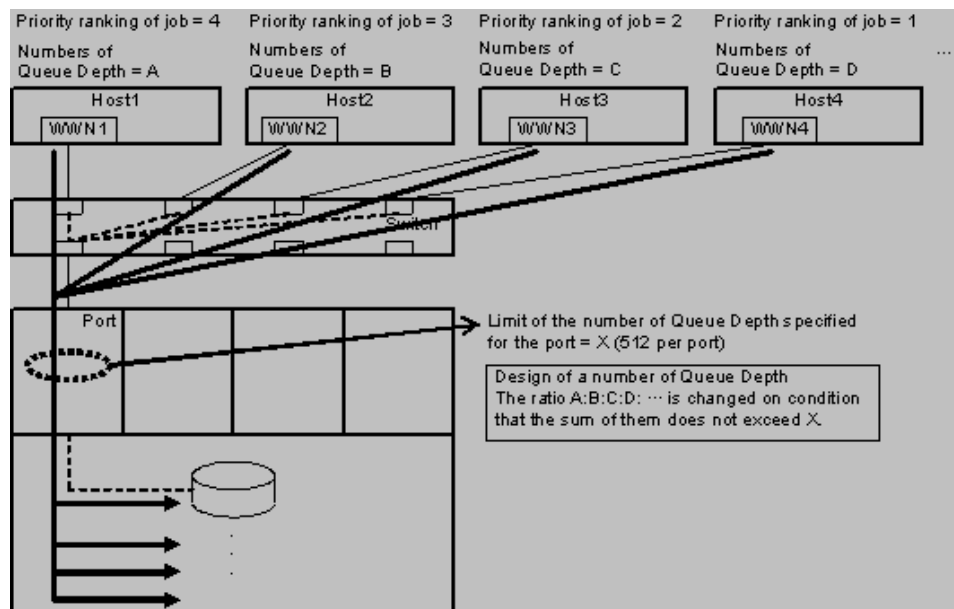


Figure 8-22: Host Job Priority



**NOTE:** We recommend that you execute any ping command tests when there is no I/O between hosts and controllers.

---

## LUN Manager operations

This section describes LUN Manager operations for Fibre Channel and iSCSI.

### Using Fibre Channel

1. Verify that you have the environments and requirements for LUN Manager (see [Preinstallation information on page 2-2](#)).  
For the array:
  2. Set up a fibre channel port (see [Fibre Channel operations using LUN Manager on page 8-24](#)).
  3. Create a host group (see [Adding host groups on page 8-24](#)).
  4. Set the World Wide Name (WWN).
  5. Set the host connection mode.
  6. Create a logical unit.
  7. Set the logical unit mapping.
  8. Set the fibre channel switch zoning.  
For the host:
    9. Set the host bus adapter (HBA).
    10. Set the HBA driver parameters.
    11. Set the queue depth (repeat if necessary).
    12. Create the disk partitions (repeat if necessary).

### Using iSCSI

The procedure flow for iSCSI below. For more information, see the *Hitachi iSCSI Resource and Planning Guide* (MK-97DF8105).

#### To configure iSCSI

1. Verify that you have the environments and requirements for LUN Manager (see [Preinstallation information on page 2-2](#)).  
For the array:
  2. Set up the iSCSI port (see [iSCSI operations using LUN Manager on page 8-34](#)).
  3. Create a target (see [Adding and deleting targets on page 8-40](#)).

4. Set the iSCSI host name (see [Setting the iSCSI target security on page 8-37](#)).
5. Set the host connection mode. For more information, see the *Hitachi iSCSI Resource and Planning Guide (MK-97DF8105)*.
6. Set the CHAP security (see [CHAP users on page 8-45](#)).
7. Create a logical unit.
8. Set the volume mapping.
9. Set the network switch parameters. For more information, see the *Hitachi iSCSI Resource and Planning Guide (MK-97DF8105)*.  
For the host:
  10. Set the host bus adapter (HBA). For more information, see the *Hitachi iSCSI Resource and Planning Guide (MK-97DF8105)*.
  11. Set the HBA driver parameters. For more information, see the *Hitachi iSCSI Resource and Planning Guide (MK-97DF8105)*.
  12. Set the queue depth. For more information, see the *Hitachi iSCSI Resource and Planning Guide (MK-97DF8105)*.
  13. Set the CHAP security for the host (see [CHAP users on page 8-45](#)).
  14. Create the disk partitions. For more information, see the *Hitachi iSCSI Resource and Planning Guide (MK-97DF8105)*.

## Fibre Channel operations using LUN Manager

LUN Manager allows you to perform fibre channel operations. With LUN Manager enabled, you can

- Add, edit, and delete host groups
- Initialize host group 000
- Change nicknames
- Delete Word Wide Names
- Copy settings to other ports

### Adding host groups

To add host groups, you must enable the host group security, and create a host group for each port.

To understand the host group configuration environment, you need to become familiar with the Host Groups Setting Window as shown in [Figure 8-23](#).

The Host Groups Setting window consists of the Host Groups, Host Group Security, and WWNs tabbed pages.

- Host Groups  
Enables you to create and edit groups, initialize the Host Group 000, and delete groups.

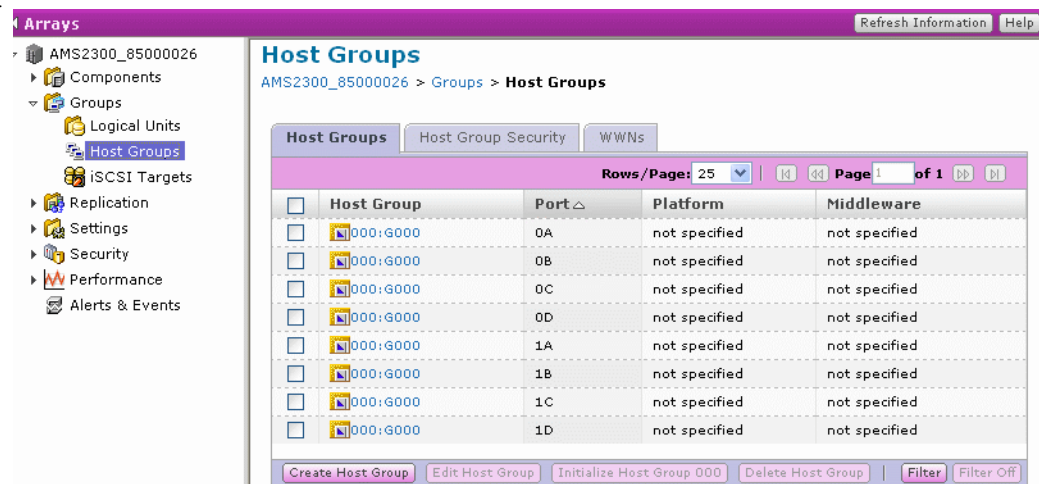
- **Host Group Security**  
Enable you to validate the host group security for each port. When the host group security is invalidated, only the Host Group 000 (default target) can be used. When it is validated, host groups following the host group 001 can be created, and the WWN of hosts to be permitted to access each host group can be specified.
- **WWNS**  
Displays WWNs of hosts detected when the hosts are connected and those entered when the host groups are created. In this tabbed page, you can supply a nickname to each port name.

## Enabling and disabling host group security

By default, the host group security is disabled for each port.

### To enable or disable host group security

1. Start Navigator 2 and log in. The Arrays window appears
2. Click the appropriate array.
3. Expand the **Groups** list, and click **Host Groups**. The **Host Groups** window appears (see [Figure 8-23](#)).



**Figure 8-23: Host Groups Window**



**NOTE:** The number of ports displayed in the Host Groups and Host Group Security windows can vary. SMS systems may display only four ports.

4. Click the **Host Group Security** tab. See [Figure 8-24](#).
5. Select the port you want to configure and click **Change Host Group Security**.

Host Groups		Host Group Security	WWNs
	Port	Enable Host Group Security	
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	0A	Yes	
<input type="radio"/>	0B	Yes	
<input type="radio"/>	0C	No	
<input type="radio"/>	0D	No	
<input type="radio"/>	1A	No	
<input type="radio"/>	1B	No	
<input type="radio"/>	1C	No	
<input type="radio"/>	1D	No	

[Change Host Group Security](#)

**Figure 8-24: Host Group Security Tab — AMS System**

6. Select the port whose security you are changing, and click **Change Host Group Security**.
7. In the **Enable Host Group Security** field, select the **Yes** checkbox to enable security, or clear the checkbox to disable security.
8. Follow the on-screen instructions.
  - After enabling host group security, **Detected Hosts** is displayed.
  - The WWN of the HBA connected to the selected port is displayed in the **Detected Hosts** field.

### Creating and editing host groups

If you click **Create Host Group** without selecting a port, you can apply the same setting for multiple ports.

#### To create and edit host groups

1. In the Host Groups tab, click **Create Host Group** or **Edit Host Group**. [Figure 8-25](#) appears

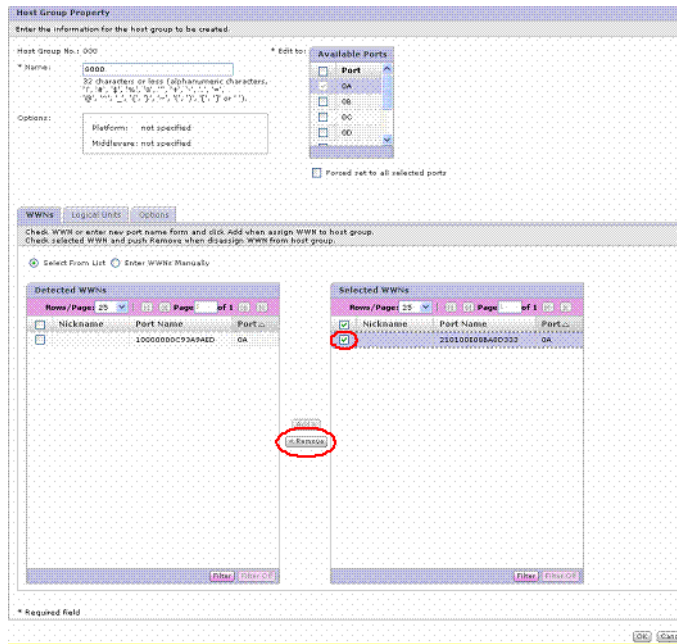


Figure 8-25: Host Group Property Window-WWNs tab, Remove

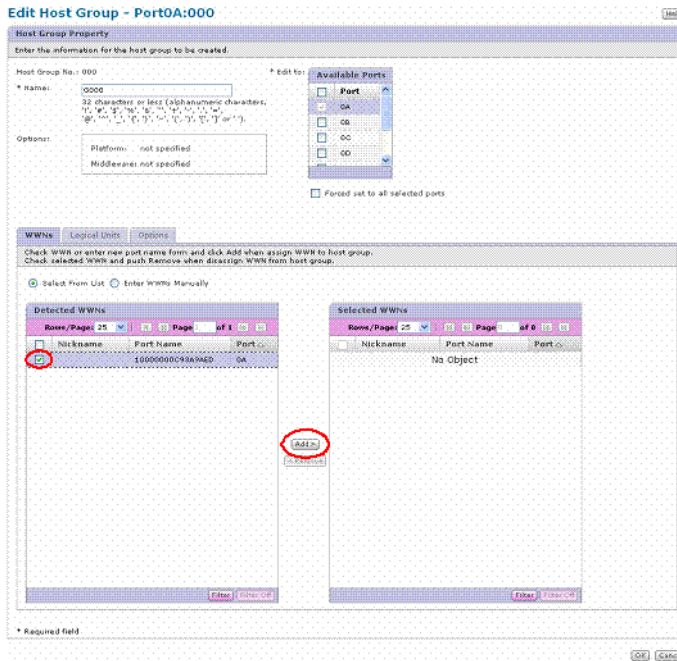


Figure 8-26: Host Group Property Window-WWNs tab, Add

With the **WWNs** tab, you specify the WWNs of hosts permitted to access the host group for each host group. You can specify the WWNs of hosts in two ways:

- Select the WWNs from the **Detected WWNs** list.
- Enter the WWNs manually.

The WWN is not a copy target in the case of selecting two or more ports for the **Create to** (or **Edit to**) field used for setting the alternate path. The **WWNs** list assigned to the host group of the **Host Group No.** field associated with each port selected in the **Available Ports** list is displayed in the **Selected WWNs** list.

2. Specify the appropriate information.
  - **Host Group No.** — This number can be 1 through 127.
  - **Name:** — One name for each port, and the name cannot be more than 32 alphanumeric characters (excluding \, /, :, ;, \*, ?, ", <, >, | and `).
3. Click the **WWN** tab and specify the appropriate host information.
  - To specify the host information by selecting from a list, select **Select From List**, and click the appropriate WWN.
  - To specify the host information manually, select **Enter WWNs Manually**, and specify the port name that identifies the host (the port name must be 16 hexadecimal numerals).
  - **Port Name** is used to identify the host. Enter the Port Name using sixteen hexadecimal numerals.
4. Click **Add**. The added host information appears in the Selected WWNs pane.



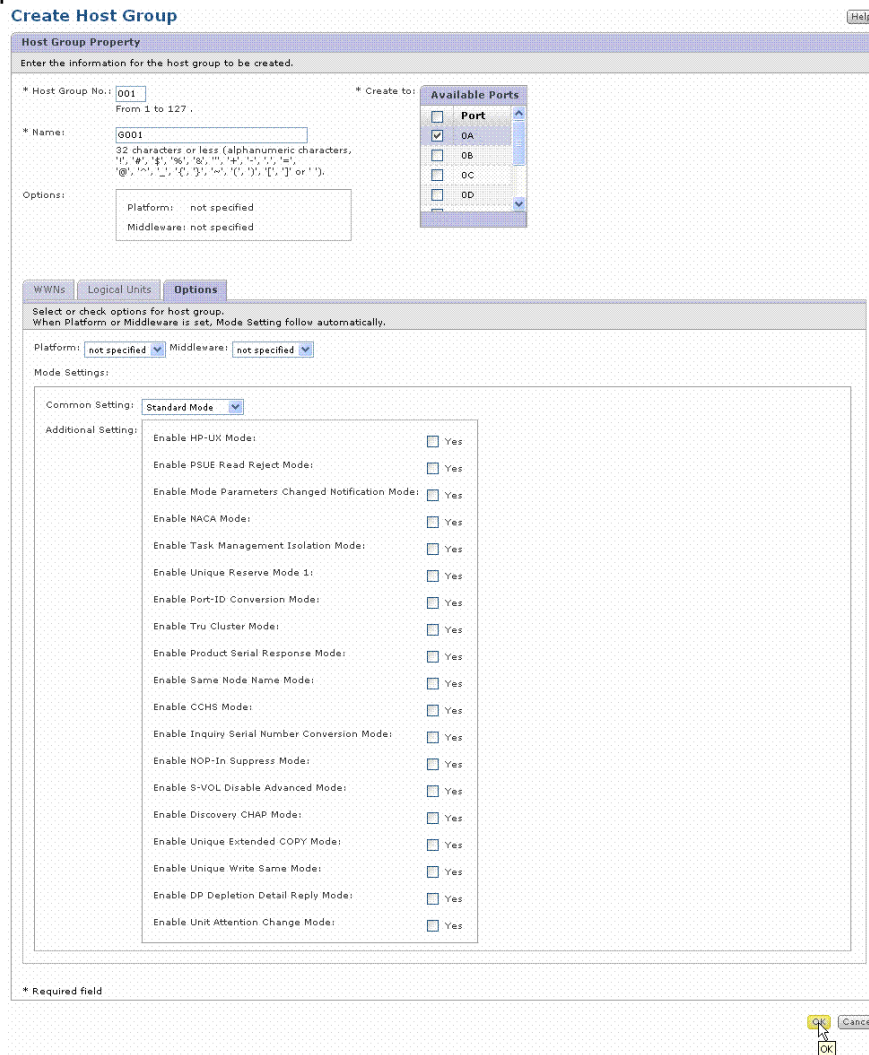
**NOTE:** HBA WWNs are set to each host group, and are used for identifying hosts. When a port is connected to a host, the WWNs appear in the Detected WWNs pane and can be added to the host group. 128 WWNs can be assigned to a port. If you have more than 128 WWNs, delete one that is not assigned to a host group. Occasionally, the WWNs may not appear in the Detected WWNs pane, even though the port is connected to a host. When this happens, manually add the WWNs (host information).

---

5. Click the **Logical Units** tab. [Figure 8-27](#) appears.



- Click the **Options** tab. The Create Host Group options dialog box appears.



**Figure 8-28: Create Host Group - Options tab**

- From the **Platform** and **Middleware** pull-down lists, select the appropriate platform and middleware, and click **OK**. When you want to apply the changed contents to other ports, select the desired port in the Available Ports list. Two or more ports can be selected. The following items display when selecting or not selecting the checkbox of the Forced set to all selected ports:
  - Selecting the checkbox.** The current settings are replaced by the edited contents.
  - Not selecting the checkbox.** The current settings of the selected ports cannot be changed. An error occurs.
- Click **OK**.
- When two or more ports are selected and the host group already exists in the ports, at the time you select the Forced set to all selected ports checkbox, the following message appears.

12. Follow the on-screen instructions.

## Initializing Host Group 000

When you reset Host Group 000 to its default, its WWNs and logical unit settings are deleted and the host group name is reset to G000.

### To initialize Host Group 000

1. In the Hosts Groups window ([Figure 8-23 on page 8-25](#)), select the appropriate host group, and click **Initialize Host Group 000**.
2. Follow the on-screen instructions.
3. Specify the copy destination of the edited host group setting.
4. Select the port of the copy destination in Available Ports for editing and click **OK**.

## Deleting host groups

Host group 000 cannot be deleted. When deleting all the WWNs and logical units in Host Group 000, initialize it (see [Initializing Host Group 000 on page 8-31](#)).

### To delete host groups

1. In the Host Groups window ([Figure 8-23 on page 8-25](#)), select the appropriate host group and click **Delete Host Group**.
2. Follow the on-screen instructions.

## Changing nicknames

### To change nicknames

1. In the Host Groups window (Figure 8-23 on page 8-25), click the WWNs tab. The WWNS tab appears (see Figure 8-29).

**Create Host Group** Help

Host Group Property  
Enter the information for the host group to be created.

\* Host Group No.:  \* Create to: Available Ports  
From 1 to 127 .

\* Name:   
32 characters or less (alphanumeric characters, !, #, \$, %, &, '\*, +, -, ., /, :; , <, =, @, ^, ~, \_ , {, |, }, ~, '(', ')', '[, ]' or ' ').

Options:  
Platform: not specified  
Middleware: not specified

Available Ports  
 Port  
 0A  
 0B

WWNs Logical Units Options

Check WWN or enter new port name form and click Add when assign WWN to host group.  
Check selected WWN and push Remove when disassign WWN from host group.

Select From List  Enter WWNs Manually

Detected WWNs			Selected WWNs				
Rows/Page: 25	Page 0 of 0		Rows/Page: 25	Page 0 of 0			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nickname	Port Name	Port	<input type="checkbox"/>	Nickname	Port Name	Port
No Object			No Object				

Add > < Remove

Filter Filter Off

\* Required field

Figure 8-29: WWNs Tab

2. Select the appropriate WWN, and click **Change Nickname**.
3. Specify the nickname (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) and click **OK**.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions.

## Deleting World Wide Names

### To delete World Wide Names

1. In the Host Groups window (Figure 8-23 on page 8-25), click the WWNs tab. Figure 8-29 on page 8-32 appears.
2. Select the appropriate WWN, and click **Delete WWN**.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions.

## Copy settings to other ports

The host group setting can be copied to the other port for the alternate path setting, and so forth. To specify the copy destination, select **Available Ports** when creating host groups.

### Settings required for copying

The settings for copying is as follows:

- Setting the created/edited host group
- Setting the assignment of the logical unit of the created/edited host group
- Setting the options of the logical unit of the created/edited host group

The setting created in the Create Host Group screen and the setting corrected in the Edit Host Group screen can be copied.

### Copying during host group creation

#### To copy to the other port at the time of the host group creation

1. In the Host Groups tab, click **Create Host Group**. The Create Host Group screen appears.
2. Set the host group according to the procedure under [Adding host groups on page 8-24](#).
3. Specify the copy destination of the created host group setting.
4. Select the port of the copy destination in the Available Ports for creation.
5. The port concerned that created the host group is already selected for the Available Ports for creation. Add the port of the copy destination and select it.
6. To copy to all the ports, select the Port.
7. Click **OK**.

If the host group of the same host group number as the host group concerned is created in the copy destination port, this operation will end.

### Copying when editing a host group

#### To copy to the other port at the time of the host group editing

1. In the Host Groups tab, click **Edit Host Group**. The Edit Host Group screen appears.
2. Set the host group according to the procedure for the section for Editing a Host Group on page [8-26](#).
3. Specify the copy destination of the edited host group setting.
4. Select the port of the copy destination in the Available Ports for editing.
5. The port concerned that edited the host group is already selected for the available ports for editing. Add the port of the copy destination and select it.

6. To copy to all the ports, select the port.
7. When you select the Forced set to all selected ports checkbox, the current settings are replaced by the edited contents.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Confirm the appeared message.
10. When executing it as is, click **Confirm**.

You will receive a warning message to verify your actions when:

- The host group of the same host group number as the host group concerned is not created in the copy destination port.
- The host group of the same host group number as the host group concerned is created in the copy destination port.

## iSCSI operations using LUN Manager

LUN Manager allows you to perform various iSCSI operations from the iSCSI Targets setting window (see [Figure 8-30 on page 8-35](#)), which consists of the following tabs:

- **iSCSI Targets**  
With this tab, you can create and edit targets, edit the authentication, initialize target 000, and delete targets.
- **iSCSI Target Security**  
With this tab, you specify the validation of the iSCSI target security for each port. When the iSCSI target security is invalidated, only the Target 000 (default target) can be used. When it is validated, targets following the Target 001 can be created, and the iSCSI Names of hosts to be permitted to access each target can be specified.
- **Hosts**  
This tab displays the iSCSI Names of hosts detected when the hosts are connected and those entered when the targets are created. In this tabbed page, you can give a nickname to each iSCSI Name.
- **CHAP Users**  
With this tab, you register user names and secrets for the CHAP authentication to be used for authentication of initiators and assign the user names to targets.

Nickname	Assigned to iSCSI Targets	Port	iSCSI Name
	No	0A	iqn.1991-05.com.microsoft:nasclient8

**Figure 8-30: iSCSI Targets Window**

The following sections provide details on using LUN Manager to configure your iSCSI settings.

### Creating an iSCSI target

To create a target for each port, you must create a target.

Using LUN Manager, you must connect a port of the disk array to a host using the switching-hub or connecting the host directly to the port, and then set a data input/output path between the host and the logical unit. This setting specifies which host can access which logical unit.

For example, when a Windows Host (initiator iSCSI Name A) and a Linux Host (initiator iSCSI Name B) are connected to Port A, you must create targets of logical units to be accessed from the Windows Host (initiator iSCSI Name A) and by the Linux Host (initiator iSCSI Name B) as shown in [Figure 1-5 on page 1-9](#).

Set a **Target** option (Host Connection Mode) to the newly created target to confirm the setting.

With the **Hosts** tab, you specify the iSCSI names of hosts to be permitted to access the target. For each target, you can specify the iSCSI names in two ways:

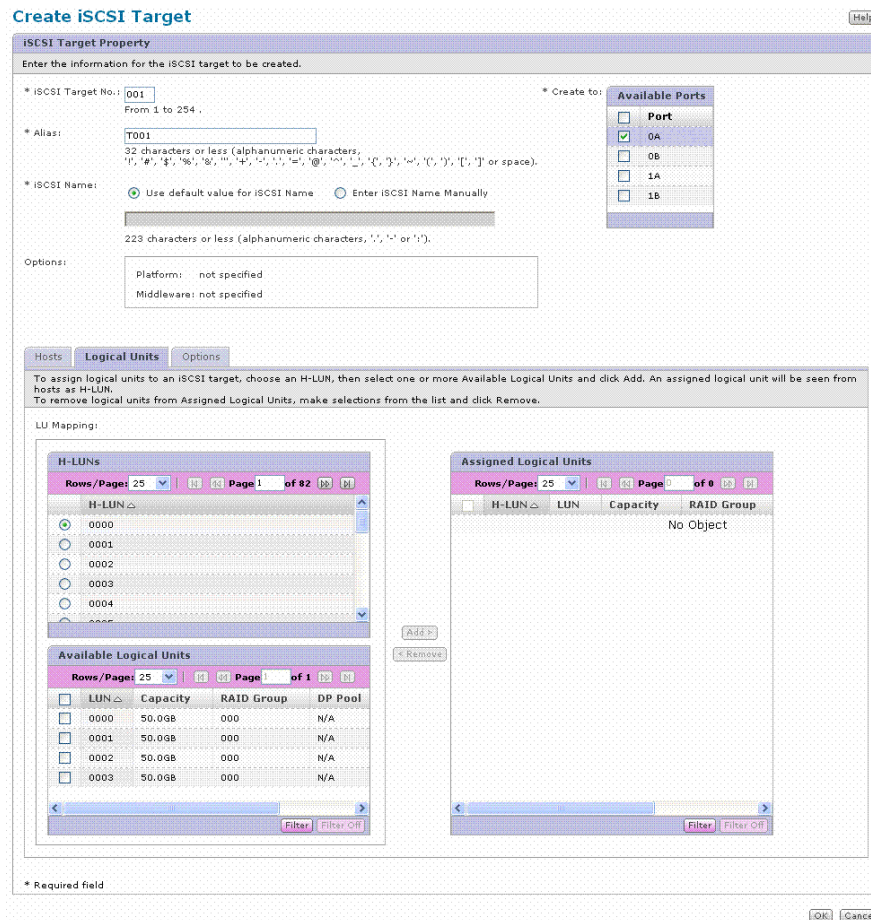
- Select the names from the **Detected Hosts** list.
- Enter the names manually.

The iSCSI name of the host is not a copy target in case you have selected two or more ports for either the Create to or Edit to field used for setting the alternate path. The iSCSI name assigned to the iSCSI target of the iSCSI Target No. field concerned with each port selected by the Available Ports field is displayed in the Selected Hosts list.

### Using the iSCSI Target Tabs

In addition to the Hosts tab, the iSCSI Target Property window contains several tabs that enable you to customize the configuration of the iSCSI target to a finer degree.

The Logical Units tab enables you to assign logical units to logical unit numbers (H-LUNs) that are recognized by hosts. [Figure 8-31](#) displays the iSCSI Target Properties - Logical Units tab.



**Figure 8-31: iSCSI Target Property - Logical Units tab**

The iSCSI Target Property - Options tab enables you to select a platform and middleware that suit the environment of each host to be connected. You do not need to set the mode individually. [Figure 8-32](#) displays the iSCSI Target Property - Logical Units tab.

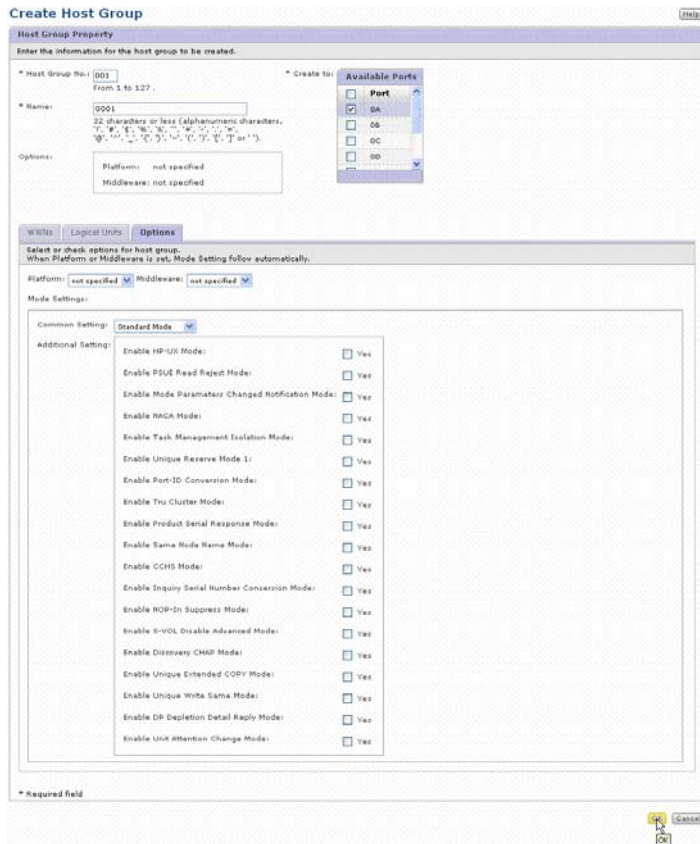


Figure 8-32: iSCSI Target Property - Options tab

## Setting the iSCSI target security

The target security default setting is **disabled** for each port.

**To enable or disable the target security for each port**

1. Start Navigator 2 and log in. The Arrays window appears.
2. Click the appropriate array.
3. Expand the **Groups** list, and click **iSCSI Targets** to display the iSCSI Targets window as shown in Figure 8-31.

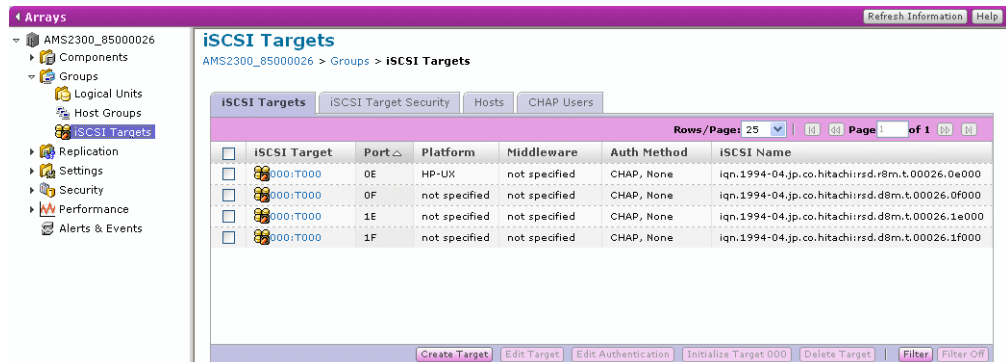


Figure 8-33: iSCSI Targets Setting Window

- Click the **iSCSI Target Security** tab, which displays the security settings for the data ports on your Hitachi Simple Modular Storage 100.  
**Yes** = security is enabled for the data port.  
**No** = security is disabled for the data port.

iSCSI Targets		iSCSI Target Security	Hosts	CHAP Users
Enable iSCSI Target Security				
	Port	Enable iSCSI Target Security		
<input checked="" type="radio"/>	0A	Yes		
<input type="radio"/>	0B	No		
<input type="radio"/>	1A	No		
<input type="radio"/>	1B	No		

Change iSCSI Target Security

**Figure 8-34: iSCSI Target Security Tab**

- Click the port whose security setting you want to change.
- Click **Change iSCSI Target Security**
- Select (or deselect) the **Enable iSCSI Target Security** check box to enable (or disable) security, then click **OK**.
- Read the confirmation message and click **Close**.



**NOTE:** If iSCSI target security is enabled, the iSCSI host name specified in your iSCSI initiator software must be added to the **Hosts** tab in Storage Navigator Modular 2.

- From the iSCSI Targets screen, check the name of an iSCSI target and click **Edit Target**.
- When the Edit iSCSI Target screen appears, go to the **Hosts** tab and select **Enter iSCSI Name Manually**.
- When the next Edit iSCSI Target window appears, enter the iSCSI host name in the **iSCSI Host Name** field of the **Hosts** tab.
- Click the **Add** button followed by the **OK** button.

## Editing iSCSI target nicknames.

You can assign a nickname to each iSCSI target.

### To edit a nickname to an iSCSI target

- Start Navigator 2 and log in. The Arrays window appears.
- Click the appropriate array.
- Expand the **Groups** list, and click **iSCSI Targets** to display the iSCSI Targets window.
- Click the **Hosts** tab, which displays an iSCSI target nickname, an indication of whether it has been assigned to any iSCSI targets, an associated port number and an associated iSCSI name.

5. Figure 8-35 displays the **Hosts** tab.

Nickname	Assigned to iSCSI Targets	Port	iSCSI Name
	No	0A	iqn.1991-05.com

**Figure 8-35: iSCSI Targets - Hosts tab**

6. To edit a nickname, click on the nickname you want to change and click the **Change Nickname** button.
7. Type in a new nickname and click **OK**. Note the new nickname displayed in the **Hosts** tab.

Port	Enable iSCSI Target Security
0A	Yes
0B	No
1A	No
1B	No

**Figure 8-36: iSCSI Target Security Tab**

8. Read the confirmation message and click **Close**.

## Adding and deleting targets

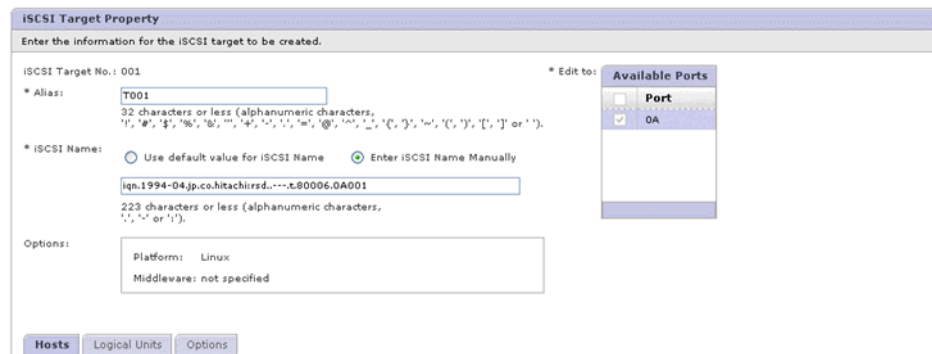
The following section provides information for adding and deleting targets.

### Adding targets

When you add targets and click **Create Target** without selecting a port, multiple ports are listed in the **Available Ports** list. Doing so allows you to use the same setting for multiple ports. By editing the targets after making the setting, you can omit the procedure for creating the target for each port.

#### To create targets for each port

1. In the **iSCSI Targets** tab, click **Create Target**. The iSCSI Target Property screen is displayed.



**Figure 8-37: iSCSI Target Property Window**

2. Enter the iSCSI Target No., Alias, or iSCSI Name.

Note that the **Hosts** tab displays only when iSCSI Target Security is enabled.

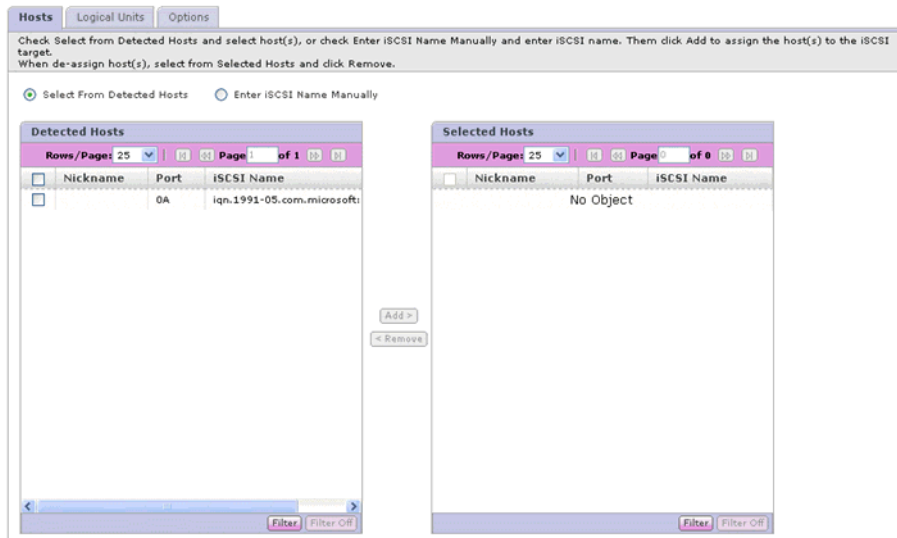
3. If the iSCSI Target Security is enabled, set the host information in the Hosts tab.

Using the Hosts tab, you can specify for each target the iSCSI Names of the hosts to be permitted to access the target. There are two ways to specify the iSCSI Names:

- You can select the names from the list of Detected Hosts as shown in [Figure 8-38](#), or
- You can enter the names manually.

For the initial configuration, write down the name and enter the name manually.

4. Click **Add**. The added host information is displayed in the **Selected Hosts** list.



**Figure 8-38: iSCSI Target Properties—Hosts Tab**



**NOTES:** Up to 256 Hosts can be assigned for a port. The total of the number of Hosts that have been already assigned (Selected Hosts) and the number of Hosts that can be assigned (Selected Hosts) further is 256 for a Port. If the number of Hosts assigned to a port exceeds 256 and further input is impossible, delete a Host that is not assigned to a target.

In some cases, the Host is not listed in the Detected Hosts list, even though the port is connected to a host. When the Host to be assigned to a target is not listed in the Detected Hosts list, input and add it.

Not all targets may display when executing Discovery on the host and may depend on the HBA in use due to the restriction of the number of characters set for the iSCSI Name.

5. Click the **Logical Units** tab.
6. Select an available Host Logical Unit Number from the H-LUN list. The host uses this number to identify the LUN it can connect to and click **Add**. The added LUNs are displayed in the Selected Logical Units list.  
To remove an item from the list, select it and click **Remove**.
7. Click the **Options** tab.
8. From the Options tab, select **Platform** and **Middleware** from the pull-down lists.
  - **Platform** Options  
Select either **HP-UX**, **Solaris**, **AIX**, **Linux**, **Windows**, **VMware** or **not specified** from the pull-down list.
  - **Middleware** Options  
Select either **VCS**, **Tru Cluster** or **not specified** from the pull-down list.
9. Click **OK**. The confirmation message is displayed.
10. Click **Close**.

The new settings are displayed in the **iSCSI Targets** window.

## Deleting Targets



**NOTE:** Target 000 cannot be deleted. When deleting all the hosts and all the Logical Units in Target 000, initialize Target 000 (see section Initializing Target 000).

### To delete a target

1. Select the Target to be deleted and click **Delete Target**.
2. Click **OK**. The confirmation message appears.
3. Click **Confirm**. A deletion complete message appears.
4. Click **Close**.

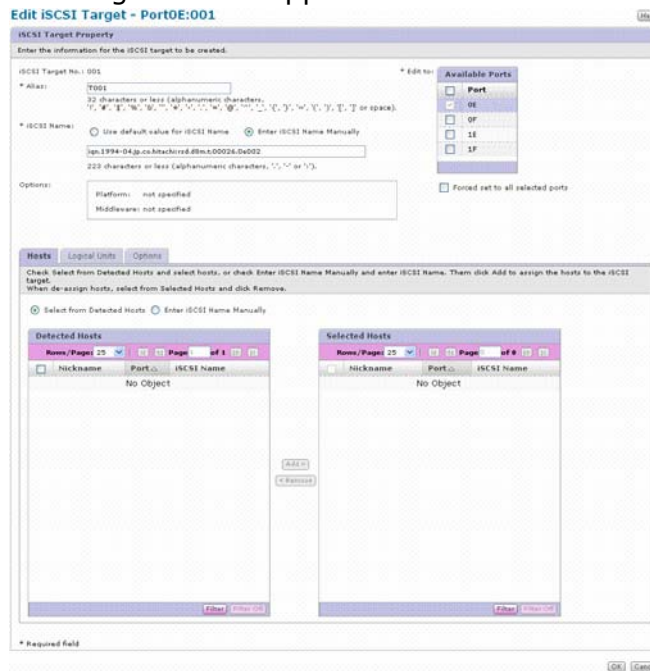
The new settings are displayed in the **iSCSI Targets** window.

## Editing target information

When editing targets, if you select multiple targets and click **Edit Target** multiple ports are listed in the Available Ports list. You can apply the same setting to the all of the selected targets at the same time.

### To edit the target information

1. Select the Target requiring the target information and click **Edit Target**. The Edit iSCSI Target screen appears.



**Figure 8-39: Edit iSCSI Target - Hosts tab**

2. Type the Alias or iSCSI Name, as required.

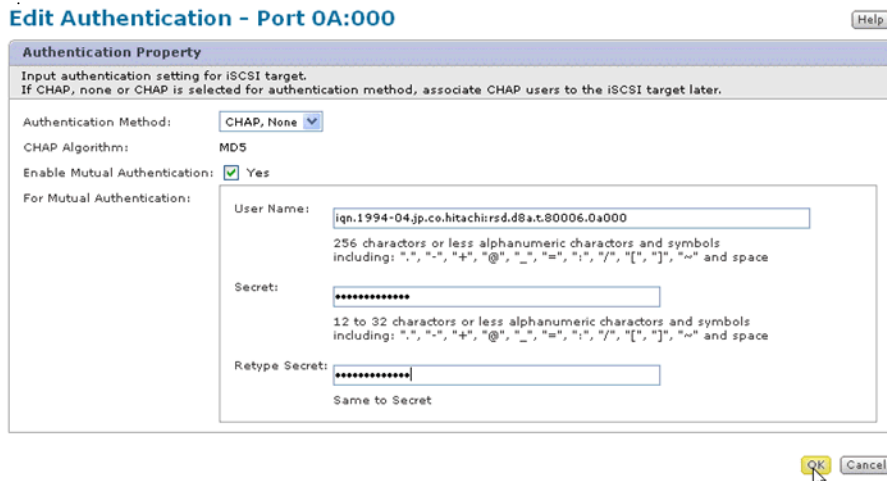
3. Set the host information from the **Hosts** tab.
4. Select the **Logical Units** tab.
5. Set the logical units information if necessary.
6. Select the **Options** tab.
7. Set the **Platform** and **Middleware** as required.
8. From the **Platform** and **Middleware** pull-down lists, select the appropriate platform and middleware, and click **OK**. When you want to apply the changed contents to other ports, select the desired port in the Available Ports list. Two or more ports can be selected. The following items display when selecting or not selecting the checkbox of the Forced set to all selected ports:
  - **Selecting the checkbox.** The current settings are replaced by the edited contents.
  - **Not selecting the checkbox.** The current settings of the selected ports cannot be changed. An error occurs.
9. Click **OK**.
10. When two or more ports are selected and the host group already exists in the ports, at the time you select the Forced set to all selected ports checkbox, a confirmation message appears.
11. When you select the Forced set to all selected ports checkbox, the current settings are replaced by the edited contents.
12. Click **OK**. The confirmation message is displayed.
13. Click **Close**.

The new settings are displayed in the **iSCSI Targets** window.

## Editing authentication properties

### To edit authentication properties

1. Select the Target requiring the target information and click **Edit Authentication**. The Edit Authentication screen is displayed as shown in [Figure 8-40 on page 8-44](#).



**Figure 8-40: Edit Authentication Window**

2. Select or enter the **Authentication Method**, **Enable Mutual Authentication**, or **For Mutual Authentication**.
  - **Authentication Method** options  
Select the **CHAP, None**, or **CHAP, None**.
  - CHAP Algorithm option  
**MD5** is always displayed.
  - **Enable Mutual Authentication** settings  
Select (or deselect) the check box. If you select the check box, complete the parameters for **User Name** and **Secret**.
3. Click **OK**. The confirmation message appears.
4. Click **Close**.

The new settings appear in the **iSCSI Targets** window.

## Initializing Target 000

You can reset target 000 to the default state by initializing it. If Target 000 is reset to the default state, hosts that belong to Target 000 and the settings of the logical units that belong to Target 000 are deleted. The Target options of Target 000 are reset to the default state and the target name is reset to T000.

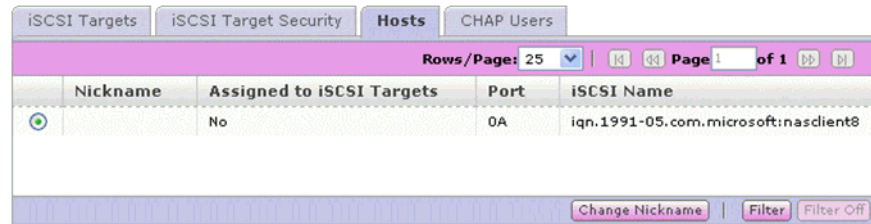
### To initialize Target 000

1. Select Target 000 to be initialized and click **Initialize Target 000**.
2. Click **OK**. The confirmation message appears.
3. Click **Confirm**. The initialization confirmation screen appears.
4. Click **Close**.

## Changing a nickname

### To change a nickname

1. From the iSCSI Targets window, click the **Hosts** tab as shown in [Figure 8-41 on page 8-45](#).



**Figure 8-41: iSCSI Target Window — Hosts Tab**

2. Select the Hosts information and click **Change Nickname**.
3. Type the new Nickname and click **OK**. The changed nickname confirmation screen appears.
4. Click **Close**.

## CHAP users

CHAP is a security mechanism that one entity uses to verify the identity of another entity, without revealing a secret password that is shared by the two entities. In this way, CHAP prevents an unauthorized system from using an authorized system's iSCSI name to access storage.

User authentication information can be set to the target to authorize access for the target and to increase security.

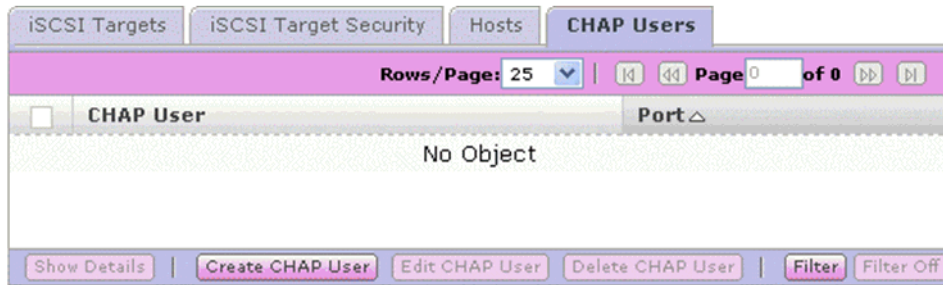
The **User Name** and the **Secret** for the user authentication on the host side are first set to the port, and then assigned to the Target. The same **User Name** and **Secret** may be assigned to multiple targets within the same port.

The **User Name** and the **Secret** for the user authentication are set to each target.

## Adding a CHAP user

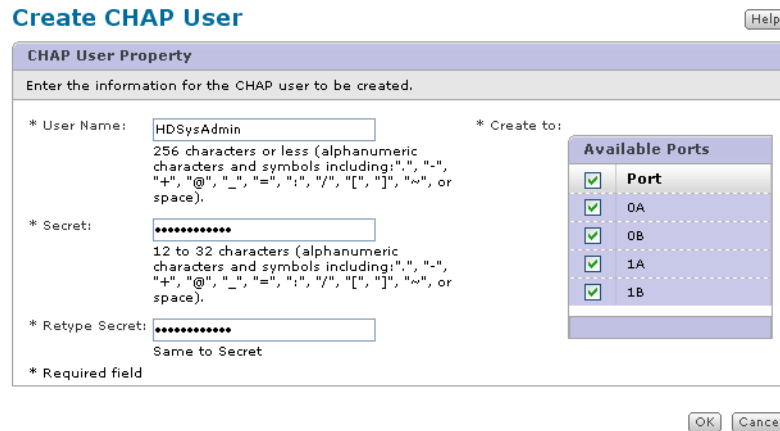
### To add a CHAP User

1. Select the **CHAP User** tab. The CHAP Users screen appears as shown in [Figure 8-42 on page 8-46](#).



**Figure 8-42: CHAP Users Window**

2. Click **Create CHAP User**. The Create CHAP User window appears as shown in [Figure 8-43 on page 8-46](#).



**Figure 8-43: Create CHAP User Window**

3. In the **Create CHAP User** screen, type the **User Name** and **Secret**, then re-type the Secret.
4. Select the port to be created from the **Available Ports** list.
5. Click **OK**. The created CHAP user message appears.
6. Click **Close**.

## Changing the CHAP user

### To change the CHAP User

1. Select the **CHAP User** tab.
2. Select a CHAP User to be changed from the CHAP User list and click **Edit CHAP User**. The Edit CHAP User window appears. [Figure 8-44 on page 8-47](#) shows the Edit CHAP User Window.



**Figure 8-44: Edit CHAP User Window**

3. Type the **User Name** and **Secret**, then re-type the Secret as required.
4. Select the iSCSI Target from the **Available Targets** list and click **Add** as required. The selected target is displayed in the Assigned Targets list.
5. Click **OK**. The changed CHAP user message appears.
6. Click **Close**.

### Deleting the CHAP user

#### To delete the CHAP User

1. Click the **CHAP User** tab.
2. Select the CHAP User to be deleted from the **CHAP User** list and click **Delete CHAP User**.
3. A screen appears, requesting a confirmation to delete the **CHAP User**, select the check box and click **Confirm**.
4. Click **OK**. The deleted CHAP user message appears.
5. Click **Close**.

## Setting Copy to the Other Ports

The iSCSI target setting can be copied to the other port for the alternate path setting, etc. To specify the copy destination, select the **Available Ports** for creation at the time of operating the iSCSI target creation and iSCSI target edit.

### Setting Information for Copying

The setting information for copying is shown below.

- Setting the created/edited iSCSI target
- Setting the assignment of the logical unit of the created/edited iSCSI target
- Setting the options of the logical unit of the created/edited iSCSI target

The setting created in the **Create iSCSI Target** screen and the setting corrected in the **Edit iSCSI Target** screen can be copied.

## Copying when iSCSI Target Creation

### To copy to the other port at the time of the iSCSI target creation

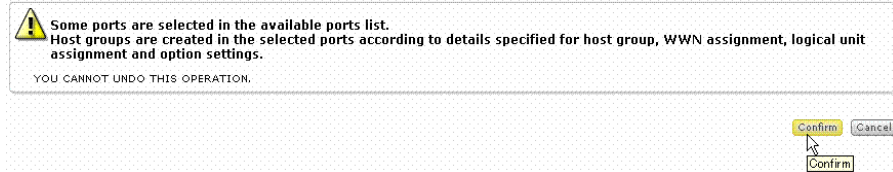
1. In the **iSCSI Targets** tab, click **Create Target**.  
The **Create iSCSI Target** screen appears.
2. Set the iSCSI target according to the procedure for the section Adding a Target Adding a Target Target.
3. Specify the copy destination of the created iSCSI target setting.  
Select the port of the copy destination in the **Available Ports** for creation.  
The port concerned that created the iSCSI target is already selected for the **Available Ports** for creation. Therefore, add the port of the copy destination and select it.  
To copy to all the ports, select the **Port**.
4. Click **OK**.  
When the iSCSI target of the same target group number as the iSCSI target concerned is created in the copy destination port, this operation will be terminate abnormally.

## Copying when iSCSI Target Editing

### To copy to the other port at the time of the iSCSI target editing

1. In the **iSCSI Targets** tab, click **Edit Target**.  
The **Edit iSCSI Target** screen appears.
2. Set the iSCSI target according to the procedure for the section Editing Target Information Editing Target Information.
3. Specify the copy destination of the edited iSCSI target setting.  
Select the port of the copy destination in the **Available Ports** for creation.  
The port concerned that created the iSCSI target is already selected for the **Available Ports** for creation. Therefore, add the port of the copy destination and select it.
4. To copy to all the ports, select the **Port**.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Confirm the appeared message.
  - When executing it as is, click **Confirm**.
  - When the iSCSI target of the same iSCSI target number as the iSCSI target concerned is not created in the copy destination port, the following message displays.

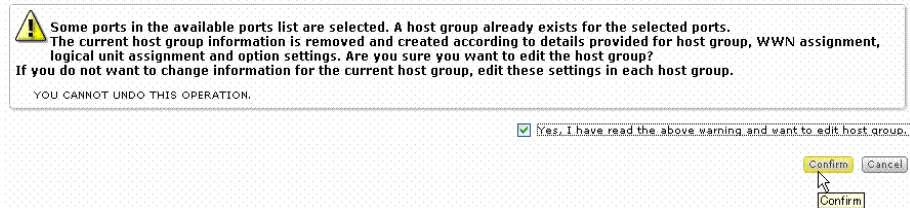
#### Edit Host Group - Port 0A:001



**Figure 8-45: Instance: Target Not Created in Copy Destination Port**

- When the iSCSI target of the same iSCSI target number as the iSCSI target concerned is created in the copy destination port, the following message displays.

#### Edit Host Group - Port 0A:000



**Figure 8-46: Instance: Target Created in Copy Destination Port**

## Changing WWNs after replacing an HBA.

1. To change the WWN of a new HBA, you need to first understand its description. If the description exists, confirm it in step 7.
2. Confirm the WWN of the HBA before the replacement.
3. Shut down the host (server).
4. Replace the HBA.
5. Connect the Fibre Channel switch or the port of the array to the HBA with the fibre cable.
6. Start the host (server).
7. If the WWN of the new HBA was not confirmed in step 1, confirm the WWN here.
8. Specify the name of the array connected to the new HBA and refer to the information on the host group (controller number, port number, and host group number) in which the WWN of the HBA before replacement is registered.
9. Specify the WWN of the HBA before replacement and cancel the assignment to the host group.
10. Check that the WWN before replacement was moved from the Assigned WWN to the Assignable WWN.
11. Check that the host group number of the WWN of the HBA before replacement is not displayed.

When the selected WWN is assigned to the host group, you cannot cancel the WWN. When the is listed on the Assigned WWN, execute the operation from step 8 again.

```

% auhgwwn -unit df800 -refer -permhg 0 A -gno 1
Port 0A Host Group Security ON
Assigned WWN
  Name      Port Name      Host Name
win001     10000000C920680 001:G001
Assignable WWN
  Name      Port Name
           20000E069402A08
%
% auhgwwn -unit df800 -rm -permhg 0 A 10000000C9290680 -gno 1
The security information has been set successfully.
%
% auhgwn -unit df800 -refer -permhg 0 A -gno 1
Port 0A Host Group Security ON

Assigned WWN
  Name      Port Name      Host Name
win001
Assignable WWN
  Name      Port Name
           10000000C920680
           20000E069402A08
%

```

12. Specify the WWN of the HBA before replacement and delete it from the port.

```

% auhgwwn -unit df800 -refer -login 0 A
Port 0A Host Group Security ON
Assigned WWN
  Name      Port Name
win001     10000000C920680
           20000E069402A08
Assignable WWN
  Name      Port Name
           20000E069402A08
%
% auhgwwn -unit df800 -rm -perm 0 A 10000000C9290680
Are you sure you want to delete selected WWN? (y/n [n]): y
The security information has been set successfully.
%
% auhgwn -unit df800 -refer -login 0 A
Port 0A Host Group Security ON
Detected WWN
  Name      Port Name
           20000E069402A08

```

13. Refer to the information on the host group in units of ports and find the WWN of the new HBA from the list. The WWN of the new HBA is the one that you checked in step 1 or 7. If the WWN of the new HBA is not located in the list, add the WWN manually.

```

% auhgwwn -unit df800 -set -permhg 0 A 20000E069402A08 -wname win002 -gno 1
The security information has been set successfully.

```

In this case, the device authentication of the new HBA may not be performed. Confirm the new HBA again and ensure that the route from the new HBA to the array port is connected correctly.

14. Specify the name of the array connected to the new HBA and add it to the host group (controller number, port number, and host group number) which registers the WWN of the HBA after replacement.
15. Check that the WWN of the new HBA is listed on the Assigned WWN and the assigned host group number displays.
16. Rescan the device configuration from the host (server) again and confirm that the host (server) can recognize the same volume as the one before the HBA replacement.

The host (server) may not be able to recognize the volume only by rescanning the device configuration again depending on the host (server). In that case, disconnect the Fibre channel cable once and connect it again.

```
% auhgwwn -unit df800 -assign -permhg 0 A 20000E069402A08
Port 0A Host Group Security ON
Assigned WWN
  Name      Port Name
  win001    10000000C920680
             20000E069402A08
Assignable WWN
  Name      Port Name
             20000E069402A08
%
% auhgwwn -unit df800 -rm -perm 0 A 10000000C9290680
Are you sure you want to delete selected WWN? (y/n [n]): y
The security information has been set successfully.
%
% auhgwn -unit df800 -refer -login 0 A
Port 0A Host Group Security ON
Detected WWN
  Name      Port Name
             20000E069402A08
```

17. After assigning the WWN of the new HBA to the host group, specify as follows when setting a nickname (Name) to the WWN (Port Name).

```
% auhgwwn -unit df800 -rename 0 A 20000E069402A08 -gno 1 -newwname win002
The security information has been set successfully.
%
% auhgwwn -unit df800 -refer -permhg 0 A -gno 1
Port 0A Host Group Security ON
Assigned WWN
  Name      Port Name      Host Group
  win001    10000000C920680    001:G001
             20000E069402A08
Assignable WWN
  Name      Port Name
             %
%
```



# Performance Monitor

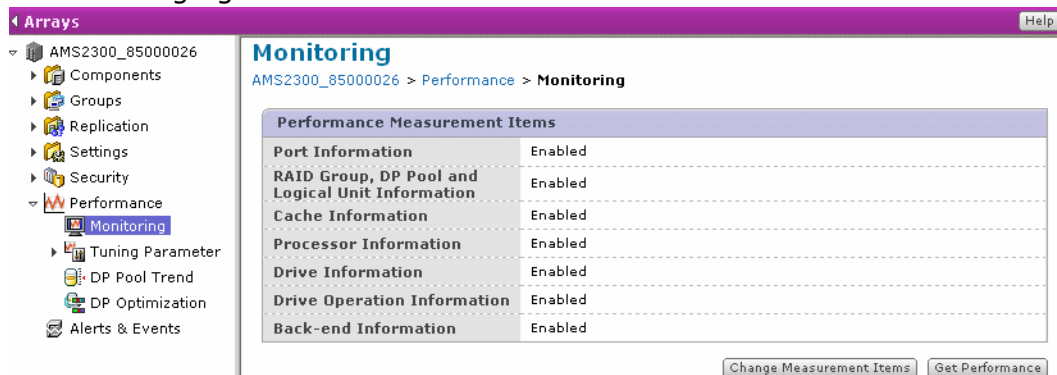
This chapter describes Performance Monitor.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- [Performance Monitor overview](#)
- [Performance Monitor operations](#)
- [Optimizing system performance](#)
- [Performance troubleshooting](#)

## Performance Monitor overview

To launch Performance Monitor, click a storage system in the navigation tree, then click Performance, and click Monitoring to launch the Monitoring window as shown in [Figure 9-1](#). Note that Dynamic Provisioning is valid in the following figure.



**Figure 9-1: Performance Monitor - Monitoring window**

[Table 9-1](#) lists the Performance Monitor specifications.

**Table 9-1: Performance Monitor Specifications**

Item	Description
Information	Acquires array performance and resource utilization.
Graphic display	Information is displayed with line graphs. Information displayed can be near-real time.
Information output	The information can be output to a CSV file.
Management PC disk capacity	Navigator 2 creates a temporary file to the directory where it is installed to store the monitor output data. The disk capacity of the maximum of 2.4 GB is required.  For CSV file output, a free disk capacity of at least 750 MB is required.
Performance information acquisition	Performance Monitor acquires information on performance and resource utilization of the disk array.
Graphic display	Performance Monitor displays acquired information with line graphs. It displays the graph as soon as it acquires the information or displays optional information later after making a choice from the information acquired.

## Performance Monitor operations

The procedure for Performance Monitor appears below.

### Initial settings

To configure initial settings

1. Verify that you have the environments and requirements for Performance Monitor (see [Preinstallation information on page 2-2](#)).
2. Collect the performance monitoring data (see [Obtaining information on page 9-4](#)).

## Optional operations

1. Use the graphic displays (see [Using graphic displays on page 9-5](#)).
2. Output the performance monitor information to a file.
3. Optimize the performance (see [Performance troubleshooting on page 9-6](#)).

## Optimizing system performance

This section describes how to use Performance Monitor to optimize your system.

### Obtaining information

The information is obtained for each controller.

#### To obtain information for each controller using Navigator 2 greater than V11.70:

1. Start Navigator 2 and log in. The Arrays window opens
2. Click the appropriate array.
3. Click **Show & Configure Array**.
4. Select the **Monitoring** icon in the Performance tree view.
5. Click **Show Graph**. The Performance Monitor window displays.
6. Specify the interval time.
7. When starting the monitoring process, select the items you want represented as a graph from the Detailed Graph Item and Graph Item Information.
8. Click **Start**. When the first interval elapses, the graph displays. If the following behaviors occur during monitoring, invalid data may display:
  - Array power off
  - Controller failure
  - Array could not acquire data by a network obstacle
  - Firmware updating
9. The item to be displayed can be changed through the following operation:

Graduating on the graph's Y-axis are changed by selecting values from the pull-down menu of the maximum value on the Y-axis. To refer to other information that has been acquired, clicking Change Graph Data (the displayed graph briefly disappears), select the items displayed in the Detailed Graph Item and Graph Item Information, then click **Show Graph**. When the graphic display changes, the acquisition of information continues.
10. To stop the acquisition, click **Stop**.



**NOTE:** If the array is turned off or cannot acquire data, or a controller failure occurs, incorrect data can appear.

---

#### To obtain information for each controller using Navigator 2 less than V11.70:

### To obtain information for each controller

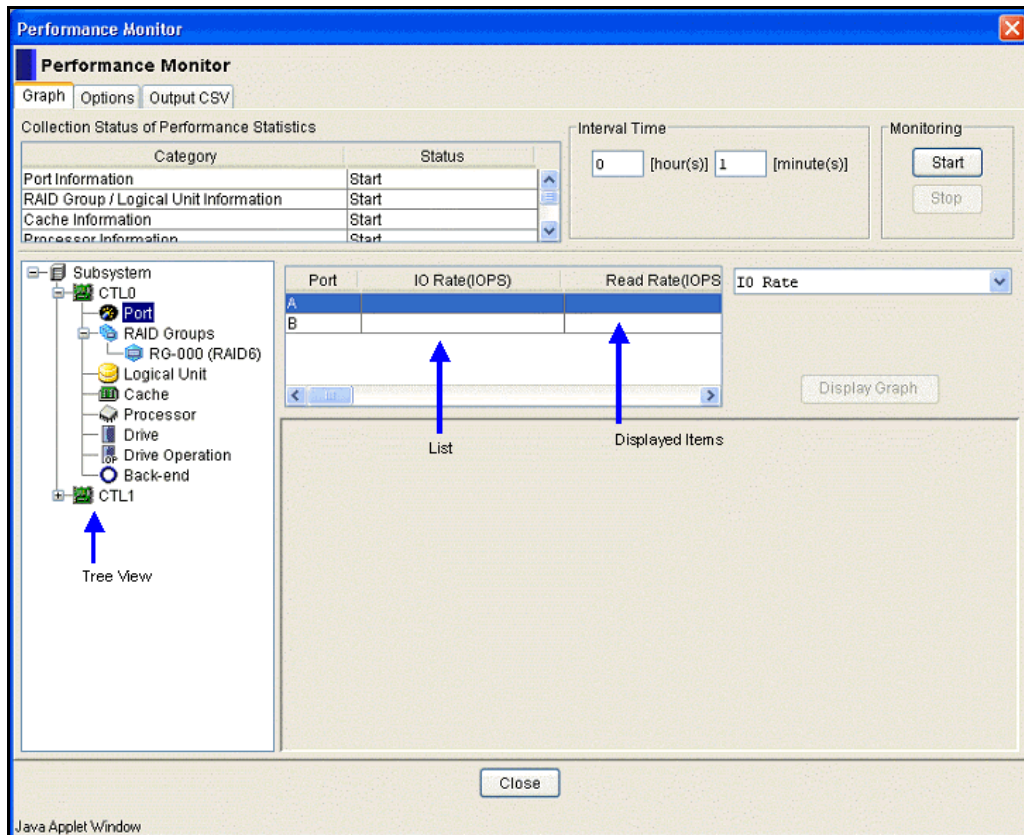
1. Start Navigator 2 and log in. The Arrays window opens
2. Click the appropriate array.
3. Expand the **Settings** list, and click **Advanced Settings**.
4. Click **Open Advanced Settings**. After some minutes, the Array Unit window opens.
5. Click **Performance**. The Performance Monitor window is displayed.
6. Click **Display Graph**.
7. Specify the interval time.
8. Select the items (up to 8) that you want to appear in the graph.
9. Click **Start**. When the interval elapses, the graph appears.

## Using graphic displays

You must have the license key installed to display performance graphs. When installed, the **Display Graph** button is available from the Performance Monitor window.

### To display graphs for Navigator 2 versions that are less than V11.70:

1. Obtain the information. Note that if you close the Performance Monitor window, the information is lost.
2. Select the appropriate item, and click **Display Graph**. The Performance Monitor Graph window appears (see [Figure 9-2 on page 9-6](#)).



**Figure 9-2: Performance Monitor Window — Graph Tab**

3. To change the item that is being displayed, select the appropriate values from the drop-down menus.



**NOTE:** The graphic display data cannot be saved. However, you can copy the information in a comma-separated values (CSV) file. For more information, see the Dirty Data Flush section at the end of this chapter.

**To display graphs for Navigator 2 versions that are greater than V11.70:**

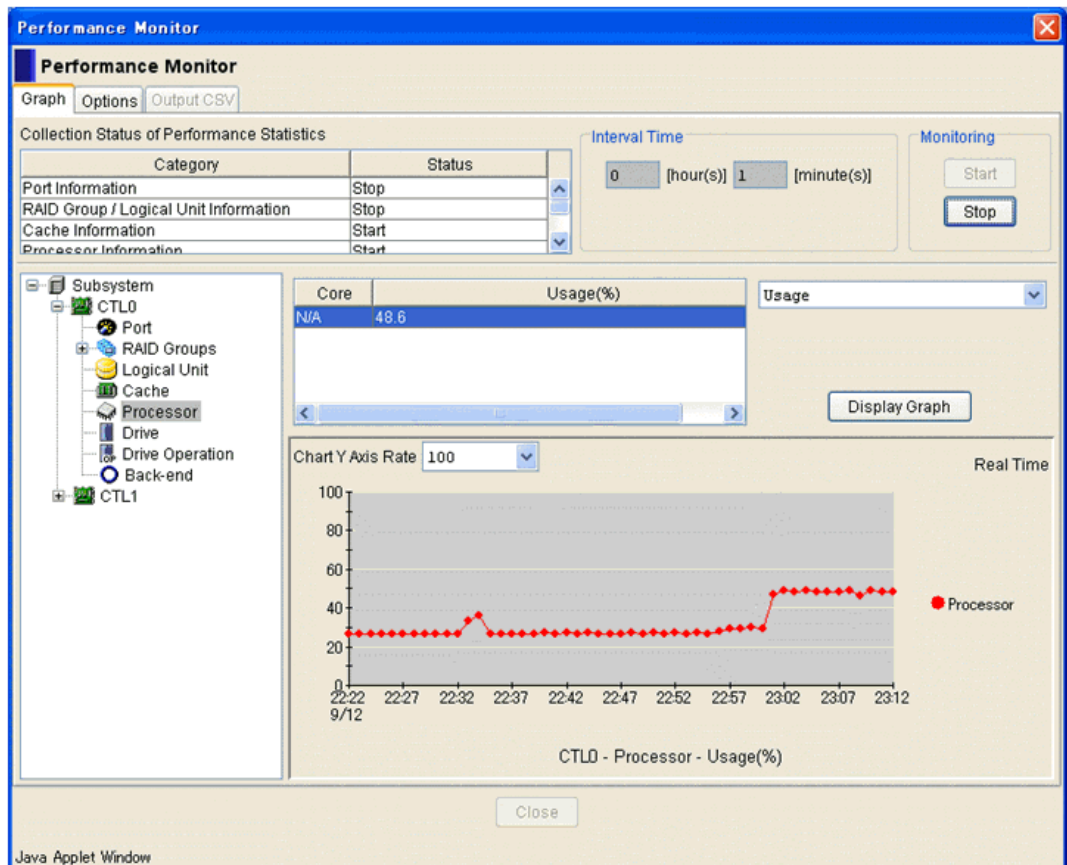
1. Acquire the information. Information will be lost when the Performance Monitor screen is closed. Examine each graph after information for it has been acquired.
2. Select the item you want to display from those in the Graph Item.
3. Select the Detailed Graph Item and Graph Item Information fields, and then click **Show Graph**. The selected item displays.
4. The item to be displayed can be changed through the following operation. Graduations on the graph's Y-axis are changed by selecting values from the pull-down menu of the maximum value on the Y-axis.
  - To refer to other information that has been acquired by clicking Change Graph Data (the displayed graph briefly disappears, click the items displayed in the Detailed Graph Item and Graph Item Information fields.

- Click Show Graph. When the graphic display changes, the acquisition of information continues.
- To terminate the graphic display, click Close. The Performance Monitor window closes.



**NOTE:** The data of the graphic display can be saved. When you want to save the data of the graphic display, position a mouse cursor to the graphic display. A saved menu appears. Select the left end icon. The information can be stored in the CSV file.

An example of a Performance Monitor graph (CPU usage) is shown in [Figure 9-3 on page 9-7](#).



**Figure 9-3: Performance Monitor — Sample Graph (CPU Usage)**

The time and date when the information was acquired displays on the axis of the abscissa. The axis of the ordinate is determined by selecting the maximum value on the Y axis. Selectable values vary according to the item selected. The relationship between the displayed items and the maximum values on the Y-axis is shown in [Table 9-9 on page 9-25](#). The underlined values are default settings. In the graph, five data points corresponding to particular intervals are plotted per one graduation, and the name of the item displayed shows below the graph.



**NOTE:** If the following behaviors occur during monitoring, invalid data may display:

- Array power off
  - Controller failure
  - Array could not acquire data by a network obstacle
  - Firmware updating
-

Table 9-2 on page 9-9 shows the summary of each item in the Performance Monitor.


**Table 9-2: Summary of Performance Monitor Window**













Item	Description
Graph Item	The objects of the information acquisition and the graphic display are displayed with icons. When a certain icon is clicked, details of the icon are displayed in the Detailed Graph Item. Explanation of the icons is provided in <a href="#">Table 9-3 on page 9-9</a> .
Detailed Graph Item	Details of items selected in the Graph Item are displayed. The most recent performance information of each item is displayed for the array configuration and the defined configuration.
Graph Item Information	Specify items to be graphically displayed by selecting them from the listed items. Items to be displayed are determined according to the selection that is made in the Graph Item.
Interval Time	Specify an interval for acquiring the information. Specify it in units of minutes within a range from one minute to 23 hours and 59 minutes. The default interval is one minute. In the above-mentioned interval time, the data for a maximum of 1,440 times can be stored. If it exceeds 1,440 times, it will be overwritten from the old data.

## Working with the Performance Monitor Graph Items

The Graph Items is the list of objects Performance Monitor measures displayed in the navigation bar to the right of the main portion of the Performance Monitor Window. The objects display as text strings accompanied by icons to the left of the strings. The objects are associated with information acquisition and graphic display. When you click a certain icon, the details of the corresponding icon display in the Detailed Graph Item field. [Table 9-3](#) provides descriptions of Graph Items icons.

**Table 9-3: Graph Items Icons**

Icon	Item Name	Description
	Registered Array Name	For Performance Monitor V11.70 and greater. Represents the selected storage system. Clicking the icon displays a Tree View of icons belonging to the storage system. Information on this icon is not displayed in the list.

Icon	Item Name	Description
	Subsystem	Represents the selected storage system. Clicking the icon displays a Tree View of icons belonging to the storage system. Information on this icon is not displayed in the list.
	CTL0/CTL1	Represents the controller on the storage system. Clicking this icon displays a Tree view of icons that belong to the controller. Information on this icon is not displayed in the list. In the case of a single controller system, an icon of CTL 1 is not displayed. When one of the controllers is registered with SNM2 in the case of the dual controller system, only an icon of the connected controller displays.
	Port	Represents the selected port number on the current storage system. Information on the port displays in the list.
	RAID Groups	Represents RAID groups that have been defined for the current storage system. Information on the RAID groups display in the list.
	RG-000	Represents the logical units that belong to each RAID group defined for the current storage system. Information on the logical units display in the list.
	DP Pools	Represents the Dynamic Provisioning pools that have been defined for the current storage system. Information on the DP pool displays in the list.
	Logical Unit	Represents the logical units defined for the current storage system. Information on the logical units displays in the list.
	Cache	Represents the cache resident in the current storage system. Information on the cache displays in the list.
	Processor	Represents the processor in the current storage system. Information on the processor displays in the list.
	Drive	Represents the disk drive in the current storage system. Information on the drive displays in the list.
	Drive Operation	Represents the drive operation in the current storage system. Information on the drive displays in the list.
	Back-End	Represents the back-end of the current storage system. Information on the back-end displays in the list.

Note that procedures in this guide frequently refer to the Tree View as a list, for example, the Volume Migration list.

## More About Tree View Items in Performance Monitor

The following tables detail items selected in the Tree View. The most recent performance information of each item displays for the storage system configuration and the defined configuration.

During the monitoring process, the display updates automatically at regular intervals. Even if the definition of the RAID group or logical unit changes during the monitoring, the change produces no effect on the list. Before the monitoring starts, the list is blank.

After the monitoring begins, the agent may not acquire the information to run the application. This may occur because of traffic problems on the LAN when the specified interval elapses. In cases of blocked information acquisition, a series of three dash symbols (---) displays. For a list of items that have blocked information acquisition, the N/A string displays.

Specify items to be graphically displayed by selecting them from the drop-down list launched from the top level list of objects in the Tree View. Items displayed in the drop-down list of objects to be displayed are determined according to the selection that is made in the Tree View.

The following tables display the relationship between the Tree View and the display in the list.

[Table 9-4 on page 9-11](#) details items in the Port item.

**Table 9-4: Expanded Tree View of Port Item**

Displayed Items	Description
Port	Port number (The maximum numbers of resources that can be installed in the array are displayed).
IO Rate (IOPS)	Received number of Read/Write commands per second.
Read Rate (IOPS)	Received number of Read commands per second.
Write Rate (IOPS)	Received number of Write commands per second.
Read Hit (%)	Rate of cache-hitting within the received Read command.
Write Hit (%)	Rate of cache-hitting within the received Write command.
Trans. Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of Read/Write commands per second.
Read Trans. Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of Read commands per second.
Write Trans. Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of Write commands per second.
CTL Command IO Rate (IOPS)	Sent number of control commands of TrueCopy Initiator per second (acquired local side only).
Data Command IO Rate (IOPS)	Sent number of data commands of TrueCopy initiator per second (acquired local side only).
CTL Command Trans. Rate (KB/s)	Transfer size of control commands of TrueCopy Initiator per second (acquired local side only).
Data Command Trans. Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of data commands of TrueCopy Initiator per second (acquired local side only).
CTL Command Time (microsec.)	Average response time of commands of TrueCopy Initiator (acquired local side only).

Displayed Items	Description
Data Command Time (microsec.)	Average response time of data commands of TrueCopy Initiator (acquired local side only).
CTL Command Max Time (microsec.)	Maximum response time of control commands of TrueCopy Initiator (acquired local side only)
Data Command Max Time (microsec.)	Maximum response time of data commands of TrueCopy Initiator (acquired local side only)
XCOPY Rate (IOPS)	Received number of XCOPY commands per second
XCOPY Time (microsec.)	Average response time of XCOPY commands
XCOPY Max Time (microsec)	Maximum response time of XCOPY commands
XCOPY Read Trans Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of XCOPY Read commands per second
XCOPY Write Rate (IOPS)	Received number of XCOPY Write commands per second
XCOPY Write Trans Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of XCOPY Write commands per second

[Table 9-5 on page 9-12](#) details items in the RAID Groups DP Pools item.

**Table 9-5: Expanded Tree View of RAID Groups DP Pool Items**

Displayed Items	Description
RAID Group/DP Pool	The RAID group/DP Pool number that has been defined for the current storage system.
IO Rate (IOPS)	Received number of read/write commands per second.
Read Rate (IOPS)	Received number of read commands per second.
Write Rate (IOPS)	Received number of write commands per second.
Read Hit (%)	Rate of cache-hitting within the received Read command.
Write Hit (%)	Rate of cache-hitting within the received Write command.
Trans. Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of read/write commands per second.
Read Trans. Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of read commands per second.
Write Trans. Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of write commands per second.
XCOPY Rate (IOPS)	Received number of XCOPY commands per second
XCOPY Time (microsec.)	Average response time of XCOPY commands
XCOPY Max Time (microsec.)	Maximum response time of XCOPY commands.
XCOPY Read Rate (IOPS)	Received number of XCOPY Read commands per second
XCOPY Read Trans Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of XCOPY Read commands per second
XCOPY Write Trans Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of XCOPY Write commands per second

Table 9-6 on page 9-13 details items in the Logical Unit, Cache, and Processor items.

**Table 9-6: Expanded Tree View of Logical Unit, Cache, and Processor Items**

Item	Displayed Items	Description	
Logical Unit DP Pool	LUN	Logical unity number defined for the current storage system.	
	IO Rate (IOPS)	Received number of read/write commands per second.	
	Read Rate (IOPS)	Received number of read commands per second.	
	Write Rate (IOPS)	Received number of write commands per second.	
	Read Hit (%)	Rate of cache-hitting within the received read command.	
	Write Hit (%)	Rate of cache hitting within the received write command.	
	Trans. Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of read/write commands.	
	Read Trans. Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of read commands per second.	
	Write Trans. Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of write commands per second.	
	Tag Count (only Logical Unit)	Maximum multiplicity of commands between intervals.	
	Tag Average (only Logical Unit)	Average multiplicity of commands between intervals.	
	Data Command IO Rate (IOPS)	Sent number of data commands of TrueCopy Initiator per second (acquired local side only).	
	Data Command Trans. Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of data commands of TrueCopy Initiator per second (acquired local side only)	
	XCOPY Max Time (microsec.)	Maximum response time of XCOPY commands	
	XCOPY Read Rate (IOPS)	Received number of XCOPY Read commands per second.	
	XCOPY Read Trans. Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of XCOPY Read commands per second	
	XCOPY Write Rate (IOPS)	Received number of XCOPY Write commands per second	
	XCOPY Write Trans Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of XCOPY Write commands per second	
	Cache	Partition	Partition number
		Write Pending Rate (%)	Rate of cache usage capacity within the cache capacity.
Clean Queue Usage Rate (%) Note 2		Clean cache usage rate.	

Item	Displayed Items	Description
	Middle Queue Usage Rate (%) Note 2	Middle cache usage rate.
	Physical Queue Usage Rate (%) Note 2	Physical cache usage rate.
	Total Queue Usage Rate (%)	Total cache usage rate.
Processor	Core	Core type
	Usage (%)	Operation rate of the processor.



**NOTE:** Total cache usage rate and cache usage rate per partition display.

[Table 9-7 on page 9-14](#) details items in the Logical Unit, Cache, and Processor items.

**Table 9-7: Expanded Tree View of Drive and Back-End Items**

Item	Displayed Items	Description
Drive	Tray	Tray number (The maximum numbers of resources that can be installed in the array are displayed).
	HDU	Hard Drive Unit number, the maximum number of resources that can be installed in the array display.
	IO Rate (IOPS)	Received number of read/write commands per second.
	Read Rate (IOPS)	Received number of read commands per second.
	Write Rate (IOPS)	Received number of write commands per second.
	Trans. Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of read/write commands per second.
	Read Trans. Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of read commands per second.
	Write Trans. Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of write commands per second.
	Online Verify Rate (IOPS)	Number of Online Verify commands per second.
	Drive Operation	Unit
HDU		Hard Drive Unit number, the maximum number of resources that can be installed in the storage system display.
Operating Rate (%)		Operation rate of the drive.
Tag Count		Maximum multiplicity of drive commands between intervals.

Item	Displayed Items	Description
	Tag Average	Average multiplicity of drive commands between intervals.
Back-End Information	Path	Path number, the maximum number of resources that can be installed in the storage system display.
	IO Rate (IOPS)	Received number of read/write commands per second.
	Read Rate (IOPS)	Received number of read commands per second.
	Write Rate (IOPS)	Received number of write commands per second.
	Trans. Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of read/write commands per second.
	Read Trans. Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of read commands per second.
	Write Trans. Rate (MB/s)	Transfer size of write commands per second.
	Online Verify Rate (IOPS)	Number of Online Verify commands per second.

- **Note 1:** TrueCopy is a short name of TrueCopy Remote Replication and TrueCopy Extended Distance.
- **Note 2:** Total cache usage rate and cache usage rate per partition are displayed.
- **Note 3:** For the cache hit of the Write command, the Write command performs the operation (write after) to respond to a host with the status at the time of completing a write to the cache memory. Therefore, a case where the write to the cache memory is immediately performed is defined as a hit and a case where the write to the cache memory is waited for a reason that the cache memory is heavily used, is defined as a miss.

For the cache hit of the write command, the command performs the operation (write after) to respond to a host with the status at the time of completing write to the cache memory. Because of this response type, two exception cases exist that are worth noting where a write to the cache memory is viewed by the application variously as a hit and a miss:

- A case where the write to the cache memory is immediately performed is defined as a hit.
- A case where the write to the cache memory is delayed because of heavy cache memory use is defined as a miss.

## Using Performance Monitor with Dynamic Provisioning

When using Performance Monitor with Dynamic Provisioning enabled, the output displayed is slightly different. [Figure 9-4 on page 9-16](#) displays a sample Performance Monitor Window when Dynamic Provisioning is valid.

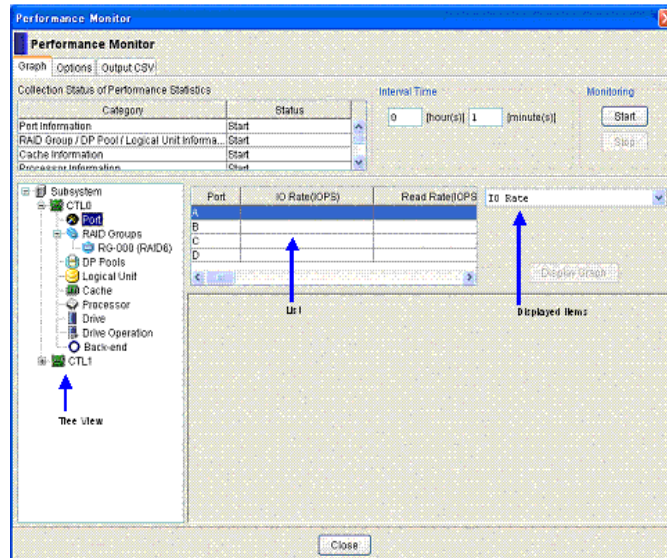
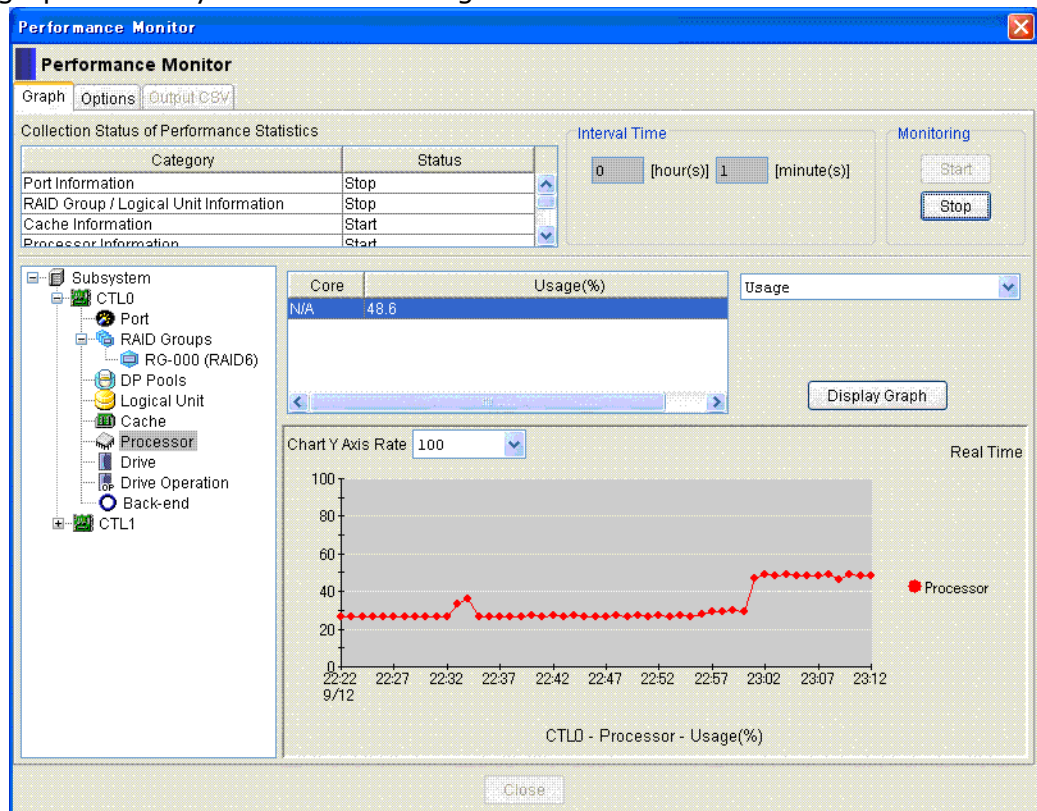


Figure 9-4: Performance Monitor: Dynamic Provisioning is Valid

## Working with Graphing and Dynamic Provisioning

The Performance Monitor graph application also behaves differently when Dynamic Provisioning is valid. Figure 9-5 on page 9-17 displays a sample graph when Dynamic Provisioning is valid.



**Figure 9-5: Performance Monitor Graph: Dynamic Provisioning Enabled**

The time and date when the information was acquired is displayed on the axis of the abscissa. the axis of the ordinate is determined by selecting the maximum value on the Y-axis. Selectable values vary according to the item selected.

In the graph, five data points corresponding to particular intervals are plotted per on graduation. the name of the item being displayed is show below the graph. The example shown in the figure is CTL0-Processor-Usage(%).

Invalid data may display if any of the following events occur during monitoring:

- Storage system power is off or shuts down
- Controller failure
- Storage system could not acquire data by a network obstacle
- Firmware in the process of updating

Figure 9-6 shows the non-graph version of Performance Monitor when Dynamic Provisioning is valid.

Show Graph

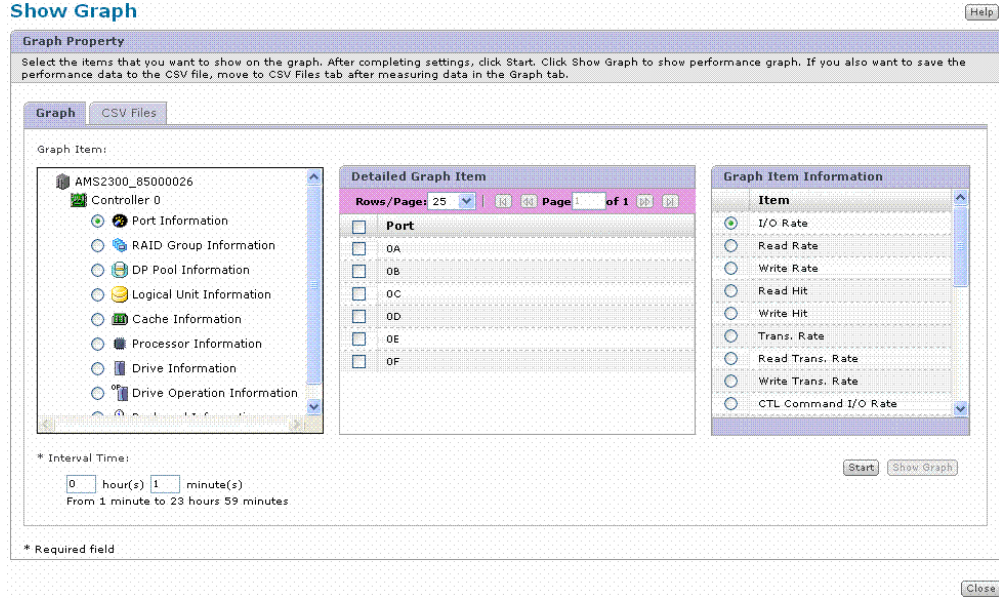


Figure 9-6: Performance Monitor Screen (Non Graph: Dynamic Provisioning is Valid)

## Explanation of Displayed Items

**Table 9-8: Graphic Displayed Items and Selectable Y-axis Values**

Selected Item	Displayed Items	Selectable Y Axis Values
Port Information	IO Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000,
	Read Rate	5,000, 10,000, <b>20,000</b> , 50,000, 100,000,
	Write Rate	150,000
	Read Hit	20, 50, <b>100</b>
	Write Hit	
	Trans. Rate	0, 20, 50, 100, <b>200</b> , 500, 1,000, 2,000
	Read Trans. Rate	
	Write Trans. Rate	
	CTL Command IO Rate	10, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, <b>2,000</b> , 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000
	Data Command IO Rate	10, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, <b>20,000</b> , 50,000
	CTL Command Trans. Rate	10, 50, <b>100</b> , 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, 100,000, 150,000
	Data Command Trans. Rate	10, 20, 50, <b>100</b> , 200, 400
	CTL Command Time	10, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, <b>100,000</b> , 200,000, 500,000, 1,000,000, 5,000,000, 10,000,000, 60,000,000
	Data Command Time	10, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, <b>100,000</b> , 200,000, 500,000, 1,000,000, 5,000,000, 10,000,000, 60,000,000
	CTL Command Max Time	10, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, <b>100,000</b> , 200,000, 500,000, 1,000,000, 5,000,000, 10,000,000, 60,000,000
	Data Command Max Time	500,000, 1,000,000, 5,000,000, 10,000,000, 60,000,000
	XCOPY Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, 10,000, 150,000
	XCOPY Time	100, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, 100,000, 500,000, 1,000,000, 5,000,000, 10,000,000, 60,000,000
	XCOPY Max Time	100, 500, 1,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, 100,000, 200,000, 500,000, 1,000,000, 2,000,000, 5,000,000, 10,000,000, 60,000,000
	XCOPY Read Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, 100,000, 150,000
XCOPY Write Rate	150,000	
XCOPY Read Trans. Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000	
XCOPY Write Trans. Rate		

<b>Selected Item</b>	<b>Displayed Items</b>	<b>Selectable Y Axis Values</b>
RAID Group Information DP Pool Information	I/O Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1000, 2000, 5000, 10000, 20000, 50000, 100000, 150000
	Read Rate	
	Write Rate	
	Read Hit	25, 50, 100
	Write Hit	
	Trans. Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1000, 2000
	Read Trans. Rate	
	Write Trans. Rate	
	XCOPY Rate	100, 200, 500, 1000, 2000, 5000, 10000, 20000, 50000, 100000
	XCOPY Time	100, 200, 500, 1000, 2000, 5000, 10000, 20000, 50000, 100000, 500000, 1000000, 2000000, 5000000, 10000000, 60000000
	XCOPY Max Time	100, 200, 500, 1000, 5000, 10000, 20000, 50000, 100000, 500000, 1000000, 2000000, 5000000, 10000000, 60000000
	XCOPY Read Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1000, 2000, 5000, 10000, 20000, 50000
	XCOPY Write Rate	
	XCOPY Read Trans. Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1000, 2000
	XCOPY Write Trans. Rate	

Selected Item	Displayed Items	Selectable Y Axis Values
Logical Unit Information	I/O Rate	
	Read Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1000, 2000, 5000, 10000, 20000, 50000, 100000, 150000
	Write Rate	
	Read Hit	20, 50, 100
	Write Hit	
	Trans. Rate	0, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1000, 2000
	Read Trans. Rate	
	Max Tag Count	500, 1000, 2000, 5000, 10000, 20000, 50000, 100000
	Average Tag Count	
	Data Command I/O Rate	10, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1000, 2000, 5000, 10000, 20000, 50000
	Data Command Trans. Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 400
	XCOPY Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1000, 2000, 5000, 10000, 20000, 50000, 100000, 150000
	XCOPY Time	100, 500, 1000, 2000, 5000, 10000, 20000, 50000, 100000, 2000000, 5000000, 10000000, 60000000
	XCOPY Max Time	100, 500, 1000, 5000, 10000, 20000, 50000, 100000, 2000000, 5000000, 10000000, 20000000, 50000000, 100000000, 600000000
	XCOPY Read Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1000, 2000, 5000, 10000, 20000, 50000, 100000, 150000
	XCOPY Write Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1000, 2000
XCOPY Read Trans. Rate		
XCOPY Write Trans. Rate		
Cache Information	Write Pending Rate Note	20, 50, 100
	Clean Queue Usage Rate Note	
	Middle Queue Usage Rate Note	
	Physical Queue Usage Rate Note	
	Total Queue Usage Rate	
Processor Information	Usage	

Selected Item	Displayed Items	Selectable Y Axis Values	
Drive Information Back-end Information	I/O Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1000, 2000, 5000, 10000, 20000, 50000	
	Read Rate		
	Write Rate		
		Trans. Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 1000, 2000
		Read Trans. Rate	
		Write Trans. Rate	
		Online Verify Rate	
Drive Operation Information	Operating Rate	20, 50, 100	
	Max Tag Count		
	Average Tag Count		
Back-end Information	I/O Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1000, 2000, 5000, 10000, 20000, 50000	
	Read Rate		
	Write Rate		
	Trans. Rate		
	Read Trans. Rate		
	Write Trans. Rate		
	Online Verify Rate		



**NOTE:** Total cache usage rate and cache usage rate per partition are displayed.

Select the maximum value on the Y-axis judging from the look of the line graph displayed. When the maximum value on the Y-axis is too small, data bigger than the maximum value cannot be displayed because it is beyond the limits of display. When the **Show Graph** button is clicked, the maximum value on the Y-axis is set as the default value. However, when the item to be displayed is not changed, the graph is displayed based on the maximum value on the Y-axis used immediately before.

## Displayed Items

The following are displayed items in the Port tree view.

- IO Rate
- Read Rate
- Write Rate
- Read Hit
- Write Hit
- Trans. Rate
- Read Trans. Rate
- Write Trans. Rate
- CTL Commandd IO Rate
- CTL Command Trans. Rate
- Data Command Trans. Rate
- CTL Command Time
- Data Command Time
- CTL Command Max Time
- Data Command Max Time
- XCOPY Rate
- XCOPY Time
- XCOPY Max Time
- XCOPY Read Rate
- XCOPY Read Trans.Rate
- XCOPY Write Rate
- XCOPY Write Trans.Rate

The following are displayed items in the RAID Groups DP Pool tree view.

- IO Rate
- Read Rate
- Write Rate
- Read Hit
- Write Hit
- Trans. Rate
- Read Trans. Rate
- Write Trans. Rate
- XCOPY Time
- XCOPY Max Time
- XCOPY Read Rate
- XCOPY Read Trans.Rate
- XCOPY Write Rate

- XCOPY Write Trans.Rate

The following are displayed items in the Logical Unit tree view.

- IO Rate
- Read Rate
- Write Rate
- Read Hit
- Write Hit
- Trans. Rate
- Read Trans. Rate
- Write Trans. Rate
- Max Tag Count
- Average Tag Count
- Data CMD IO Rate
- Data CMD Trans. Rate
- XCOPY Rate
- XCOPY Time
- XCOPY Max Time
- XCOPY Read Rate
- XCOPY Read Trans.Rate
- XCOPY Write Rate
- XCOPY Write Trans.Rate

The following are displayed items in the Cache tree view.

- Write Pending Rate Note
- Clean Queue Usage Rate Note
- Middle Queue Usage Rate Note
- Physical Queue Usage Rate Note
- Total Queue Usage Rate

The following are items in the Processor tree view.

- Usage

The following are items in the Drive tree view.

- Back-endIO Rate
- Read Rate
- Write Rate
- Trans. Rate
- Read Trans. Rate
- Write Trans. Rate
- Online Verify Rate

The following are items in the Drive tree view.

- OperationOperating
- Rate
- Max Tag Count
- Average Tag Count

The following are items in the Back-end tree view.

- IO Rate
- Read Rate
- Write Rate
- Trans. Rate
- Read Trans. Rate
- Write Trans. Rate
- Online Verify Rate

## Determining the Ordinate Axis

The Y axis is a control object in the graphing feature in Performance Monitor because it determines value information conveyed in the graph. Most importantly, the axis of the ordinate is determined by selecting the maximum value on the Y-axis.

[Table 9-9 on page 9-25](#) shows the relationship between displayed items for selected objects and the maximum values on the Y axis. The three objects to which the displayed items belong are Port, RAID Groups DP Pools, and Logical Units. The bolded values are default settings.

While the table is inclusive to the three object types, Note displayed items for Logical Units only extend between IO Rate and Write Hit in the table. Also, displayed items for RAID Groups DP Pools only extend between IO Rate and Write Trans. Rate in the table.

**Table 9-9: Selectable Y Axis Values for Objects, Port Item**

Displayed Items	Selectable Y Axis Values
IO Rate	
Read Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, <b>20,000</b> , 50,000, 100,000, 150,000
Write Rate	
Read Hit	20, 50, <b>100</b>
Write Hit	
Trans. Rate	
Read Trans. Rate	0, 20, 50, 100, <b>200</b> , 500, 1,000, 2,000
Write Trans. Rate	

Displayed Items	Selectable Y Axis Values
CTL CMD IO Rate	10, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, <b>2,000</b> , 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000
Data CMD IO Rate	10, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, <b>20,000</b> , 50,000
CTL CMD Trans. Rate	10, 50, <b>100</b> , 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, 100,000, 150,000
Data CMD Trans. Rate	10, 20, 50, <b>100</b> , 200, 400
CTL CMD Time	10, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, <b>100,000</b> , 200,000, 500,000, 1,000,000, 5,000,000, 10,000,000, 60,000,000
Data CMD Time	10, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, <b>100,000</b> , 200,000, 500,000, 1,000,000, 5,000,000, 10,000,000, 60,000,000
CTL CMD Max Time	10, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, <b>100,000</b> , 200,000, 500,000, 1,000,000, 5,000,000, 10,000,000, 60,000,000
Data CMD Max Time	10, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, <b>100,000</b> , 200,000, 500,000, 1,000,000, 5,000,000, 10,000,000, 60,000,000
XCOPY Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, 10,000, 150,000
XCOPY Time	100, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, 100,000, 500,000, 1,000,000, 5,000,000, 10,000,000, 60,000,000
XCOPY Max Time	100, 500, 1,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, 100,000, 200,000, 500,000, 1,000,000, 2,000,000, 5,000,000, 10,000,000, 60,000,000
XCOPY Read Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, 100,000, 150,000
XCOPY Write Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, 100,000, 150,000
XCOPY Read Trans. Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000
XCOPY Write Trans. Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000

Table 9-10 details Y axis values for the RAID Groups DP Pools item.

**Table 9-10: Selectable Y-Axis Values for Objects, RAID Groups DP Pools**

Displayed Items	Selectable Y Axis Values
IO Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000
Read Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000
Write Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000
Read Hit	20, 50, 100
Write Hit	20, 50, 100
Trans. Rate	0, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000
Read Trans. Rate	0, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000
Write Trans. Rate	0, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000
XCOPY Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, 100,000, 150,000

Displayed Items	Selectable Y Axis Values
XCOPY Time	100, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,0000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, 100,000, 500,000, 1,000,000, 5,000,000, 10,000,000, 60,000,000
XCOPY Max Time	100, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,0000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, 100,000, 200,000, 500,000, 1,000,000, 2,000,000, 5,000,000, 10,000,000, 60,000,000
XCOPY Read Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, 100,000, 150,000
XCOPY Write Rate	
XCOPY Read Trans. Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000
XCOPY Write Trans. Rate	

Table 9-11 details Y axis values for the Logical Unit item.

**Table 9-11: Selectable Y-Axis Values for Objects, Logical Unit**

Displayed Items	Selectable Y Axis Values
IO Rate	10, 20, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, 100,000, 150,000
Read Rate	
Write Rate	
Read Hit	20, 50, 100
Write Hit	
Trans. Rate	0, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000
Read Trans. Rate	
Write Trans. Rate	
Max Tag Count	500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, 100,000
Average Tag Count	
Data CMD IO Rate	10, 50, 100, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000
Data CMD Trans. Rate	10, 20, 50, 200, 200, 400
XCOPY Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, 100,000, 150,000
XCOPY Time	100, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, 100,000, 500,000, 1,000,000, 5,000,000
XCOPY Max Time	100, 500, 1,000, 5,000, 10,000, 50,000, 100,000, 200,000, 500,000, 1,000,000, 5,000,000, 10,000,000, 60,000,000
XCOPY Read Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, 20,000, 50,000, 100,000, 150,000
XCOPY Write Rate	
XCOPY Read Trans. Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000
XCOPY Write Trans. Rate	

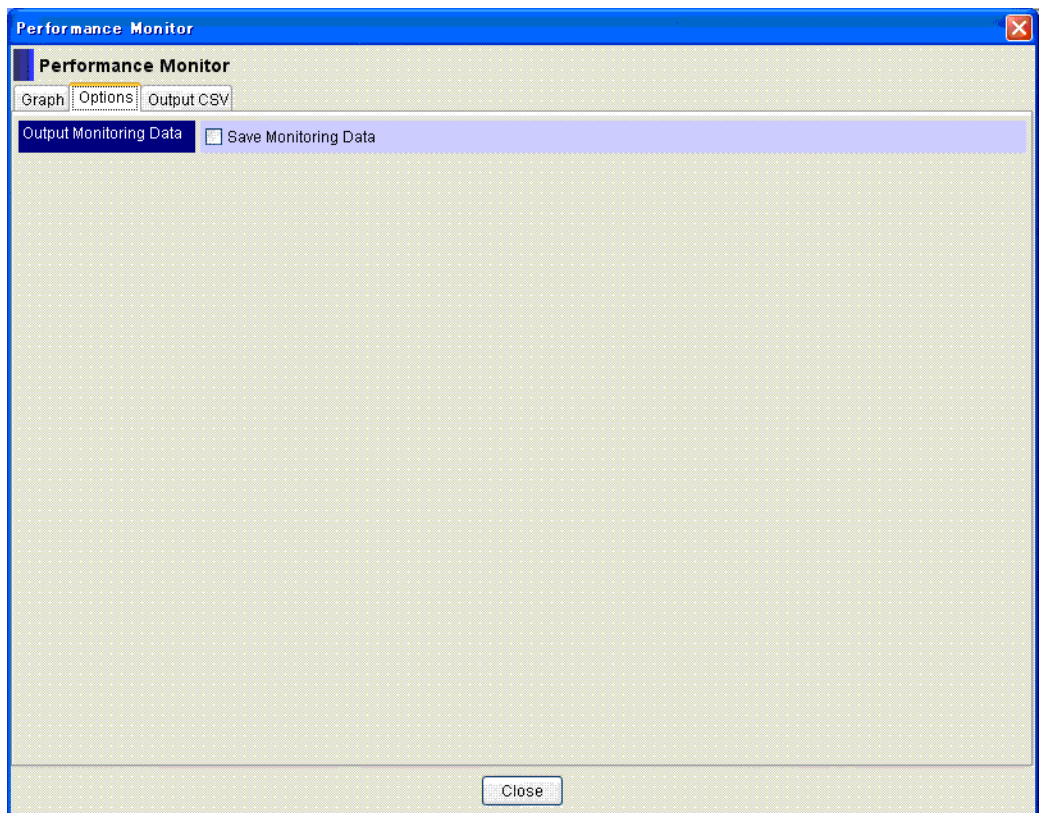
**Table 9-12: Selectable Y-Axis Values for Cache, Drive, Drive Operation, and Back-end**

Displayed Items		Selectable Y Axis Values
Cache	Write Pending Rate Note	20, 50, 100
	Clean Queue Usage Rate Note	
	Middle Queue Usage Rate Note	
	Physical Queue Usage Rate Note	
	Total Queue Usage Rate	
Processor	Usage	20, 50, 100
Drive	IO Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1000, 2000, 5000, 10000, 20000, 50000
	Read Rate	
	Write Rate	
	Trans. Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1000, 2000
	Read Trans. Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1000, 2000, 5000, 10000, 20000, 50000
	Write Trans. Rate	
	Online Verify Rate	
Drive Operation	Operating Rate	20, 50, 100
	Max Tag Count	20, 50, 100
	Average Tag Count	
Back-end	IO Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1000, 2000, 5000, 10000, 20000, 50000
	Read Rate	
	Write Rate	
	Trans. Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1000, 2000
	Read Trans. Rate	10, 20, 50, 100, 200, 500, 1000, 2000, 5000, 10000, 20000, 50000
	Write Trans. Rate	
	Online Verify Rate	

## Saving Monitoring Data

### To save the settings you changed for Performance Monitor

1. Click the Options tab. Performance Monitor displays the Options Window that contains two sub tabs: Output Monitoring Data and Save Monitoring Data as shown in [Figure 9-7 on page 9-29](#).



**Figure 9-7: Performance Monitor - Save Monitoring Data**

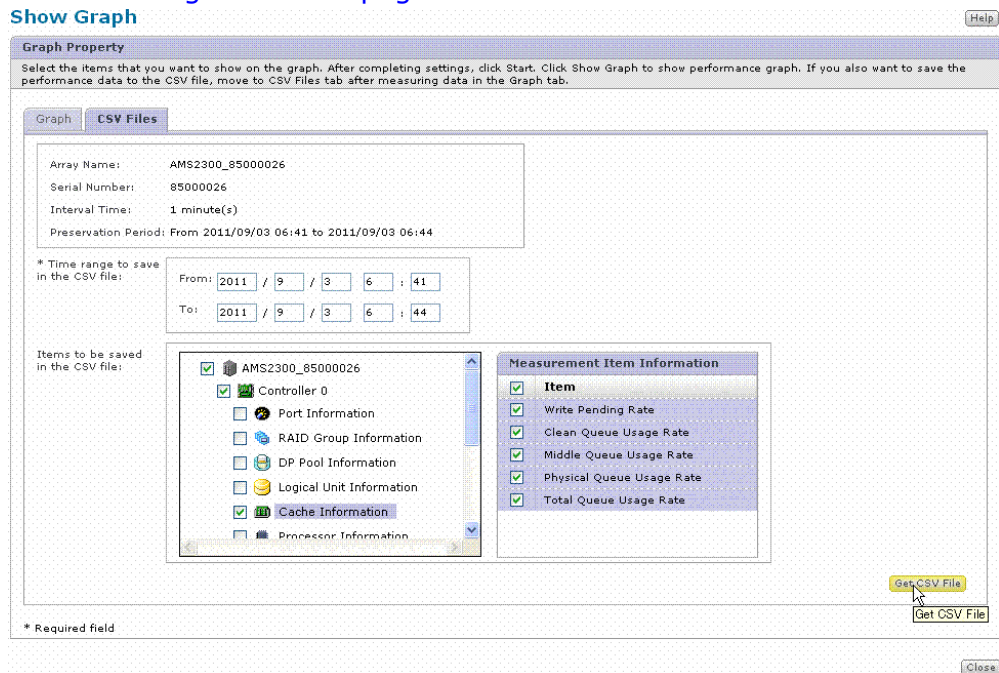
2. Click the Save Monitoring Data checkbox to place a check in the box.
3. Obtain your data and click **Stop**.
4. Click **Close** to exit the Options Window.

## Exporting Performance Monitor Information

### To copy the monitored data to a CSV file

1. In the Performance Monitor window, click the **Option** tab.
2. Select the **Save Monitoring Data** checkbox.
3. Obtain your data, and click **Stop**.
4. Click the **Output CSV** tab and select the items you want to output.

5. Click **Output**. Performance Monitor displays the Output CSV Window as shown in [Figure 9-8 on page 9-30](#).



**Figure 9-8: Output CSV Tab: Dynamic Provisioning Valid**

[Figure 9-13 on page 9-30](#) provides descriptions of objects displayed in the Output CSV Window.

**Table 9-13: Descriptions of Output CSV Tab Objects**

Displayed Items	Description
Array Name	A name of the storage system from which the data was collected.
Serial Number	A serial number of the storage system from which the data was collected.
Interval Time	The range of time between data collections.
Preservation Period	The period when the data collections is displayed.
Time range to save in the CSV file	Specify the period when the data to be output is produced, using the From and To fields.
Items to be saved in the CSV file	Check on the item(s) you want to output.

Once you have exported content to a CSV file, the files take default filenames each with a .CSV extension. The following tables detail filenames for each object type. Before reviewing the tables, consider the following:

- In the case of controller1, the CSV filename is changed to CTL1.
- The variable nn denotes a serial number from 01 to 99.
- Utilize the CSV files by making graphs of them by using Excel or a similar program.

- If the following behaviors occur during monitoring, invalid data may be displayed:
  - Array power off
  - Controller failure
  - Array could not acquire data by a network obstacle
  - Firmware updating

[Table 9-14 on page 9-31](#) lists filenames for the Port object.

**Table 9-14: CSV Filenames: Port Object**

List Items	CSV Filename
IO Rate	CTL0_Port_IORate.csv
Read Rate	CTL0_Port_ReadRate.csv
Write Rate	CTL0_Port_WriteRate.csv
Read Hit	CTL0_Port_ReadHit.csv
Write Hit	CTL0_Port_WriteHit.csv
Trans. Rate	CTL0_Port_TransRate.csv
Read Trans. Rate	CTL0_Port_ReadTransRate.csv
Write Trans. Rate	CTL0_Port_WriteTransRate.csv
CTL CMD IO Rate	CTL0_Port__CTL_CMD_IORate.csv
Data CMD IO Rate	CTL0_Port_Data_CMD_TransRate.csv
CTL CMD Trans. Rate	CTL0_Port_CTL_CMD_TransRate.csv
Data CMD Trans. Rate	CTL0_Port_data_CMD_Trans_Time.csv
CTL CMD Max Time	CTL0_Port_CTL_CMD_Max_Time.csv
Data CMD Max Time	CTL0_Port_Data_CMD_Max_Time.csv
XCOPY Rate	CTL0_Port_XcopyRate.csv
XCOPY Time	CTL0_Port_XcpyTime.csv
XCOPY Max Time	CTL0_Port_XcopyMaxTime.csv
XCOPY Read Rate	CTL0_Port_XcopyReadRate.csv
XCOPY Read Trans. Rate	CTL0_Port_XcopyReadTransRate.csv

[Table 9-15 on page 9-31](#) details CSV filenames for list items for RAID Groups and DP Pool objects.

**Table 9-15: CSV Filenames: RAID Groups and DP Pool Objects**

Object	List Items	CSV Filename
RAID Groups	IO Rate	CTL0_Rg_IORatenn.csv
	Read Rate	CTL0_Rg_ReadRatenn.csv
	Write Rate	CTL0_Rg_WriteRatenn.csv
	Read Hit	CTL0_Rg_ReadHitnn.csv
	Write Hit	CTL0_Rg_WriteHitnn.csv

Object	List Items	CSV Filename
	Trans. Rate	CTL0_Rg_TransRatenn.csv
	Read Trans. Rate	CTL0_Rg_ReadTransRatenn.csv
	Write Trans. Rate	CTL0_Rg_WriteTransRatenn.csv
DP Pools	IO Rate	CTL0_DPPool_IORatenn.csv
	Read Rate	CTL0_DPPool_ReadRatenn.csv
	Write Rate	CTL0_DPPool_WriteRatenn.csv
	Read Hit	CTL0_DPPool_ReadHitnn.csv
	Write Hit	CTL0_DPPool_WriteHitnn.csv
	Trans. Rate	CTL0_DPPool_TransRatenn.csv
	Read Trans. Rate	CTL0_DPPool_ReadTransRatenn.csv
	Write Trans. Rate	CTL0_DPPool_WriteTransRatenn.csv
	XCOPY Rate	CTL0_DPPool_XcopyRatenn.csv
	XCOPY Time	CTL0_DPPool_XcopyTimenn.csv
	XCOPY Max Time	CTL0_DPPool_XcopyMaxTimenn.csv
	XCOPY Read Rate	CTL0_DPPool_XcopyReadRatenn.csv
	XCOPY Read Trans. Rate	CTL0_DPPool_XcopyReadTransRatenn.csv
	XCOPY Write Rate	CTL0_DPPool_XcopyWriteRatenn.csv
	XCOPY Write Trans. Rate	CTL0_DPPool_XcopyWriteTransRatenn.csv

Table 9-16 on page 9-32 details CSV filenames for list items associated with Logical Units and Processor objects.

**Table 9-16: CSV Filenames: Logical Units and Processor Objects**

Object	List Items	CSV Filename
Logical Unit	IO Rate	CTL0_Lu_IORatenn.csv
	Read Rate	CTL0_Lu_ReadRatenn.csv
	Write Rate	CTL0_Lu_WriteRatenn.csv
	Read Hit	CTL0_Lu_ReadHitnn.csv
	Write Hit	CTL0_Lu_WriteHitnn.csv
	Trans. Rate	CTL0_Lu_TransRatenn.csv
	Read Trans. Rate	CTL0_Lu_ReadTransRatenn.csv
	Write Trans. Rate	CTL0_Lu_WriteTransRatenn.csv
	CTL CMD IO Rate	CTL0_Lu_CTL_CMD_IORatenn.csv
	Data CMD IO Rate	CTL0_Lu_CMD_TransRatenn.csv
	CTL CMD Trans. Rate	CTL0_Lu_CTL_CMD_TransRatenn.csv
	Data CMD Trans. Rate	CTL0_Lu_data_CMD_Trans_Timenn.csv
	XCOPY Rate	CTL0_Lu_XcopyRatenn.csv
	XCOPY Time	CTL0_Lu_XcopyTimenn.csv
	XCOPY Max Time	CTL0_Lu_XcopyMaxTimenn.csv
	XCOPY Read Rate	CTL0_Lu_XcopyReadRatenn.csv

Object	List Items	CSV Filename
	XCOPY Read Trans. Rate	CTL0_Lu_XcopyReadTransRate <i>nn</i> .csv
	XCOPY Write Rate	CTL0_LuXcopyWriteRate <i>nn</i> .csv
	XCOPY Write Trans. Rate	CTL0_Lu_XcopyWriteTransRate <i>nn</i> .csv
Processor	Usage	CTL0_Processor_Usage.csv

Table 9-17 on page 9-33 details CSV filenames for list items associated with Cache, Drive, and Drive Operation objects.

**Table 9-17: CSV Filenames: Cache, Drive, Drive Operation Objects**

Object	List Items	CSV Filename
Cache	Write Pending Rate (per partition)	CTL0_Cache_WritePendingRate.csv
		CTL0_CachePartition_WritePendingRate.csv
	Clean Usage Rate (per partition)	CTL0_Cache_CleanUsageRate.csv
		CTL0_CachePartition_CleanUsageRate.csv
	Middle Usage Rate (per partition)	CTL0_Cache_MiddleUsageRate.csv
		CTL0_CachePartition_MiddleUsageRate.csv
	Physical Usage Rate (per partition)	CTL0_Cache_PhysicalUsageRate.csv
		CTL0_CachePartition_PhysicalUsageRate.csv
	Total Usage Rate	CTL0_Cache_TotalUsageRate.csv
Drive	IO Rate	CTL0_Drive_IORate <i>nn</i> .csv
	Read Rate	CTL0_Drive_ReadRate <i>nn</i> .csv
	Write Rate	CTL0_Drive_WriteRate <i>nn</i> .csv
	Trans. Rate	CTL0_Drive_TransRate <i>nn</i> .csv
	Read Trans. Rate	CTL0_Drive_ReadTransRate <i>nn</i> .csv
	Write Trans. Rate	CTL0_Drive_WriteTransRate <i>nn</i> .csv
	Online Verify Rate	CTL0_Drive_OnlineVerifyRate <i>nn</i> .csv
Drive Operation	Operating Rate	CTL0_DriveOpe_OperatingRate <i>nn</i> .csv
	Max Tag Count	CTL0_DriveOpe_MaxtagCount <i>nn</i> .csv

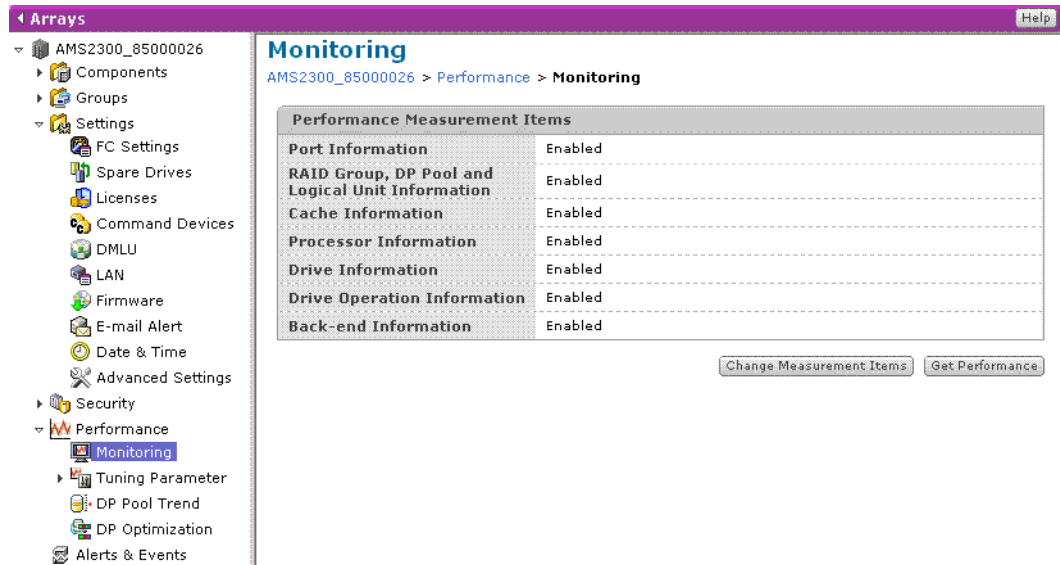
## Enabling Performance Measuring Items

The Performance Measuring tool enables you to enable specific types of performance monitoring.

### To access the Performance Measuring tool

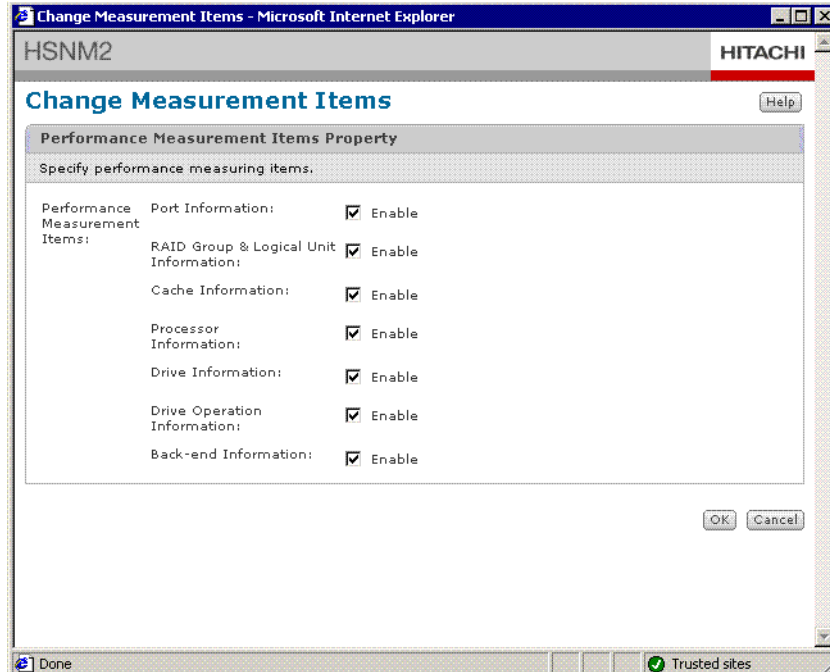
1. Start Navigator 2 and log in. The Arrays window opens

2. Click the appropriate array.
3. Expand the **Settings** list, and click **Advanced Settings**.
4. Click **Open Advanced Settings**. After some minutes, the Array Unit window opens.
5. Click **Performance**. The Performance Monitor window is displayed.
6. Click **Monitoring**. The Monitoring - Performance Measurement Items window displays as shown in [Figure 9-9 on page 9-34](#).



**Figure 9-9: Monitoring - Performance Measurement Items**

- Click on the Change Measurement Name Button. The Change Measurement Items dialog box displays with six performance statistics as shown in [Figure 9-10 on page 9-35](#).



**Figure 9-10: Change Measurement Items dialog box** describes each of the performance statistics.

**Table 9-18: Performance Statistics**

Item	Description
Port Information	Displays information about the port.
RAID Group, DP Pool and Logical Unit Information	Displays information about RAID groups, Dynamic provisioning pools and logical units.
Cache Information	Displays information about cache on the storage system.
Processor Information	Displays information about the storage system processor.
Drive Information	Displays information about the administrative state of the storage system disk drive.
Drive Operation Information	Displays information about the operation of the storage system disk drive.
Back-end Information	Displays information about the back-end of the storage system.

The default setting for each of the performance statistics is Enabled (acquire). If one of the item settings is Disabled, the automatic load balance function does not work. The load balance function failure occurs because the internal performance monitoring does not perform. To ensure that load balancing works, set all performance statistics to Enabled.

8. To disable one of the performance statistics, click in the checkbox to the right of the statistic to remove the checkmark.

### Working with Port Information

The storage system acquires port I/O and data transfer rates for all Read and Write commands received from a host. It can also acquire the number of commands that made cache hits and cache-hit rates for all Read and Write commands.

### Working with RAID Group, DP Pool and Logical Unit Information

The storage system acquires all array RAID group/DP pool information of logical units. It also acquires the I/O and data transfer rates for all Read and Write commands received from a host. In addition, it also acquires the number of commands that made cache hits and cache-hit rates for all Read and Write commands.

### Working with Cache Information

The storage system displays the ratio of data in a write queue to the entire cache and utilization rates of the clean, middle, and physical queues.

The clean queue consists of a number of segments of data that have been read from the drives and exist in cache.

The middle queue consists of a number of segments that retain write data, have been sent from a host, exist in cache, and have no parity data generated.

The physical queue consists of a number of segments that retain data, exist in cache, and have parity data generated, but not written to the drives.

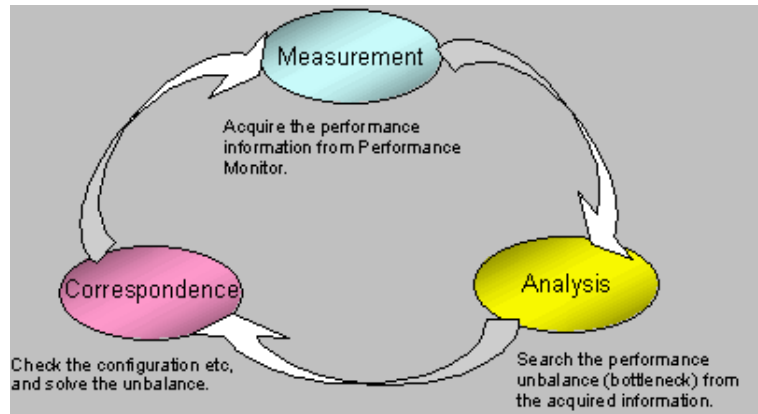
For the Cache Hit parameter of the Write command, a *hit* is a response to the host that has completed a Write to the Cache (Write-After). A miss is a response to the host that has completed a Write to the Drive (Write-Through). When the cache use volume is large or the battery unit fails, Write-Through is more likely.

### Working with Processor Information

The storage system can acquire and display the utilization rate for each processor.

## Troubleshooting Performance

If there are performance issues, refer to [Figure 4-42](#) for information on how to analyze the problem.



**Figure 9-11: Performance Optimization Analysis**

## Performance Imbalance and Solutions

Performance imbalance can occur between controllers, ports, RAID groups, and back-ends.

### Controller Imbalance

The controller load information can be obtained from the processor operation rate and its cache use rate.

The logical unit load can be obtained from the I/O and transfer rate of each logical unit.

When the loads between controllers differ considerably, the array disperses the loads (load balancing). However, when this does not work, change the logical unit by using the tuning parameters.

### Port Imbalance

The port load in the array can be obtained from the I/O and transfer rate of each port.

If the loads between ports differ considerably, transfer the logical unit that belongs to the port with the largest load, to a port with a smaller load.

### RAID Group Imbalance

The RAID group load in the array can be obtained from the I/O and transfer rate of the RAID group information.

If the load between RAID group varies considerably, transfer the logical unit that belongs to the RAID group with the largest load, to a Raid group with a smaller load.

## Back-End Imbalance

The back-end load in the array can be obtained from the I/O and transfer rate of the back-end information.

If the load between back-ends varies considerably, transfer the RAID group and logical unit with the largest load, to a back-end with a smaller load. For the back-end loop transfer, you can change the owner controller of each logical unit; however controller imbalance can occur.

## Dirty Data Flush

You may require that your storage system has the best possible I/O performance at all times. When ShadowImage or SnapShot environments are introduced, the system's internal resource allocation to support the current task load may not meet your performance objectives. The switch intends to support the best possible performance requirements while supporting ShadowImage and SnapShot.

HDS provides a system tool that reprioritizes the internal I/O in the system processor in favor of a production I/O. This feature is the Dirty Data Flush.

Dirty Data Flush is a mode that improves the read response performance when the I/O load is light. If the write I/O load is heavy, a timeout may occur because not enough dirty jobs exist to process the conversion of dirty data as the number of jobs is limited to one. So the mode should be changed when the I/O load is light.

The mode is effective when the following conditions are met:

- The new mode is enabled while one of the following features is enabled:
  - Modular Volume Migration
  - SnapShot
  - ShadowImage
- Only logical units from RAID0, RAID1, and RAID1+0 exist in the system.
- Only logical units from SAS drives exist in the system.
- Remote replications such as TrueCopy and TrueCopy Extended Distance are disabled.

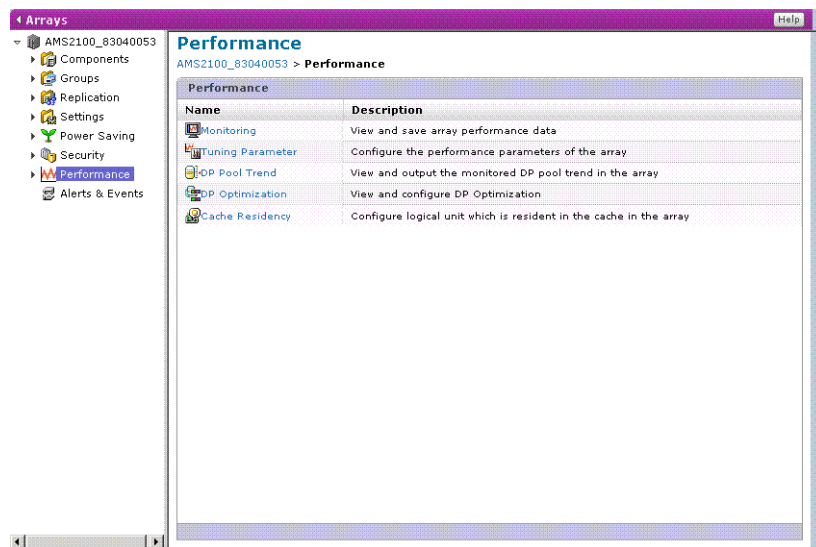
To set the mode, perform the following steps:

1. Go to the Array Home screen as shown in [Figure 9-12](#).



**Figure 9-12: Array Home screen**

- In the Navigation Tree, click **Performance**. SNM2 displays the Performance window as shown in [Figure 9-13](#).



**Figure 9-13: Performance window**

- Click **Tuning Parameters**. SNM2 displays the Tuning Parameters window as shown in [Figure 9-14](#).

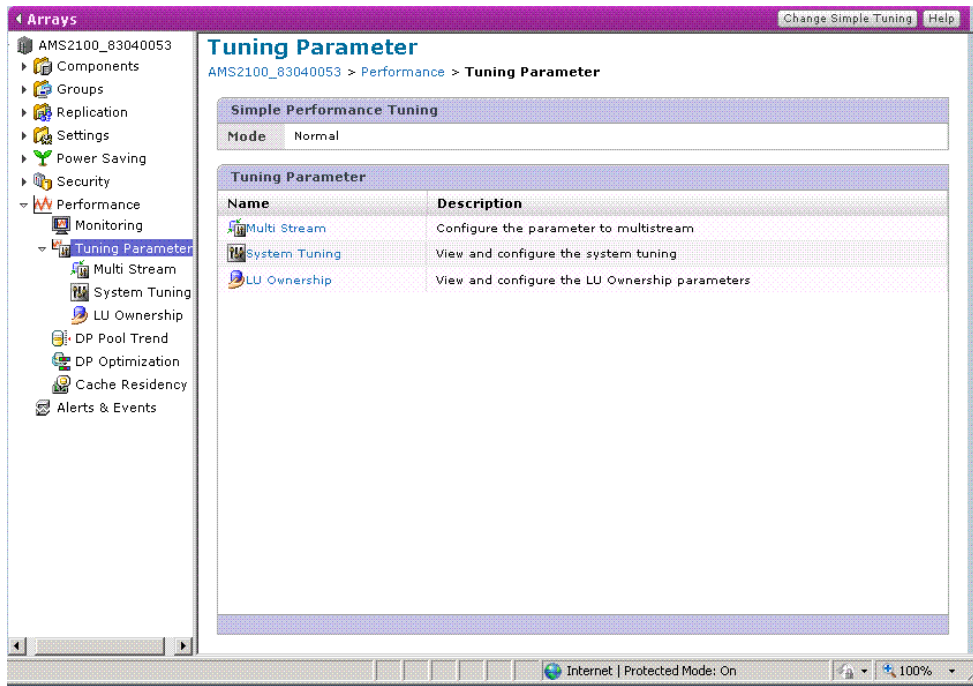


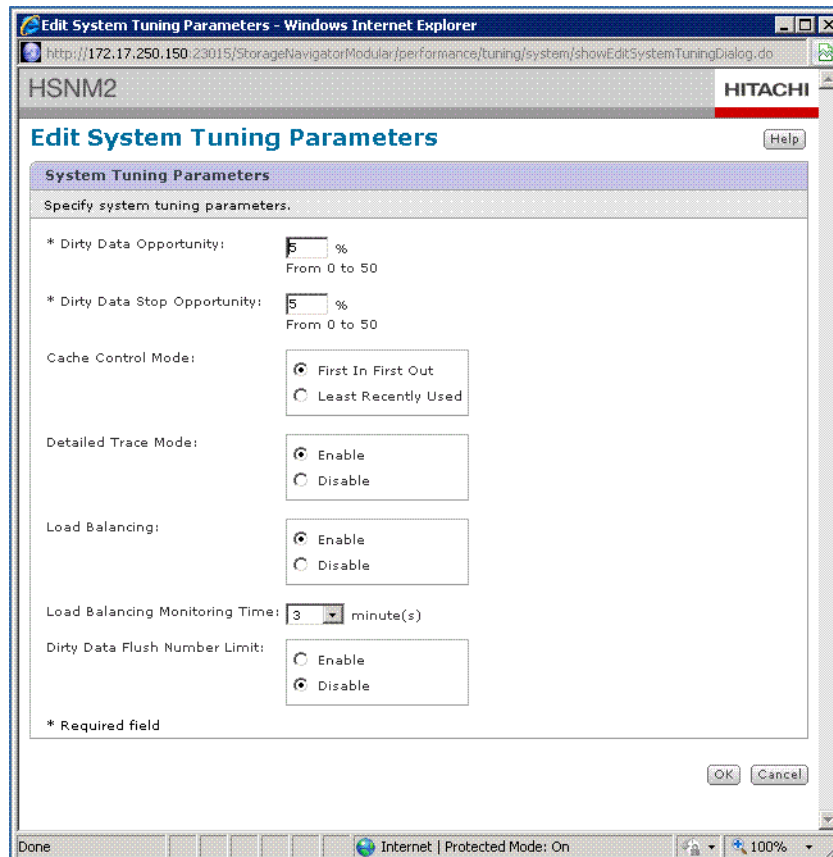
Figure 9-14: Tuning Parameters window

- Click **System Tuning**. SNM2 displays the System Tuning window as shown in Figure 9-15. Note that the Dirty Data Flush Number Limit field in the System Tuning list has a setting of Disabled, the default value.



Figure 9-15: System Tuning window

- In the System Tuning list, click on the **Edit System Tuning Parameters** button to display the Edit System Tuning Parameters dialog box as shown in Figure 9-16.



**Figure 9-16: Edit System Tuning Parameters dialog box**

6. In the Dirty Data Flush Number Limit radio button box, click **Enable** to change the setting from Disabled to Enabled. Note that the setting is a toggle between the Disabled and Enabled radio buttons.
7. Click **OK**. SNM2 displays the System Tuning window with the Enabled setting in the Dirty Data Flush Number Limit field.



# SNMP Agent Support

This chapter describes Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Agent support.

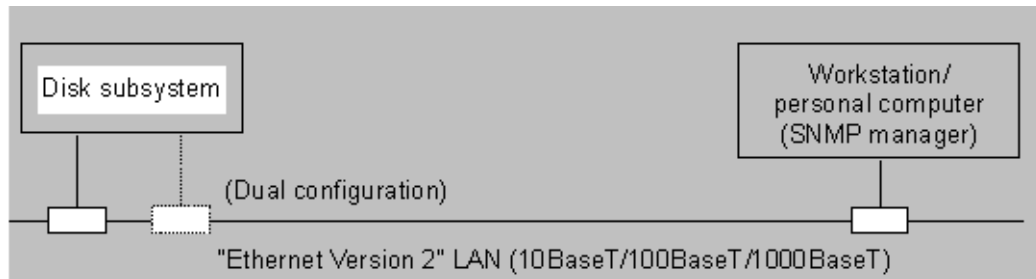
This chapter covers the following topics:

- ❑ [SNMP Agent Support overview](#)
- ❑ [SNMP functions](#)
- ❑ [SNMP Agent Support operations](#)
- ❑ [Managing SNMP Agent Support](#)

## SNMP Agent Support overview

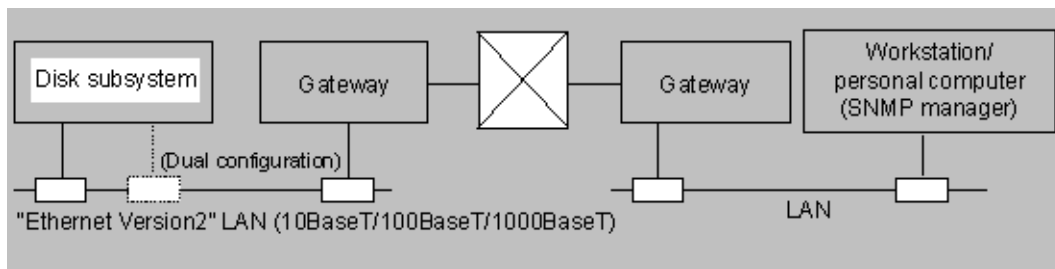
A workstation with SNMP agent support is required on a LAN.

Figure 10-1 shows a private LAN connection.



**Figure 10-1: Private LAN Connection**

Figure 10-2 shows a public LAN connection. One Gateway address (default Gateway address) can be set for each controller.

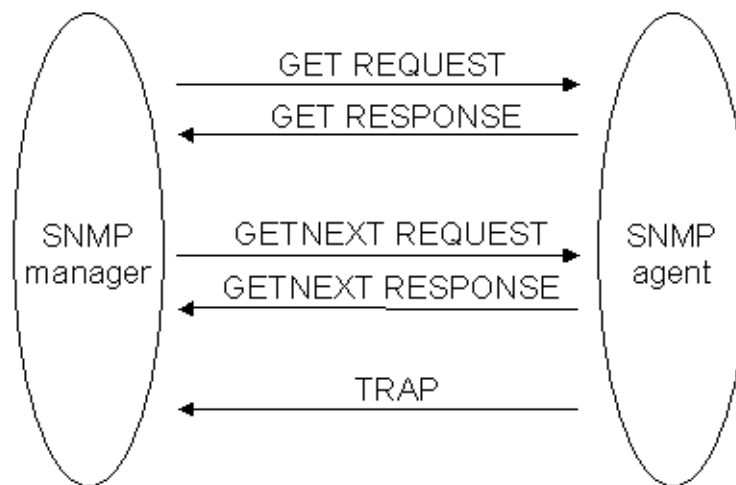


**Figure 10-2: Public LAN Connection**

**Table 10-1: Operations**

Item	Description
GET	Obtains a MIB object value. Normal operation is assumed when GET REQUEST (request from the SNMP manager) and GET RESPONSE (response from the agent) are completed.
GETNEXT	Continuously searches MIB objects. Normal operation is assumed when GETNEXT REQUEST (request from the SNMP manager) and GET RESPONSE (response from the agent) are completed.
TRAP	Reports an event (error or status change) to the SNMP manager. When an event occurs, the agent sends a TRAP to the manager.

Figure 10-3 on page 10-3 shows communications between the SNMP manager and the SNMP agent for a supported SNMP operation.



**Figure 10-3: SNMP Communication**

## Error status

When an error is detected, the array sends an SNMP message (GET RESPONSE) to the manager, with the error status, as shown in [Table 10-2 on page 10-3](#).

If any of these errors are detected in the SNMP manager's request, the array does not respond.

- The community name does not match the setting. The array does not respond; however, it sends a standard TRAP (Authentication Failure, incorrect community name) to the manager.
- The SNMP request message exceeds 484 bytes. The array cannot send or receive SNMP messages longer than 484 bytes.

**Table 10-2: Error Status**

Error Status	Description
noError (0)	No error detected. The requested MIB object value is placed in the SNMP message to be sent.
tooBig (1)	The SNMP message is too large (more than 484 bytes) to contain the operation result.
noSuchName (2)	The requested MIB object could not be found. The GETNEXT REQUEST was received. The requested MIB object value is not set in the SNMP message. The requested process (SET REQUEST) is not executed.
badValue (3)	Does not occur.
readOnly (4)	Does not occur.
genErr (5)	The operation cannot be executed.

## Dual controller GET/TRAP specifications

The GET/TRAP specifications for dual system configuration are shown in [Table 10-3](#).

**Table 10-3: GET/TRAP Specifications—AMS 2000 Family**

Connection status	Controller status	GET/TRAP specification				Remarks
		Controller 0		Controller 1		
Both controller	① Both controllers are normal	GET	○	GET	○	Master controller: 0
		TRAP	○	TRAP	Δ	
	② Controller 1 is blockaded	GET	○	GET	×	Master controller: 0 If controller 1 is recovered, the system goes to ①.
		TRAP	○	TRAP	×	
	③ Controller 0 is blockaded	GET	×	GET	○	Master controller: 1
		TRAP	×	TRAP	○	
	④ Controller 0 is recovered (the board was replaced while the power is on)	GET	○	GET	○	Master controller: 1 The system goes to ① when restarted (P/S ON).
		TRAP	Δ	TRAP	○	
Controller 0 only	⑤ Both controllers are normal	GET	○	GET	×	Master controller: 0
		TRAP	○	TRAP	×	
	⑥ Controller 1 is blockaded	GET	○	GET	×	
		TRAP	○	TRAP	×	
	⑦ Controller 0 is blockaded	GET	×	GET	×	Master controller: 1
		TRAP	×	TRAP	×	
	⑧ Controller 0 is recovered (the board was replaced while the power is on)	GET	○	GET	×	Master controller: 1 The system goes to ⑥ when restarted (P/S ON).
		TRAP	Δ	TRAP	×	

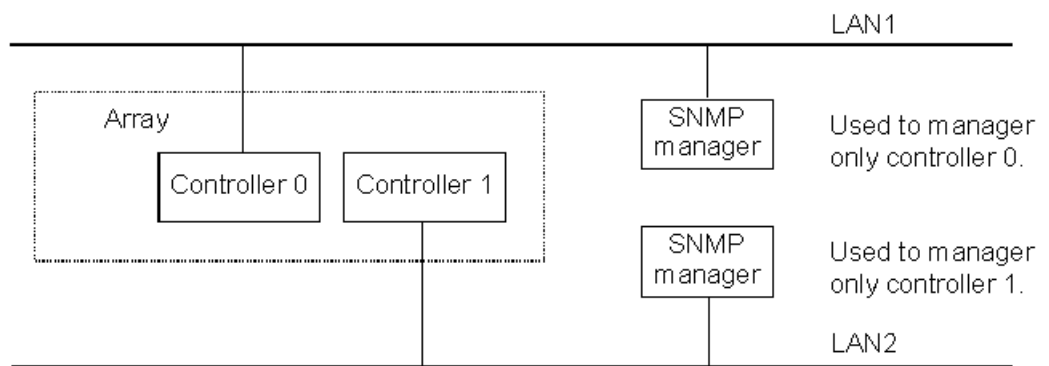
○: GET and TRAP are possible. (The drive blockade and the occurrence detected by the other controller is excluded.)

×: GET and TRAP are impossible.

Δ: A trap is reported only for an own controller blockade, and a drive blockade (drive extraction is not included) detected by the own controller.

**Note:** A trap is reported for an error that has been detected when a controller board is replaced while the power is on or the power is turned on. Therefore, traps other than the above are also reported.

For a dual system configuration, SNMP managers should be divided as shown in [Figure 10-4 on page 10-5](#).



**Figure 10-4: Divided SNMP Managers**

Only the master controller reports TRAPs for fan, power supply, and battery failures. Even though you can specify more than one SNMP manager, each SNMP manager should be set so that it controls both controllers.

- A device that executes broadcast, etc. should not be connected to the LAN where the array is connected, or host command processing deteriorates.
- If the IP address of the SNMP manager is changed when the DHCP function is used, the TRAP cannot be reported.
- If you change the array IP Address of the disk subsystem is changed, restart the array.
- Contact service personnel if a failure occurs.

## SNMP functions

The following sections provide information on the functions that report disk array failures to the SNMP manager.

## TRAP reporting

The following events are detected through TRAPs.

### Standard TRAPs

- Power supply power on
- SNMP access error (incorrect community name)
- Startup of the SNMP Agent Support Function (occurs when installing or enabling SNMP Agent Support Function)
- Changing the settings of the SNMP Agent Support Function
- Incorrect community string name given when acquiring MIB information

## Extended TRAPs

The following list identifies extended TRAPs.

- Unrecoverable data (multiple failures of drives) (see Note 2)
- Blocked path, which is reported only if the TrueCopy remote replication feature is enabled.
- Additional battery failure
- Battery failure
- Cache backup circuit failure
- Cache memory failure
- Cycle time threshold over
- Data pool no free
- Data pool threshold over
- Drive blocking (data drive)
- Enclosure controller failure
- Failure (Modular Volume Migration)
- Failure (ShadowImage)
- Failure (SnapShot)
- Failure (TCE)
- Failure (TrueCopy)
- Failure (Modular Volume Migration)
- Fan failure
- Firmware replacement executed
- Host connector failure
- Interface board failure
- Own controller failure (see Note 1 and Note 2)
- Path blockade (see Note 4)
- Port error threshold over
- Power supply failure
- Slave controller failure (see Note 2)
- Spare drive failure
- UPS failure
- Warning disk array (see Note 3)
- When invalid DP pool management information is detected



**NOTE:** When a controller blockade occurs, the array issues TRAPs that show the blockade. The controller can automatically recover, depending on the failure.

---



**NOTE:** The TRAP that shows the array warning status can appear through preventive maintenance, periodic part replacement, or service personnel fieldwork.



**NOTE:** 3. Path blockade is reported only when the TrueCopy or TCE feature is enabled.



**NOTE:** A TRAP is issued if multiple hard disk failures occur in drives and the data in the RAID group and logical units are not recoverable. For example, a TRAP is issued if failures occur in three hard disk units under RAID 6.

Table 10-4 details specific trap codes for extended traps.

**Table 10-4: Supported Extended Traps**

No.	Specific Trap Code	Meaning
1	1	Array down occurred. (Note 1)
2	2	Drive blocking occurred.
3	3	Fan failure occurred.
4	4	Power supply failure occurred.
5	5	Battery failure occurred.
6	6	Cache memory failure occurred.
7	7	UPS failure occurred.
8	9	Cache backup circuit failure occurred.
9	10	Other controller failure occurred.
10	11	Warning occurred.
11	12	Spare drive failure occurred.
12	14	Enclosure controller failure occurred.
13	16	Path failure occurred.
14	20	Host connector failure occurred.
15	250	Interface board failure.
16	251	Additional battery failure.
17	300	Failure occurred (ShadowImage).
18	301	Failure occurred (SnapShot).
19	302	Failure occurred (TrueCopy).
20	303	Failure occurred (TrueCopy Extended Distance).
21	304	Failure occurred (Modular Volume Migration).
22	305	Data pool threshold over occurred.
23	306	Data pool no free.
24	307	Cycle time threshold over occurred.

No.	Specific Trap Code	Meaning
25	308	LU failure occurred.
26	309	Replace the Air Filter of DC power supply assy.
27	310	DP Pool Consumed Capacity Early Alert.
28	311	DP Pool Consumed Capacity Depletion Alert.
29	312	DP Pool Consumed Capacity Over
30	313	Over Provisioning Warning Threshold
31	314	Over Provisioning Limit Threshold
32	325	Reboot the array with ps off/on
33	326	DP Management Information is invalid
34	332	Host IO restraint state was executed

When a controller blockade occurs, the array issues traps that display the blockade. The blockade may recover automatically depending on the cause of the failure.



**NOTE:** The warning status of the array can be automatically set in the warning information by preventive maintenance, periodic part replacement or a fieldwork of the service.

## Request processing

Request processing enables the SNMP manager to refer to MIB objects (the function to set MIB objects is not provided).

The information that appears is as follows:

- Device information (product name and firmware revision)
- Warnings (see below)
- Command execution condition information

The warning information that can be acquired by the array is shown below.

- Additional battery failure
- Array warning (see Note 2)
- Battery failure
- Cache backup circuit failure
- Cache memory failure
- Data pool is over threshold
- Data pool is unavailable
- Drive blockade (data or spare drive)
- Enclosure controller failure
- Fan failure
- Host connector failure

- Interface board failure
- Power supply failure
- PSUE (Modular Volume Migration)
- PSUE (ShadowImage)
- PSUE (SnapShot)
- Slave controller failure (see Note 1)
- UPS failure



**NOTE:** 1. When the other controller is blocked, the blockade is set in the warning information. However, the controller blockade may recover automatically depending on the cause of the failure.

---



**NOTE:** 2. The array warning status can appear through preventive maintenance, periodic part replacement, or service personnel fieldwork.

---

## Additional SNMP environment requirements

- Firmware version 0832/B or newer is required for the AMS 2100 or AMS 2300 array if the hardware revision is 0100. Version 0840/A or newer is required for the AMS 2500 array if the hardware revision is 0100. Version 0890/A or newer is required for AMS 2000 family if the hardware revision is 0200.
- if using IPv6 operating under an IPv6 environment for AMS 2000 Family storage systems, Version 0862/A or more is required for the AMS 2000 family array if the hardware revision is 0100.
- Hitachi Storage Navigator Modular 2 requires version 3.21 or newer is required for the management PC for AMS 2100 or the AMS 2300 array if the hardware revision is 0100. Version 4.00 or more is required for the management PC for the AMS 2500 array if the hardware revision is 0100. Version 9.00 or more is required for the management PC for the AMS 2000 family if the hardware revision is 0200.
- Hitachi Storage Navigator Modular 2 when using the IPv6 environment: Version 6.20 or more is required for the management PC.
- When using the accumulated operating time (sysUpTime) of the SNMP agent, a firmware version of 08C4/D or more is required.

- The hardware revision can be displayed when an individual array is selected from the Arrays list using the Navigator version 9.00 as shown in [Figure 10-5](#):

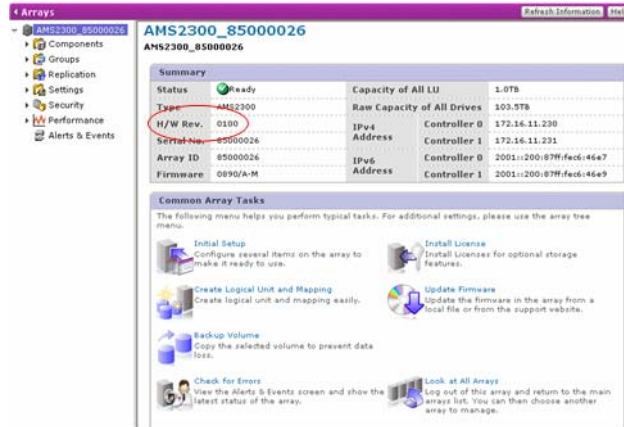


Figure 10-5: AMS 2300 Arrays Screen with 0100 Hardware Revision

## SNMP Agent Support operations

The procedure for SNMP Agent Support appears below.

1. Verify that you have the environments and requirements for SNMP Agent Support (see [Preinstallation information on page 2-2](#)).
2. Set the `config.txt` and `name.txt` files (see [Creating environmental information files on page 10-11](#)).
3. Set the MIB information (see [Settings on page 10-18](#)).
4. Confirm the TRAP and REQUEST connection (see [Verifying SNMP connections on page 10-20](#)).

## Managing SNMP Agent Support

This section describes how to manage SNMP Agent functions, including:

- SNMP setup
- Creating SNMP Environmental file information
- Registering SNMP Environment information
- Referencing SNMP Environment information
- Verifying the SNMP connection
- Detecting failures

### SNMP setup

The setup procedure includes setting up the array, the SNMP manager, and verifying the connection. This enables communication between the array and SNMP manager.

## Disk array-side setup

### To configure the array side of the disk

1. Specify the LAN information (IP Address, Sub Net Mask, and Default Gateway Address). For more information, see the SNMP Online Help.
2. Make sure the SNMP Agent Support license is installed and enabled. For more information, see [Requirements for installing and enabling features on page 1-17](#).
3. Create the SNMP environment information file. The SNMP environment file consists of the following.
  - The operating environment setting file (`Config.txt`). This sets the IP address and community of the SNMP manager to send TRAPs, and so forth. (The Community name described in the `config.txt` file in the provided CD.)
  - The array name setting file (`Name.txt`). (Sets the array names.)For more information, see [Creating environmental information files on page 10-11](#).
4. Register the SNMP environment information file in the array. For more information, see [Registering SNMP environmental information on page 10-18](#).

## SNMP Manager-side setup

### To configure the SNMP Manager side of the disk

1. Transfer the MIB definition file into the SNMP manager.
2. Register the array in the SNMP manager. Refer to the manuals of the SNMP manager for operating procedures.

## Checking the connection

Verify the connection between the array and SNMP manager (see [Verifying SNMP connections on page 10-20](#)).

## Creating environmental information files

To use the SNMP agent, the SNMP environment information file is created and registered in the array. The following files are created as the SNMP environment information file:

- Operation environment setting file (`Config.txt`).
- Array name setting file (`Name.txt`).

The SNMP environment information file is created and registered at the SNMP initial setting and when an operating environment is changed.

Only one set (two files) per array is created in dual controller configurations. Therefore, you cannot set different information for each controller.

## Environment setting file

This section describes how to create environment setting files.

### Format file

This file is in text form on a CD. The file name is `Config.txt`.

### Settings

There are four basic settings that can be made to the environment setting file:



**NOTE:** TRAP sending is the only setting that is required.

---

1. `sysContact` (MIB information).  
Manager information for the contact (name, department, extension No., etc.). This is an internal object value of the MIB-II system group in ASCII form, up to 255 characters.
2. `sysLocation` (MIB information).  
Where where the device is installed. This is an internal object value of the MIB-II system group in ASCII form, up to 255 characters.
3. Community information setting (MIB information).  
Name of the community permitted access. Multiple community names can be set.
4. Transmitting agency  
Trap agency port setting. Default port is 161. Only once set can be set (Omissable item)
5. `sysUpTime`  
If using this function, add the SET SYSUPTIME line. If this is not set, the `sysUpTime` object is fixed to 0.
6. LAN port link-up determination setting when issuing a trap.  
If using this function, add the LAN PORT CHECK line. If this is not set, traps are issued from the controller that detected the failure.
7. TRAP sending (TRAP report).  
Required settings used to send a TRAP:
  - Destination manager IP address
  - Destination port number
  - Community name for the TRAP. Multiple information combinations can be set.

## Creating files

Use the following procedure to set each numbered item from the previous section (**`sysContact`**, **`sysLocation`**, and so forth):

#### ❑ Setting sysContact (manager's name/items for contact)

- Add a line beginning with "INITIAL" to the file to set the sysContact value:

```
INITIAL sysContact <user set information>
```

- User set information cannot exceed 255 alphanumeric characters.
- For any characters (space, tab, "-", "", etc.) other than the letters a to z (uppercase and lowercase) and the numerals are used by the user to set information, the characters must be enclosed with double quotation marks ("").
- Do not include line-feed symbols.
- If you are not setting the sysContact value, you can leave the value with closed quote as follows:

```
INITIAL <sysContact "">
```

Or...you can delete this line from your configuration file.

#### ❑ Setting sysLocation (array installation location):

- Add a line beginning with "INITIAL" to the file to set the sysLocation value:

```
INITIAL <sysLocation user set information>
```

- User set information cannot exceed 255 alphanumeric characters.
- For any characters (space, tab, "-", "", etc.) other than the letters a to z (uppercase and lowercase) and the numerals are used by the user to set information, the characters must be enclosed with double quotation marks ("").
- Do not include line-feed symbols.
- If you are not setting the sysLocation value, you can leave the value with closed quote as follows:

```
INITIAL <sysLocation "">
```

Or...you can delete this line from your configuration file.

#### ❑ Setting community information:

- Add a line that begins with **COMMUNITY** in the file to specify the community string that allows the array to receive requests as shown:

```
COMMUNITY <community string>  
ALLOW ALL OPERATIONS
```

**NOTE:** The array will accept all community string (names) if you do not define this parameter.

- The community string must be described in alphanumeric characters only.
- If any characters (space, tab, "-", "", etc.) other than the letters a to z (uppercase and lowercase) and the numerals are used in the community name, the characters must be enclosed with double quotation marks (""). The community name cannot contain line-feed codes.

- To accept all community string (names), delete the above 2 lines including the line that begins with **COMMUNITY**.

❑ **Setting Addresses for Receiving TRAPs:**

**NOTE:** Multiple addresses may be configured and up to 3 SNMP manager may be configured.

- Add a line that begins with **MANAGER** in the file to specify the SNMP manager that receives TRAP requests from the array as shown:

```
MANAGER <SNMP manager IP address>
SEND ALL TRAPS TO PORT <port number>
WITH COMMUNITY <community string name>
```

- Enter the IP address to select the object SNMP manager. Do not specify a host name.
- Enter IP addresses with the leading 0's in each dotted quad suppressed (for example, specify 111.22.3.55 for 111.022.003.055).
- Enter the UDP destination port number to be set when sending a TRAP to the SNMP manager. The port number 162 is the usual port number used by the SNMP manager to receive TRAPs.
- For the Community string name, a community name, which is set in an SNMP message when sending a TRAP, is specified with alpha numerics. If any characters (space, tab, "-", "", etc.) other than the letters a to z (uppercase and lowercase) and the numerals are used in the community name, enclose them with double quotation marks ("").
- Do not include line-feed symbols. If the community name does not contain a close (the line that begins **WITH COMMUNITY**), add **public** to the Community string name.

❑ **Port setting of the transmitting agency:**

- The disk array issues traps from port number 161. However, you want to issue traps from the dynamic port (optional port number 49152 to 65535). Add the following line to the environment setting file:

```
SEND ALL TRAPS FROM DYNAMIC PORT
```



**NOTES:**

This file cannot exceed 1,140 bytes. Also, the total length of "sysContact", "sysLocation", and "sysName" (to be explained later) should not exceed 280 characters (when the community that has access rights does not exceed 10 characters) so that all the objects in the MIB-II system group can be obtained with the one GET request. This prevents a "tooBig" error message. Refer to the following example.

**Setting Address to Send a Trap:**

```
MANAGER SNMP manager IP address
SEND ALL TRAPS TO PORT Port No.
WITH COMMUNITY Community name
```

## Operation Environment Setting File for Dynamic Port:

```
INITIAL sysContact "Taro Hitachi"

INITIAL sysLocation "Computer Room A on Hitachi STR HSP 10F north"

COMMUNITY tagmastore
ALLOW ALL OPERATIONS
SEND ALL TRAPS FROM DYNAMIC PORT

MANAGER 123.45.67.89
SEND ALL TRAPS TO PORT 162
WITH COMMUNITY "HITACHI DF800"

MANAGER 123.45.676.90
SEND ALL TRAPS TO PORT 162
WITH COMMUNITY "HITACHI DF800"
```

### ❑ [Setting sysUpTime](#)

The accumulated time (sysUpTime) since the SNMP agent started is set to 0 by default. However, when setting the accumulated time for sysUpTime, add the following line to the environment setting file:

```
SET SYSUPTIME
```

The SNMP agent starts at the time of starting the array, rebooting the controller, and enabling the SNMP function. If you disable the SNMP function and then enable it, the time starts to be measured when the function is enabled.

```
INITIAL sysContact "Taro Hitachi"

INITIAL sysLocation "Computer Room A on Hitachi STR HSP 10F north"

COMMUNITY tagmastore
ALLOW ALL OPERATIONS

SET SYSUPTIME

MANAGER 123.45.67.89
SEND ALL TRAPS TO PORT 162
WITH COMMUNITY "HITACHI DF800"

MANAGER 2001::1::20a:87ff:fec6:1928
SEND ALL TRAPS TO PORT 162
WITH COMMUNITY "HITACHI DF800"
```

Link up determination of LAN port at the time of traps issuance:

Usually a controller port that detects a failure issues a trap. However, at the time of the trap being issued, it is possible that the controller port that determines the LAN port links issued the trap. When using the link-up determination feature of the LAN port, add the following line.

LAN PORT CHECK

Operation Environment Setting File for LAN Port Check

```
INITIAL sysContact "Taro Hitachi"

INITIAL sysLocation "Computer Room A on Hitachi STR HSP 10F north"

COMMUNITY tagmastore
ALLOW ALL OPERATIONS

SEND ALL TRAPS FROM DYNAMIC PORT
MANAGER 123.45.67.89
SEND ALL TRAPS TO PORT 162
WITH COMMUNITY "HITACHI DF800"

MANAGER 123.45.67.90
SEND ALL TRAPS TO PORT 162
WITH COMMUNITY "HITACHI DF800"
```

### Operation Environment Setting File example for IPv6:

```
INITIAL sysContact "Taro Admin"

INITIAL sysLocation "Computer Room on Hitachi STR HSP 10F north"

COMMUNITY tagmastore
ALLOW ALL OPERATIONS

MANAGER 123.45.67.89

SEND ALL TRAPS TO PORT 162
WITH COMMUNITY "HITACHI DF800"

MANAGER 2001::1::20a:87ff:fec6:1928

SEND ALL TRAPS TO PORT 162
WITH COMMUNITY "HITACHI"
```

### Operation Environment Setting File example for IPv4

```
INITIAL sysContact "Taro Hitachi"

INITIAL sysLocation "Computer Room A on STR HSP 10F north"

COMMUNITY tagmastore
ALLOW ALL OPERATIONS

MANAGER 123.45.67.89

SEND ALL TRAPS TO PORT 162
WITH COMMUNITY "HITACHI DF800"

MANAGER: 123.45.67.90

SEND ALL TRAPS TO PORT 162
WITH COMMUNITY "HITACHI DF800"
```

## Array name setting file

This section contains the following:

- File format
- Settings
- Creating files

### File format

1. This file should be in text format on a DOS-formatted disk. The file name is `Name.txt`.

### Settings

Set the following for the disk array name:

- **sysName**

This is the name of the array that is being managed.



**NOTE:** The internal object value of MIB-II system group in ASCII character string cannot exceed 255 characters.

---

### Creating files

To set the value of `sysName`, register the information continuously. Since the entire contents of this file are regarded as the `sysName` value, the file should not exceed 255 characters.

- Do not include line-feed symbols.
- Use only alphanumeric characters. For example:

```
Hitachi Disk Array
```



**NOTE:** The total length of "sysContact", "sysLocation", and "sysName" (to be explained later) should not exceed 280 characters (when the community that has access rights does not exceed 10 characters) so that all the objects in the MIB-II system group can be obtained with the one `GET` request. This prevents a "tooBig" error message. Refer to the following example.

---

## Registering SNMP environmental information

### To register the SNMP environment information file

1. Start Navigator 2 and log in. The Arrays window appears.
2. Click the appropriate array.
3. Select **SNMP Agent** in the Settings tree view. The SNMP Agent window appears.
4. Click **Edit SNMP Settings**. The Edit SNMP Settings window is displayed (Figure 10-6).

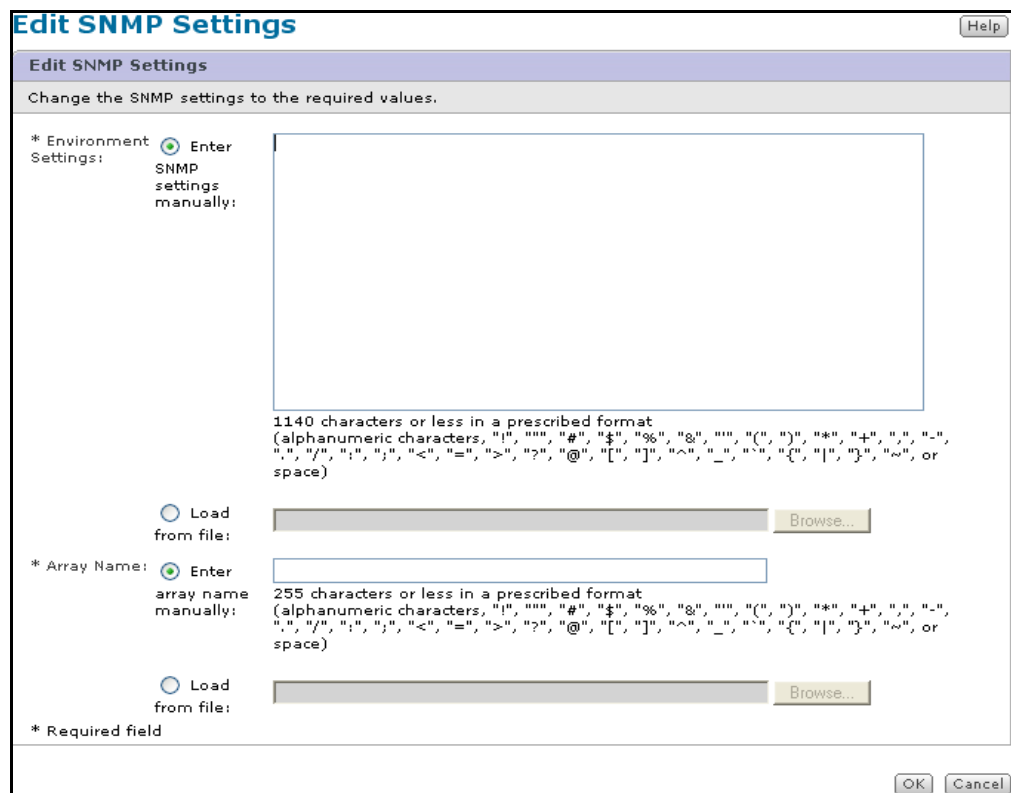


Figure 10-6: Edit SNMP Settings Files

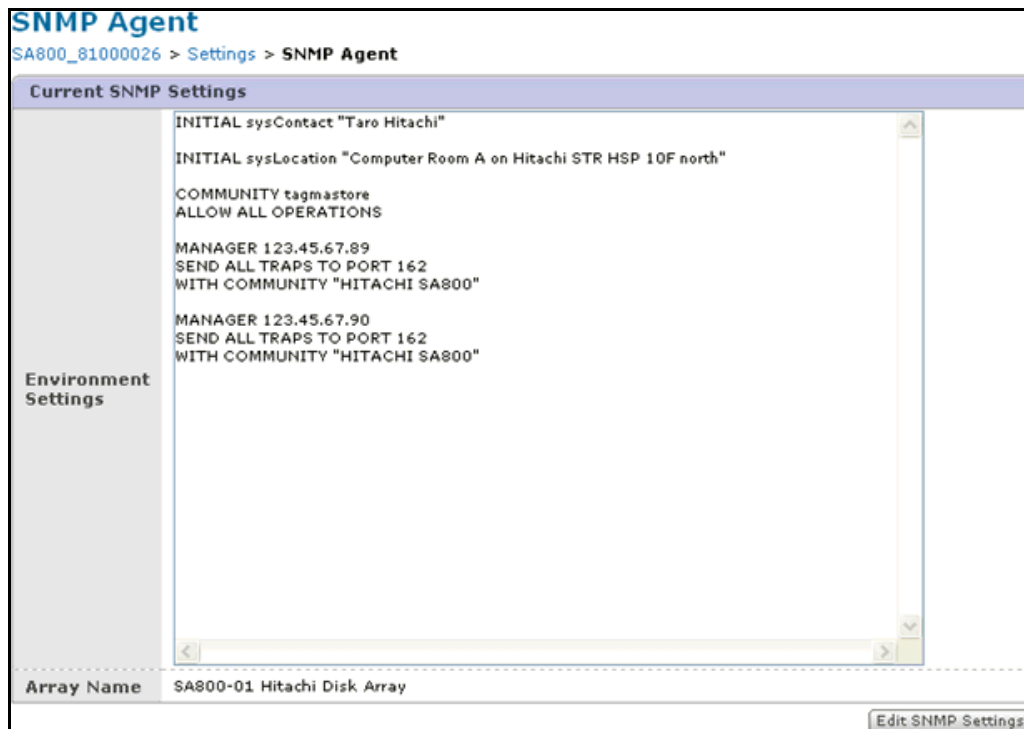
5. Select either **Enter SNMP settings manually** or load the setting values by clicking the **Load from file** option and browsing to the file location.
  - When you select the **Enter SNMP settings manually**, enter it directly in the screen according to [Environment setting file on page 10-12](#).
  - When you select **Load from file:**, specify a path to the SNMP environmental information file (`config.txt`) for the Load from. You can also specify the path in which the SNMP environmental information file is stored using the Browse button.
  - Select **Enter Array Name manually** or **Load from file:** to set the array name. When you select Enter array name manually, enter it directly in the screen according to [Array name setting file on page 10-18](#).
  - When you select **Load from file:**, specify a path to the array name setting file (`name.txt`) for the Load from. You can also specify the path in which the array name setting file is stored using the Browse button.
  - If only one file is set, specify only a file to set.
6. Click **OK**. A confirmation message is appears.
7. Click **Close**.

## Referencing the SNMP environment information file

You can view the current SNMP environment information for the SNMP agent.

### To register the SNMP environment information file

1. Start Navigator 2 and log in. The Arrays window appears
2. Click the appropriate array.
3. Select **SNMP Agent** in the Settings tree view. The SNMP Agent window is displayed. See [Figure 10-7 on page 10-20](#).



**Figure 10-7: SNMP Agent Window — Current SNMP Settings**

4. You may copy the information and store it in a file for saving on the local host.

## Verifying SNMP connections

This section describes how to verify SNMP connections between the array and the SNMP manager.

### Checking TRAP connections

Set the SNMP agent to invalid, and then to valid. Check that a standard TRAP, "warmStart," has been received by the SNMP managers that are set as TRAP receivers in the SNMP environment information file (`Config.txt`).

If you cannot perform the above operation, set the SNMP environment information file again. check that a standard trap, "warmStart," has been received at all SNMP managers which have been set as a trap receiver in the SNMP environment informatoin file (Config.txt).

### **Checking REQUEST connections**

Send a **MIB GET** request to the array from all the SNMP managers to be connected to the array. Verify that the array responds.

## Detecting failures

This section describes how to detect array failures.

### Obtaining information

Obtain MIB information (`dfRegressionStatus`) periodically. This MIB value is set to **0** when there are no failures.

### Reporting errors

If an error results in a TRAP, the array reports the error to the SNMP manager. This TRAP allows you to detect array failures when they occur. However the UDP protocol can incorrectly report the TRAP to the SNMP manager. If a controller goes down, the `systemDown` TRAP may not be issued.

### Detecting errors

Errors are detected with the MIB information. Even if the TRAP is not reported, you can detect errors if the MIB value (`dfRegressionStatus`) is not **0**.

For example, if a drive is blocked the `dfRegressionStatus` = 69.

When continuous requests are not responding, it is likely because of a controller blockade.

## General Notes About the SNMP Agent Support Function

When using SNMP Agent Support Function, note the following:

- Since the UDP protocol is used for SNMP Agent Support Function, correct reporting of error traps to the SNMP manager cannot be assured. Therefore, **it is recommended that the SNMP manager acquire MIB information periodically.**
- The command processing performance of the disk array is negatively affected if the interval to collect MIB information is set too short.
- If the SNMP manager is started after failures occur in a disk array, the failures that occur before starting the SNMP manager are not reported with a trap. In that case, acquire the MIB objects "dfRegressionStatus" after starting the SNMP manager, and check whether failures occur.
- SNMP Agent Support Function also stops if the controller is blockaded. In this case SNMP managers receive no response.
- When a disk array is configured from a dual system, if failures in hardware components (such as a fan, a battery, a power supply, or a cache failure) occur during power-on until before the disk array is "Ready" (including failures that occurred at the last power off), they are reported with a trap from both controllers. Failures in disk drives and those that occur while a disk array is "Ready" are reported with a trap from only the controller side that detects the failures.

- When a disk array is configured from a dual system, both controllers must be monitored by the SNMP manager. When only one of the controllers is monitored using the SNMP manager, monitor it in the following method. However, since it monitors only one controller, the restriction that TRAP on the unmonitored controller side is not reported to the SNMP manager occurs.
- Be sure to monitor the controller 0 side.
- dfRegressionStatus of the MIB object is system failure information. Acquire dfRegressionStatus periodically from the SNMP manager side, and check whether a failure is present or not.
- After controller 0 is blockaded, the SNMP Agent Support Function cannot be used.
- If the acquisition of dfRegressionStatus of the MIB object fails, it is considered that the controller blockade has occurred. Check the disk array status by using Navigator 2.
- If the disk array receives broadcasts or port scans on the TCP port 199, response delays or time-outs may occur when the SNMP manager requests MIB information. In that case, please check the network configuration to make sure that the TCP port 199 of the disk array is not accessed by other applications.
- The accumulated operating time (sysUpTime) of the SNMP agent is counted from the time when the SNMP agent started or restarted. An approximate difference may occur one day per year. Furthermore, the sysUpTime object is reset in the following cases:
  - Starting/restarting the SNMP agent.  
Starting the array, replacing the firmware, and rebooting.
  - At the time of setting the SNMP agent to Enabled (Including changing Disabled to Enabled).
  - When exceeding the upper limit (approximately 497 days) of the sysUpTime period.



# Modular Volume Migration

This chapter describes Modular Volume Migration.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- ❑ [Modular Volume Migration overview](#)
- ❑ [Modular Volume Migration operations](#)
- ❑ [Managing Modular Volume Migration](#)

## Modular Volume Migration overview

Figure 11-2 lists the Modular Volume Migration specifications.

**Table 11-1: Volume Migration Specifications**

Item	Description
Number of pairs	<p>Migration can be performed for the following pairs per array, per system:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1,023 (AMS2100)</li> <li>• 2,047 (AMS2300 and AMS 2500)</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> The maximum number of the pairs is limited when using ShadowImage. For more information, see <a href="#">Using with ShadowImage on page 11-12</a>.</p>
Number of pairs whose data can be copied in the background	<p>Up to two pairs per controller. However, the number of pairs whose data can be copied in the background is limited when using ShadowImage. For more information, see <a href="#">Using with ShadowImage on page 11-12</a>.</p>
Number of reserved logical units	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 1,023 (AMS2100)</li> <li>• 2,047 (AMS2300 and AMS2500)</li> </ul>
RAID level support	<p>RAID 0 (2D to 16D), RAID 1 (1D+1D), RAID 5 (2D+1P to 15D+1P), RAID 1+0 (2D+2D to 8D+8D), RAID 6 (2D+2P to 28D+2P).</p> <p>We recommend using a P-VOL and S-VOL with redundant RAID level.</p> <p>RAID 0 cannot be set for the SATA disk drive.</p>
RAID level combinations	<p>All combinations are supported.</p>
Types of P-VOL/S-VOL drives	<p>Logical units consisting of SAS and SATA drives can be assigned to any P-VOLs and S-VOLs.</p> <p>You can specify a logical unit consisting of SAS drives, and a logical unit consisting of SATA drives, for the P-VOL and the S-VOL.</p>
Host interface	<p>Fibre Channel or iSCSI</p>
Canceling and resuming migration	<p>Migration cannot be stopped or resumed. When the migration is canceled and executed again, Volume Migration copies of the data again.</p>
Handling of reserved logical units	<p>You cannot delete logical units or RAID groups while they are being migrated.</p>
Handling of logical units	<p>You cannot format, delete, expand, or reduce logical units while they are being migrated. You also cannot delete or expand the RAID group.</p> <p>You can delete the pair after the migration, or stop the migration.</p>
Formatting restrictions	<p>You cannot specify a logical unit as a P-VOL or an S-VOL while it is being formatted. Execute the migration after the formatting is completed.</p>
Logical unit restrictions	<p>Data pool LU, DMLU, and command devices (CCI) cannot be specified as a P-VOL or an S-VOL.</p>
Concurrent use of unified logical units	<p>The unified logical units migrate after the unification.</p> <p><a href="#">Using unified logical units on page 11-9</a>.</p>

**Table 11-1: Volume Migration Specifications (Continued)**

Item	Description
Concurrent use of Data Retention	When the access attribute is not Read/Write, the logical unit cannot be specified as an S-VOL. The logical unit which executed the migration carries over the access attribute and the retention term. For more information, see <a href="#">Using with the Data Retention Utility on page 11-11</a> .
Concurrent use of SNMP Agent	Available
Concurrent use of LUN Manager	Available
Concurrent use of Cache Residency Manager	The Cache Residency logical unit cannot be set to P-VOL or S-VOL.
Concurrent use of Cache Partition Manager	Available. Note that a logical unit that belongs to a partition and stripe size cannot carry over, and cannot be specified as a P-VOL or an S-VOL.
Concurrent use of Power Saving	When a P-VOL or an S-VOL is included in a RAID group for which the Power Saving has been specified, you cannot use Volume Migration.
Concurrent use of ShadowImage	A P-VOL and an S-VOL of ShadowImage cannot be specified as a P-VOL or an S-VOL of Volume Migration unless their pair status is Simplex.
Concurrent use of SnapShot	A SnapShot P-VOL cannot be specified as a P-VOL or an S-VOL when the SnapShot logical unit (V-VOL) is defined.
Concurrent use of TrueCopy	A P-VOL and an S-VOL of TrueCopy cannot be specified as a P-VOL or an S-VOL of Volume Migration unless their pair status is Simplex.
Concurrent use of TCE	A P-VOL and an S-VOL of TrueCopy cannot be specified as a P-VOL or an S-VOL of Volume Migration unless their pair status is Simplex.
Concurrent Use of Dynamic Provisioning	Available. The DP-VOLs created by Dynamic Provisioning and the normal LU can bet as a P-VOL, an S-VOL, or a reserved LU.
Failures	The migration fails if the copying from the P-VOL to the S-VOL stops. The migration also fails when a logical unit blockade occurs. However, the migration continues if a drive blockade occurs.
Memory reduction	To reduce the memory being used, you must disable Volume Migration and SnapShot, ShadowImage, TrueCopy, or TCE function.

**Table 11-2: Reserved Logical Unit Guard Conditions**

Item	Guard Condition
Concurrent use of ShadowImage	P-VOL or S-VOL.
Concurrent use of SnapShot	P-VOL or S-VOL.
Concurrent use of TrueCopy	P-VOL or S-VOL of TrueCopy
Concurrent use of TCE	P-VOL or S-VOL of TCE
Concurrent use of Data Retention	Data Retention logical unit.
Concurrent use of Dynamic Provisioning	The DP-VOLs created by Dynamic Provisioning
Logical unit restrictions for special uses	Data pool LU, DMLU, command device (CCI).
Other	Unformatted logical unit. However, a logical unit being formatted can be set as reserved even though the formatting is not completed.

## Environments and Requirements

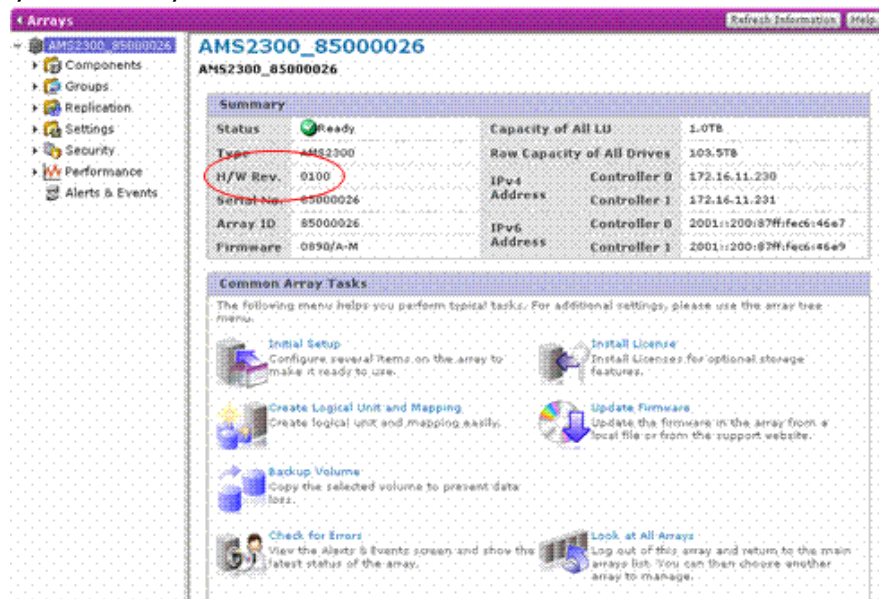
Table 11-3 shows environments and requirements.

**Table 11-3: Environments and Requirements**

Item	Description
Environments	<p>Firmware Version 0832/B or later is required for AMS2100 or AMS2300 array of the hardware revision 0100. Version 0840/A or later is required for AMS2500 array of the hardware revision 0100. Version 0890/A or later is required for AMS2100/AMS2300/AMS2500 of the H/W Rev. 0200.</p> <p>Navigator 2I Version 3.21 or later is required for the management PC for AMS2100 or AMS2300 array of the hardware revisoin 0100. Version 4.00 or more is required for the management PC for AMS2500 array of the hardware revision 0100. Version 9.00 or more is required for management PC for AMS200/AMS2300/AMS2500 of the hardware revision 0200.</p> <p>CCI Version 01-21-0306 or more is required for host only when CCI is used for the operation.</p> <p>License key for Volume Migration.</p>

Item	Description
Requirements	<p>Number of controllers: 2 (dual configuration)</p> <p>Command devices: Max 128 (The command device is required only when CCI is used for the operation of Volume Migration. The command device LU size must be greater than or equal to 33 MB.)</p> <p>DMLU: Max 2 (The DMLU size must be greater than or equal to 10 GB. It is recommended that two DMLUs are set according to be created in different RAID groups.)</p> <p>Size of volume: The P-VOL size must equal the S-VOL volume size. The maximum volume size is 128 TB.</p>

The hardware revision can be displayed when you select an individual array from the Arrays list using version 9.0 or later of Navigator 2. [Figure 11-1](#) displays the Arrays List window with the hardware revision noted.



**Figure 11-1: Arrays List window with hardware revision noted**

## Setting up Volume Migration

This section explains guidelines to observe when setting up Volume Migration.

### Setting Logical Units to be recognized by the host

During the migration, the data is copied to the destination logical volume (S-VOL), and the source logical volume (P-VOL) is not erased ([Figure 11-2 on page 11-7](#)). After the migration, the logical volume destination becomes a P-VOL, and the source logical volume becomes an S-VOL. If the migration

stops before completion, the data that has been copied from source logical volume (P-VOL) remains in the destination logical volume (S-VOL). If you use a host configuration, format the S-VOL with Navigator 2 before making it recognizable by the host.

---



**NOTE:** When the migration is completed or stopped, the latest data is stored in a logical volume (P-VOL).

---



**NOTE:** When formatting, format the S-VOL. If the P-VOL is formatted by mistake, some data may be lost.

---

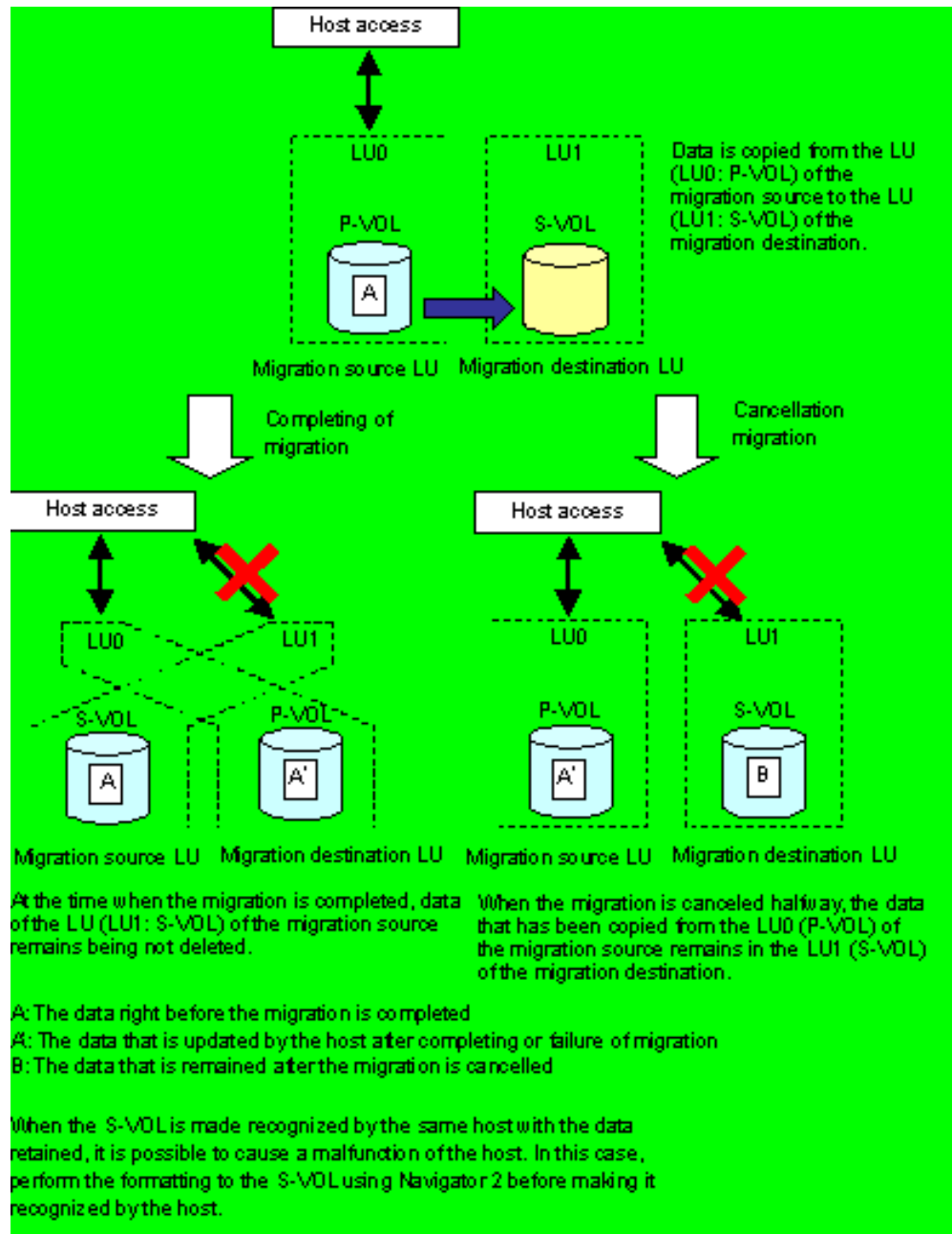


Figure 11-2: Volume Migration Host Access

## VxVM

Do not allow the P-VOL and S-VOL to be recognized by the host at the same time.

## MSCS

Do not allow the P-VOL and S-VOL to be recognized by the host at the same time.

- Do not place the MSCS Quorum Disk in CCI.
- Shutdown MSCS before executing the CCI sync command.

## AIX

- Do not allow the P-VOL and S-VOL to be recognized by the host at the same time.

## Windows 2000/Window Server

- When specifying a command device in the configuration definition file, specify it as Volume GUID. For more information, see the Command Control Interface (CCI) Reference Guide).
- When the source logical unit is used with a drive character assigned, the drive character is taken to the migration logical unit. However, when both logical units are recognized at the same time, the drive character can be assigned to the S-VOL through a host restart.

## Linux and LVM

- Do not allow the P-VOL and S-VOL to be recognized by the host at the same time.

## Windows 2000/Windows Server and Dynamic Disk

- Do not allow the P-VOL and S-VOL to be recognized by the host at the same time.

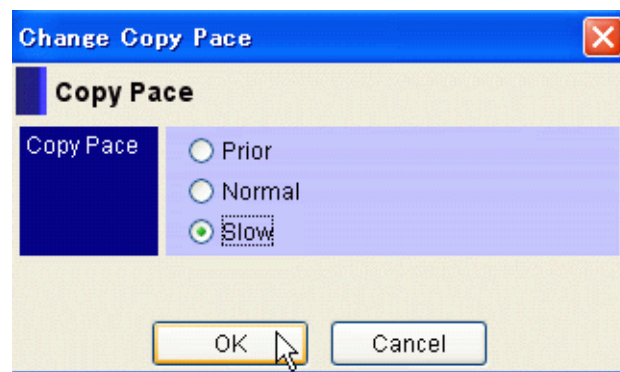
## Performance

- Migration affects the performance of the host I/O to P-VOL and other logical units. The recommended Copy Pace is Normal, but if the host I/O load is heavy, select Slow. Select Prior to shorten the migration time; however, this can affect performance. The Copy Pace can be changed during the migration.
- The RAID structure of the P-VOL and S-VOL affects the host I/O performance. The write I/O performance concerning an LU, which migrates from a disk area, consists of the SAS drives, the SAS7.2K drives or the SAS (SED) drives to a disk area is lower than that concerning an LU that consists of the SATA drives.
- Do not concurrently migrate logical volumes that are in the same RAID group.

- Do not run Volume Migration from/to LUs that are in Synchronizing status with ShadowImage initial copy, or in resynchronization in the same RAID group. Additionally, do not execute ShadowImage initial copy or resynchronization in the case where LUs involved in the ShadowImage initial copy or resynchronization are from the same RAID group.
- It is recommended that Volume Migration is run during periods of low system I/O loads.

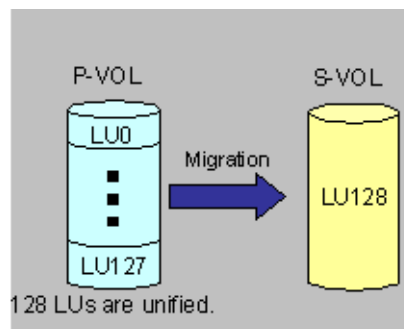
## Using unified logical units

A unified logical volume (Figure 11-3) can be used as a P-VOL or S-VOL as long as their capacities are the same (they can be composed of different number of logical units).



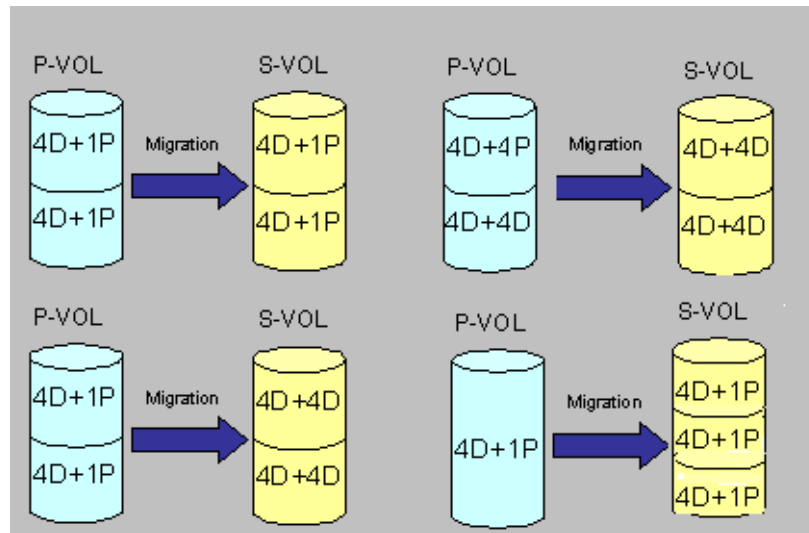
**Figure 11-3: Unified Logical Units Assigned to P-VOL or S-Vol (Capacity)**

The number of logical units that can be unified as components of a P-VOL or S-VOL is 128 (Figure 11-4).

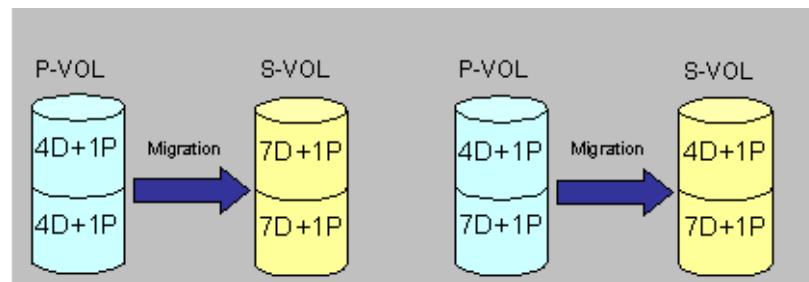


**Figure 11-4: Unified Logical Units Assigned to P-VOL or S-Vol (Unification)**

The logical units, including the unified logical units assigned to the P-VOL and S-VOL, cannot be on the same RAID level, or have the same number of disks (Figure 11-5 on page 11-10 and Figure 11-6 on page 11-10).

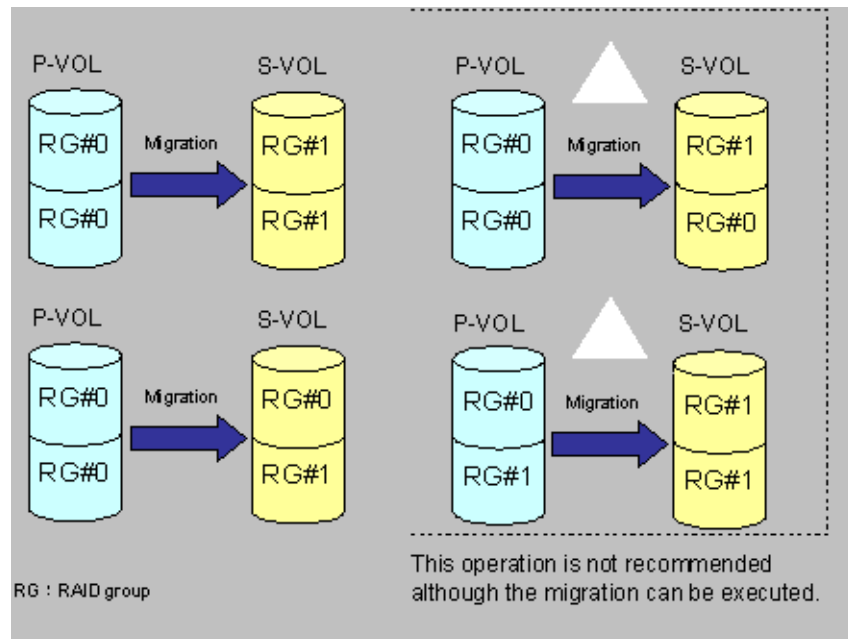


**Figure 11-5: RAID Level Combination**



**Figure 11-6: Disk Number Combination**

Do not migrate when the P-VOL and the S-VOL logical units belong to the same RAID group.

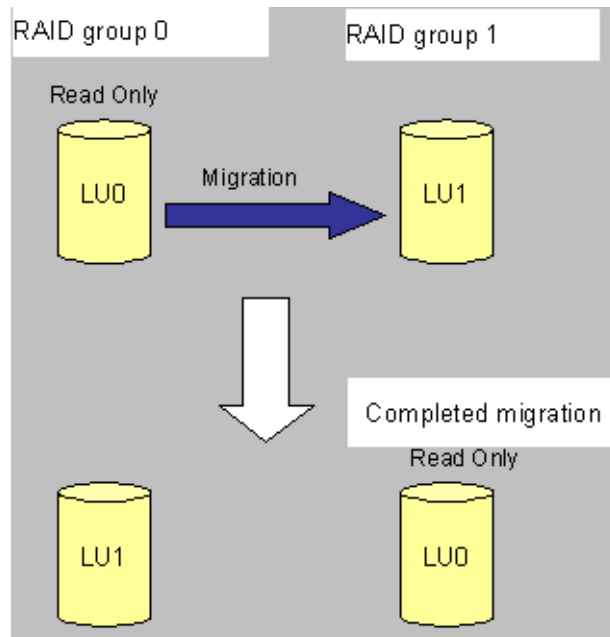


**Figure 11-7: Logical Unit RAID Group Combinations**

### Using with the Data Retention Utility

The logical unit that executed the migration carries the access attribute and the retention term set by Data Retention, to the destination logical unit. If the access attribute is not Read/Write, the logical unit cannot be specified as an S-VOL.

The status of the migration for a Read Only logical unit appears in [Figure 11-8 on page 11-12](#). When the migration of the Read Only LU0 to the LU1 is executed, the Read Only attribute is carried to the destination logical unit. Therefore, LU0 is Read Only. When the migration pair is released and LU1 is deleted from the reserved logical unit, a host can Read/Write to the LU1



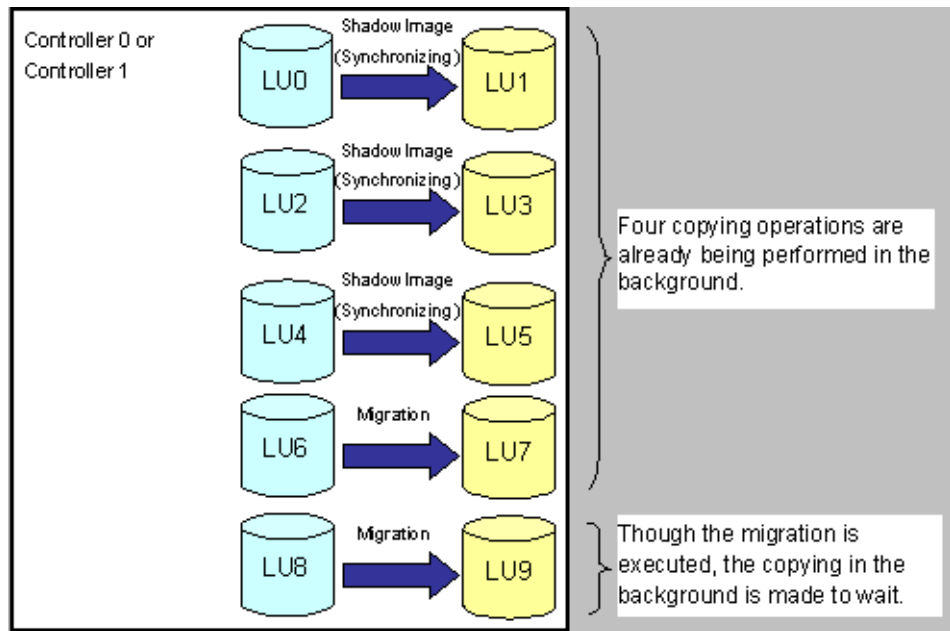
**Figure 11-8: Read Only**

### Using with ShadowImage

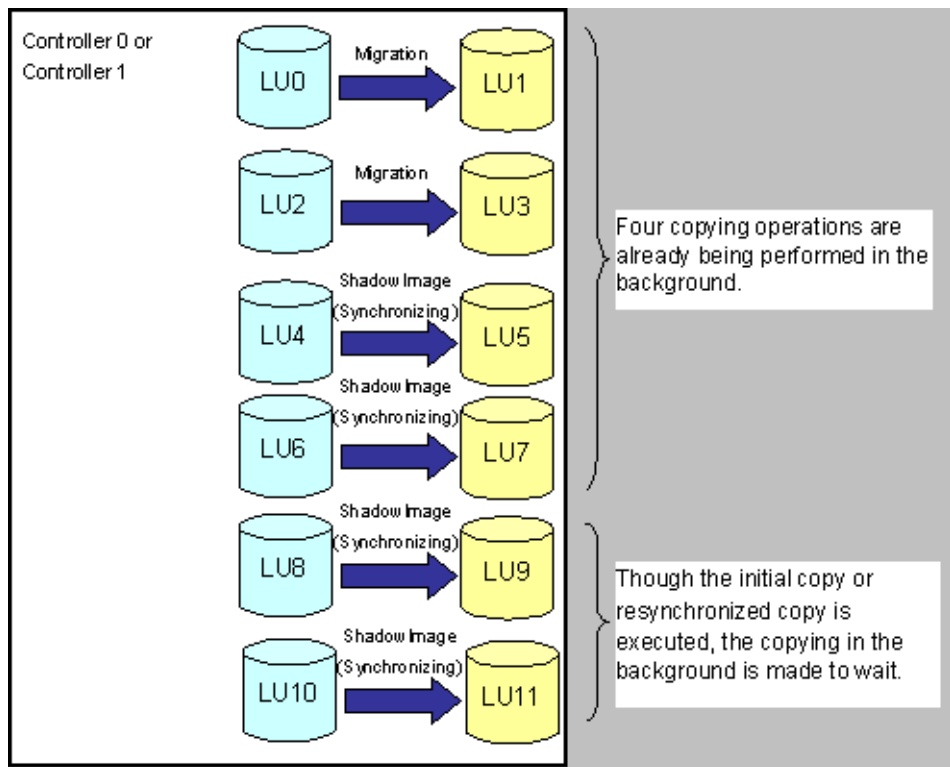
The array limits the ShadowImage and Volume Migration pairs to 1,023 (AMS2100) and 2,047 (AMS2300). The numbers of migration pairs that can be executed are calculated by subtracting the number of ShadowImage pairs from the maximum number of pairs.

The number of copying operations that can be performed in the background is called the copying multiplicity. The array limits the copying multiplicity of the Volume Migration and ShadowImage pairs to 4 per controller. When Volume Migration is used with ShadowImage, the copying multiplicity of Volume Migration is 2 two per controller because Volume Migration and ShadowImage share the copying multiplicity.

Note that at times, copying does not start immediately ([Figure 11-9 on page 11-13](#) and [Figure 11-10 on page 11-13](#)).



**Figure 11-9: Copy Operation where Volume Migration Pauses**



**Figure 11-10: Copy Operation where ShadowImage Operation Pauses**

## Using with Cache Partition Manager

It is possible to use Volume Migration with Cache Partition Manager. Note that an LU that belongs to a partition cannot carry over. When a migration process completes, an LU belonging to a partition is changed to destination partition.

## Concurrent Use of Dynamic Provisioning

Consider the following points when using Volume Migration and Dynamic Provisioning together. For the purposes of this discussion, the LU created in the RAID group is called a normal LU and the LU created in the DP pool that is created by Dynamic Provisioning is called a DP-VOL.

- When using a DP-VOL as a DMLU  
Check tht the free capacity (formatted) of the DP pool to which the DP-VOL belongs is 10 GB or more, and then set the DP-VOL as a DMLU. If the free capacity of the DP pool is less than 10- GB, the DP-VOL cannot be set as a DMLU.
- LU type that can be set for a P-VOL or an S-VOL of Volume Migration  
The DP-VOL created by Dynamic Provisioning can be used for a P-VOL or an S-VOL of Volume Migration. The following table shows a combination of a DP-VOL and a normal LU that can be used for a P-VOL or an S-VOL of Volume Migration.

**Table 11-4: Combination of a DP-VOL and a Normal VOL**

Volume Migration P-VOL	Volume Migration S-VOL	Contents
DP-VOL	DP-VOL	Available.
DP-VOL	Normal LU	Available.
Normal LU	DP-VOL	Available. In this combination, executing initial copying, the DP pool of the same capacity as the normal LU (P-VOL) is used.



**NOTE:** When both the P-VOL and the S-VOL use DP-VOLs, a pair cannot be created by combining the DP-VOLs which have different setting of Enabled/Disabled for Full Capacity Mode.

- Usable Combination of DP Pool and RAID Group  
The following table shows a usable combination of DP Pool and RAID group.

**Table 11-5: Contents of Volume Migration P-VOL and S-VOL**

Volume Migration P-VOL and S-VOL	Contents
Same DP pool	Not available
Different DP pool	Available
DP pool and RAID group	Available
RAID group and DP pool	Available

- Pair status at the time of DP pool capacity depletion  
 When the DP pool is depleted after operating Volume Migration which uses the DP-VOL created by Dynamic Provisioning, the pair status of the pair concerned may be an error.  
 The following table shows the pair statuses before and after the DP pool capacity depletion. When the pair status becomes an error caused by the DP pool capacity depletion, add the DP pool capacity whose capacity is depleted, and execute Volume Migration again.

**Table 11-6: Pair Statuses Before and After DP Pool Capacity Depletion**

Pair Statuses before the DP Pool Capacity Depletion	Pair Statuses after the DP Pool Capacity Depletion belonging to P-VOL	Pair Statuses after the DP Pool Capacity Depletion belonging to S-VOL
Copy	Copy Error	Error
Completed	Completed	Completed
Error	Error	Error



**NOTE:** When write is performed to the P-VOL to which the capacity depletion DP pool belongs, the copy cannot be continued and the pair status becomes an error.

- DP pool status and availability of Volume Migration operation  
 When using the DP-VOL created by Dynamic Provisioning for a P-VOL or an S-VOL of Volume Migration, Volume Migration operation may not be executed depending on the status of the DP pool to which the DP-VOL belongs. The following table shows the DP pool status and availability of Volume Migration operation. When Volume Migration operation fails due to the DP pool status, correct the DP pool status and execute Volume Migration operation again.

**Table 11-7: DP Pool Statuses and Availability of Volume Migration Operation**

Operation	Normal	Capacity in Growth	Capacity Depletion	Regressed	Blocked	DP in Optimization
Executing	○	X	○	○	X	○
Splitting	○	○	○	○	○	○
Canceling	○	○	○	○	○	○

**Executing-Normal:** Refer to the status of the DP pool to which the DP-VOL of the S-VOL belongs. If the status exceeds the DP pool capacity belonging to the S-VOL by Volume Migration operation, Volume Migration operation cannot be executed.

**Executing-Capacity Depletion:** Refer to the status of the DP pool to which the DP-VOL of the P-VOL belongs. If the status exceeds the DP pool capacity belonging to the P-VOL by Volume Migration operation, Volume Migration operation cannot be executed.

Also, When the DP pool was created or the capacity was added, the formatting operates for the DP pool. If Volume Migration is performed during the formatting, depletion of the usable capacity may occur. Since the formatting progress is displayed when checking the DP pool status, check if the sufficient usable capacity is secured according to the formatting progress, and then start Volume Migration operation.

**Executing-DP in Optimization:** In case the firmware version of the array is less than 0890/A, Volume Migration cannot be executed.

- Operation of the DP-VOL during Volume Migration use

When using the DP-VOL created by Dynamic Provisioning for a P-VOL or an S-VOL of Volume Migration, any of the operations among the capacity growing, capacity shrinking, LU deletion, and Full Capacity Mode changing of the DP-VOL in use cannot be executed. To execute the operation, split the Volume Migration pair of which the DP-VOL to be operated is in use, and then execute it again.

- Operation of the DP pool during Volume Migration use

When using the DP-VOL created by Dynamic Provisioning for a P-VOL or an S-VOL of Volume Migration, the DP pool to which the DP-VOL in use belongs cannot be deleted. To execute the operation, split the Volume Migration pair of which the DP-VOL is in use belonging to the DP pool to be operated, and then execute it again. The attribute edit and capacity addition of the DP pool can be executed usually regardless of Volume Migration pair.

# Modular Volume Migration operations

## To perform a basic volume migration operation

1. Verify that you have the environments and requirements for Volume Migration (see [Preinstallation information on page 2-2](#)).
2. Set the DMLU (see [Adding reserved logical units on page 11-18](#)).
3. Create a logical unit in RAID group 1 and format it. The size of the logical unit must be same as the one you are migrating. When the logical unit that has already been formatted is to be the logical unit of the migration destination, it is not necessary to format it again.
4. Set LU X as a reserved logical unit (see [Adding reserved logical units on page 11-18](#)).
5. Migrate. Specify the LU0 and the LU1 for the P-VOL and the S-VOL, respectively.



**NOTE:** You cannot migrate while the reserved logical unit is being formatted.

---

6. Confirm the migration pair status. When the copy operation is in progress normally, the pair status is displayed as Copy and the progress rate can be referred to (see [Confirming Volume Migration Pairs on page 11-24](#)).
7. When the migration pair status is Completed, release the migration pair. The relation between the P-VOL/S-VOL of LU0/LU1 is released and the two logical units are returned to the status before the migration executing.



**NOTE:** When the pair status is displayed as Error, the migration failed because a failure occurred in the migration progress. When this happens, delete the migration pair after recovering the failure and execute the migration again.

---

8. When the migration is complete, LU0 has been migrated to the RAID group 1 where LU1 was created, and LU1 has been migrated to the RAID group 0 where LU0 was. If the migration fails, LU0 is not migrated from the original RAID group 0 (see [In the resulting message boxes, click Format LU if you want to format the removed Reserve LUs. Otherwise click Close.Migrating volumes on page 11-20](#)).
9. The LU1 migrated to the RAID group 0 can be specified as an S-VOL when the next migration is executed. If the next migration is not scheduled, delete the LU1 from the reserved logical unit. The LU1 deleted from the reserved LU can be used for the usual system operation as a formatted logical unit (see [In the resulting message boxes, click Format LU if you want to format the removed Reserve LUs. Otherwise click Close.Migrating volumes on page 11-20](#)).

## Managing Modular Volume Migration

This section describes how to migrate volumes using the Modular Volume Migration tool.

Volume Migration runs under the Java applet used for some of the storage features. Please see [Advanced Settings Java Applet on page 1-20](#) for more information on JRE and Java console settings.

### Adding reserved logical units

When mapping mode is enabled, the host cannot access the logical unit if it has been allocated to the reserved logical unit.



**NOTE:** When the mapping mode displays, the host cannot access the logical unit if it has been allocated to the reserved logical unit. Also when the mapping mode is enabled, the host cannot access the logical unit if the mapped logical unit has been allocated to the reserved logical unit.

---



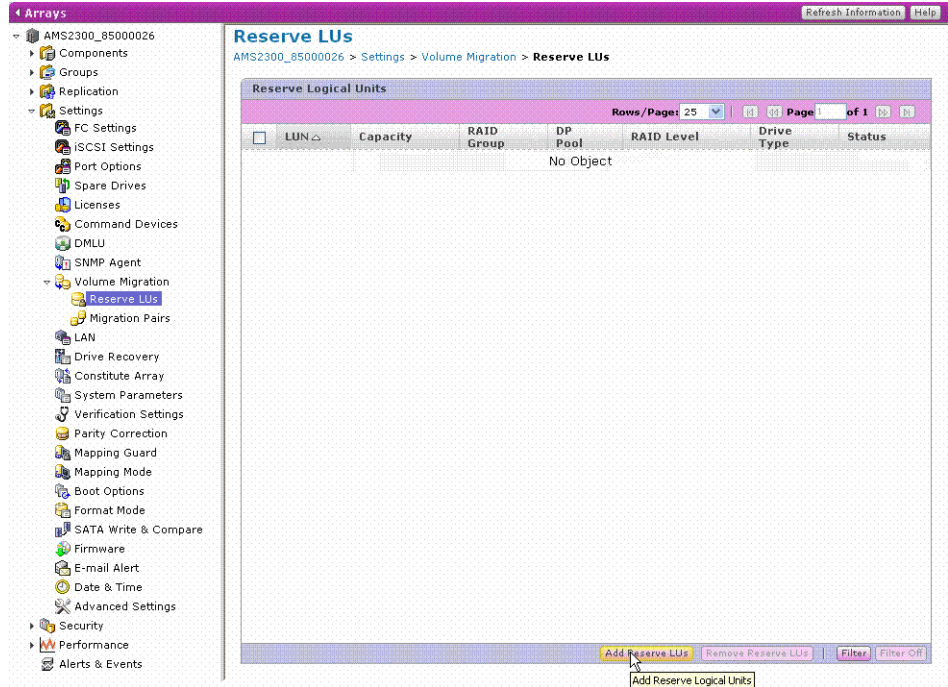
**WARNING!** Stop host access to the logical unit before adding reserved logical units for migration.

---

#### To add reserved logical units for volume migration

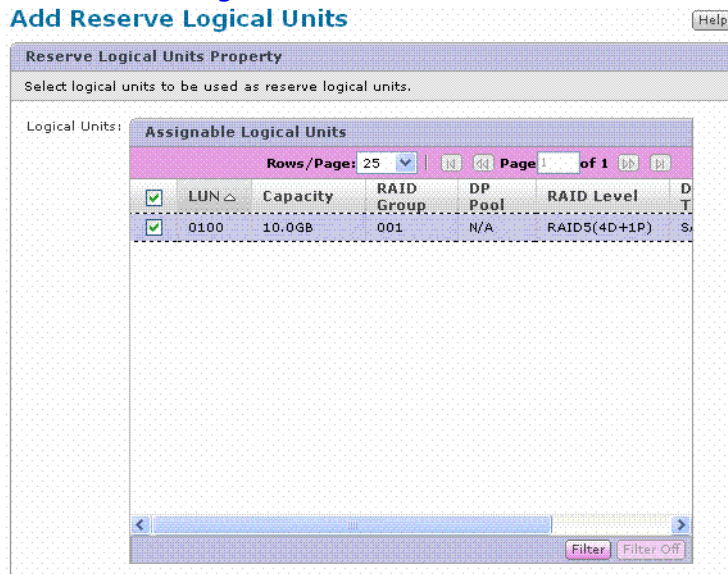
1. Start Navigator 2 and log in. The Arrays window appears
2. Click the appropriate array.
3. Click **Show & Configure Array**.

- Select the **Reserve LUs** icon in the Volume Migration tree view as shown in [Figure 11-11](#).



**Figure 11-11: Reserve LUs dialog box**

- Click **Add Reserve LUs**. The **Add Reserve Logical Units** panel displays as shown in [Figure 11-12](#).



**Figure 11-12: Add Reserve Logical Units panel**

- Select the LUN for the reserved logical unit and click **OK**.
- In the resulting message boxes, click **Confirm**.
- In the resulting message boxes, click **Close**.

## Deleting reserved logical units

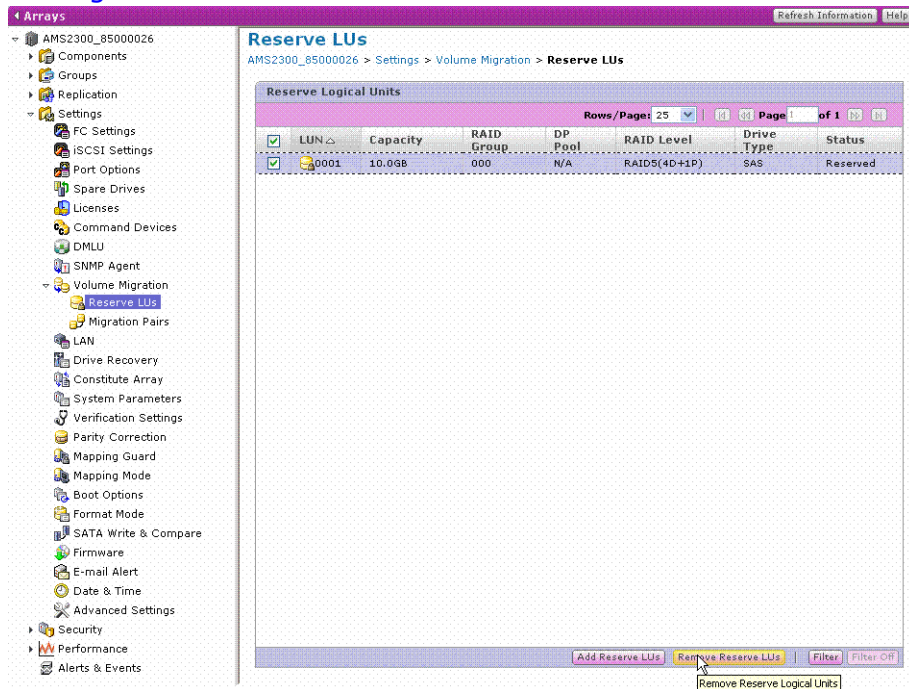
When canceling or releasing the volume migration pair, delete the reserve logical unit, or change the mapping. For more information, see [Table 11-1 on page 11-2](#) and [Setting up Volume Migration on page 11-5](#).



**NOTE:** Be careful when the host recognizes the logical unit that has been used by Volume Migration. After releasing the Volume Migration pair or canceling Volume Migration, delete the reserved logical unit or change the logical unit mapping.

### To delete reserved logical units

1. From the Reserve LUs dialog box, select the LUN to be deleted as shown in [Figure 11-13](#).

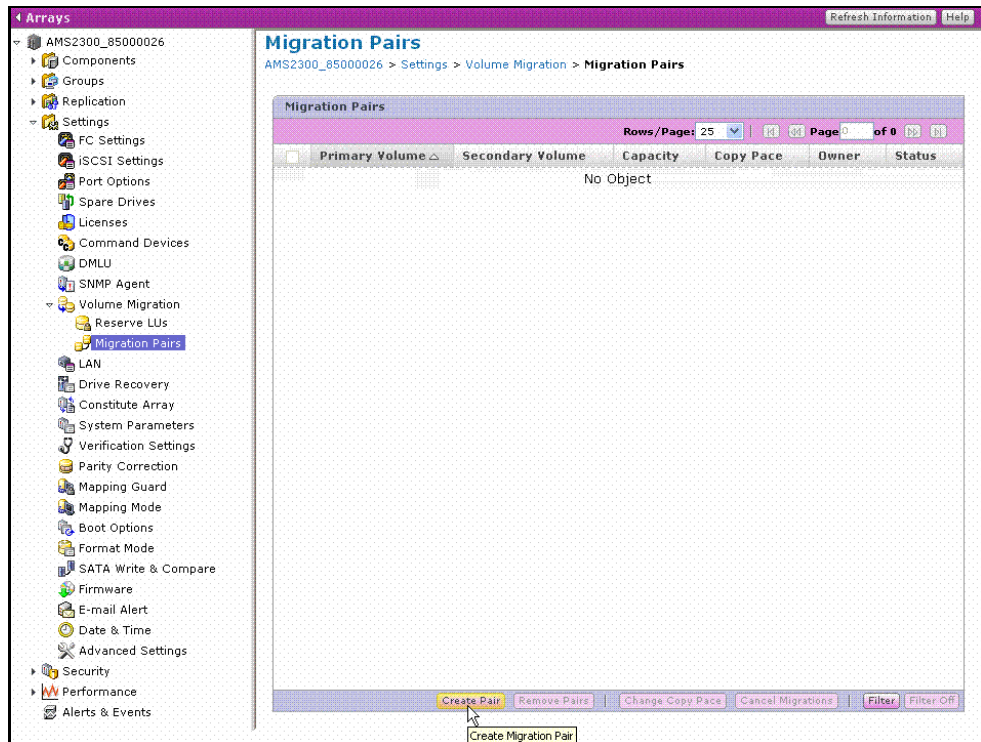


**Figure 11-13: Reserve LUs dialog box - LUN Selected for Deletion**

2. In the resulting message boxes, click **Confirm**.
3. In the resulting message boxes, click **Format LU** if you want to format the removed Reserve LUs. Otherwise click **Close**. Migrating volumes

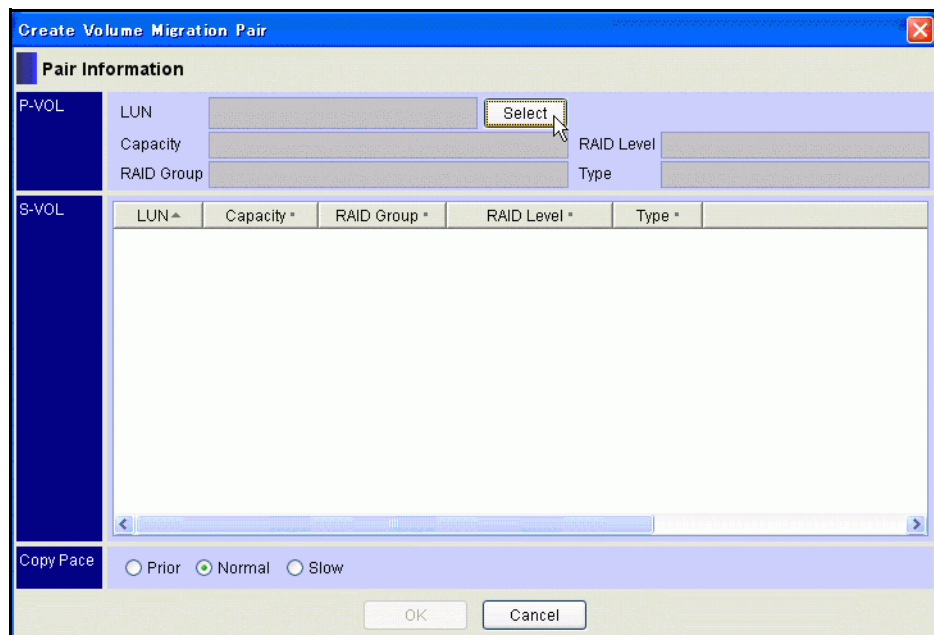
To migrate volumes.

1. Start Navigator 2 and log in. The Arrays window appears
2. Click the appropriate array.
3. Expand the **Settings** list, and click **Advanced Settings**.
4. Click **Open Advanced Settings**. After some minutes, the Array Unit window appears, as shown in [Figure 11-14](#).



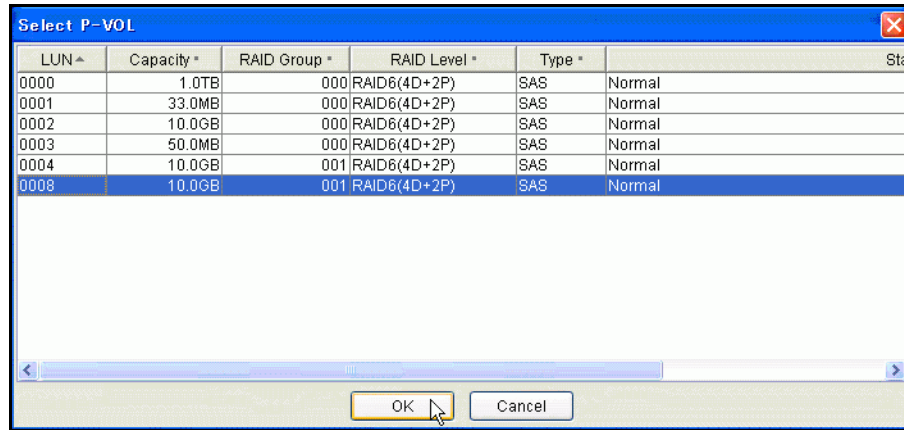
**Figure 11-14: Array Unit Window-Pair**

5. Expand the **Volume Migration** list, and click **Pair**.
6. Click **Create**.
7. Click **OK** in the Confirmation dialog box.
8. Click **Select** to specify a P-VOL. The Create Volume Migration Pair window appears, as shown in [Figure 11-15](#).



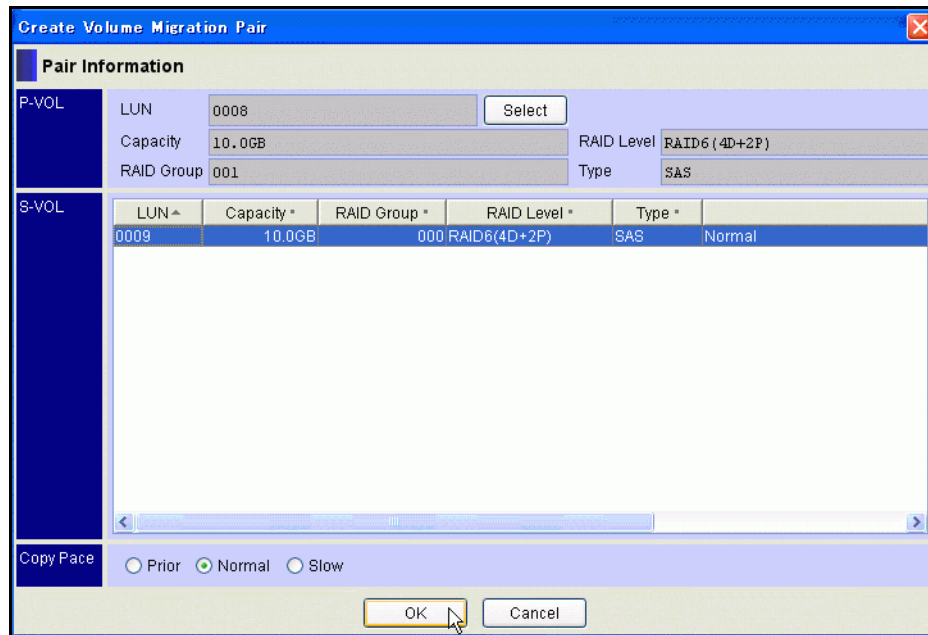
**Figure 11-15: Create Volume Migration Pair**

- Select the LUN for the P-VOL, and click **OK**. The Select P-VOL dialog appears, as shown in [Figure 11-16](#).



**Figure 11-16: Select P-VOL Dialog**

- Select the LUN for the S-VOL and Copy Pace, click **OK** as shown in [Figure 11-17](#).



**Figure 11-17: Create Volume Migration Pair Dialog**

- Follow the on-screen instructions.

## Changing copy pace

The pair copy pace can only be changed if it is in either Copy or Waiting status. There are three options for this feature:

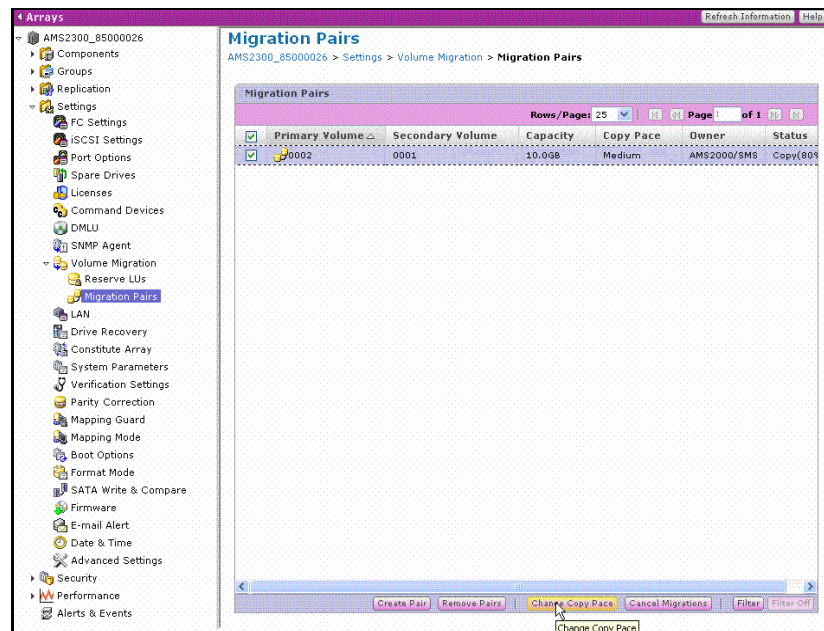
- Prior
- Normal
- Slow



**NOTE:** Normal mode is the default for the Copy Pace. If the host I/O load is heavy, performance can degrade. Use the Slow mode to prevent performance degradation. Use the Prior mode only when the P-VOL is rarely accessed and you want to shorten the copy time.

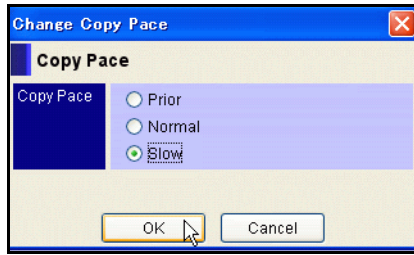
### To change the copy pace

1. Start Navigator 2 and log in. The Arrays window appears
2. Click the appropriate array.
3. Expand the **Settings** list, and click **Advanced Settings**.
4. Click **Open Advanced Settings**. After some minutes, the Array Unit window appears, as shown in [Figure 11-14 on page 11-21](#).
5. Expand the **Volume Migration** list, and click **Pair**.
6. Select the pair whose copy pace you are modifying, and click **Change Pace**. The Change Copy Pace dialog box appears, as shown in [Figure 11-18](#).



**Figure 11-18: Change Copy Pace Dialog Box**

7. Select the copy pace and click **OK**. The Change Copy Pace panel appears, as shown in [Figure 11-19](#).

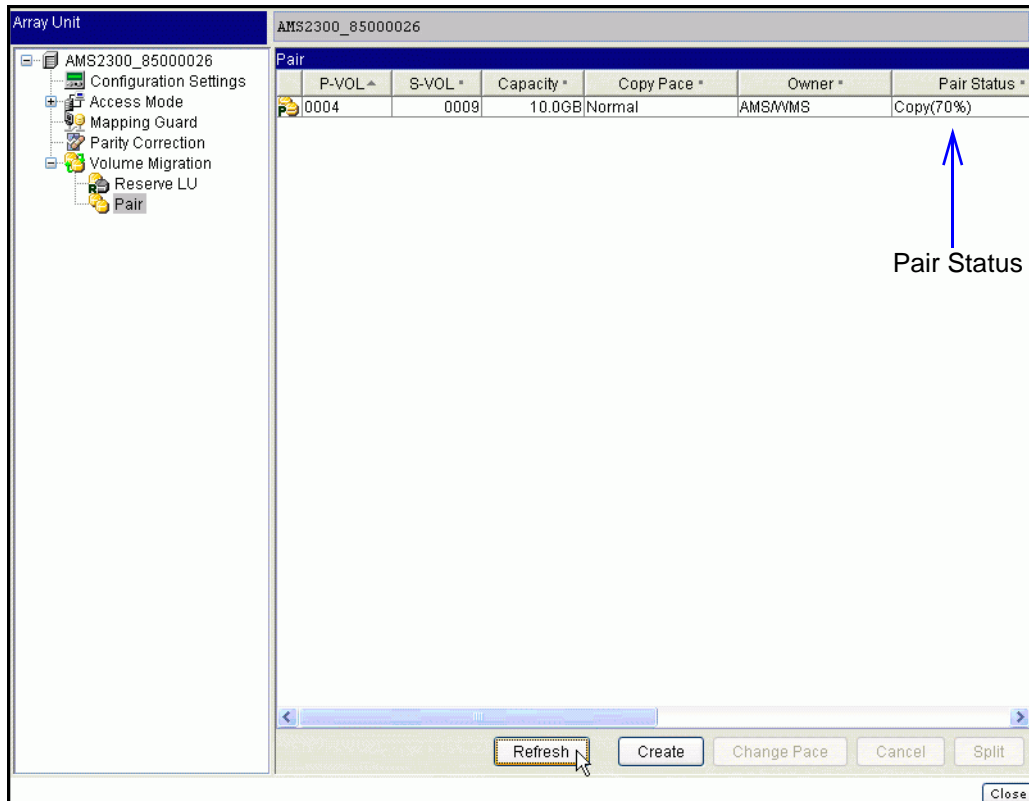


**Figure 11-19: Change Copy Pace Panel**

8. In the resulting message box, click **OK**, as shown in.
9. Follow the on-screen instructions.

## Confirming Volume Migration Pairs

Figure 11-20 shows the pair migration status.



**Figure 11-20: Array Unit Window-P-VOL and S-VOL Migration**

- **P-VOL** - The logical unit number appears for the P-VOL.
- **S-VOL** - The logical unit number appears for the S-VOL.
- **Capacity** - The capacity appears for the P-VOL and S-VOL.
- **Copy Pace** - The copy pace appears.
- **Owner** - The owner of the migration appears. For Adaptable Modular Storage, this is Storage Navigator Modular 2. For any other, this is CCI.

- **Pair Status** - The pair status appears and includes the following items:
  - **Copy** - Copying is in progress.
  - **Waiting** - The migration has been executed but background copying has not started yet.
  - **Completed** - Copying completed and waiting for instructions to release the pair.
  - **Error** - The migration failed because the copying was interrupted. The number enclosed in parentheses is the failure error code. When contacting service personnel, give them this error code.

## Splitting Volume Migration pairs

A pair can only be split if it is in Completed or Error status.

### To split Volume Migration pairs

1. Start Navigator 2 and log in. The Arrays window appears
2. Click the appropriate array.
3. Expand the **Settings** list, and click **Advanced Settings**.
4. Click **Open Advanced Settings**. After some minutes, the Array Unit window appears.
5. Expand the **Volume Migration** list, and click **Pair**.
6. Select the migration pair to split, and click **Split** as shown in [Figure 11-21](#).

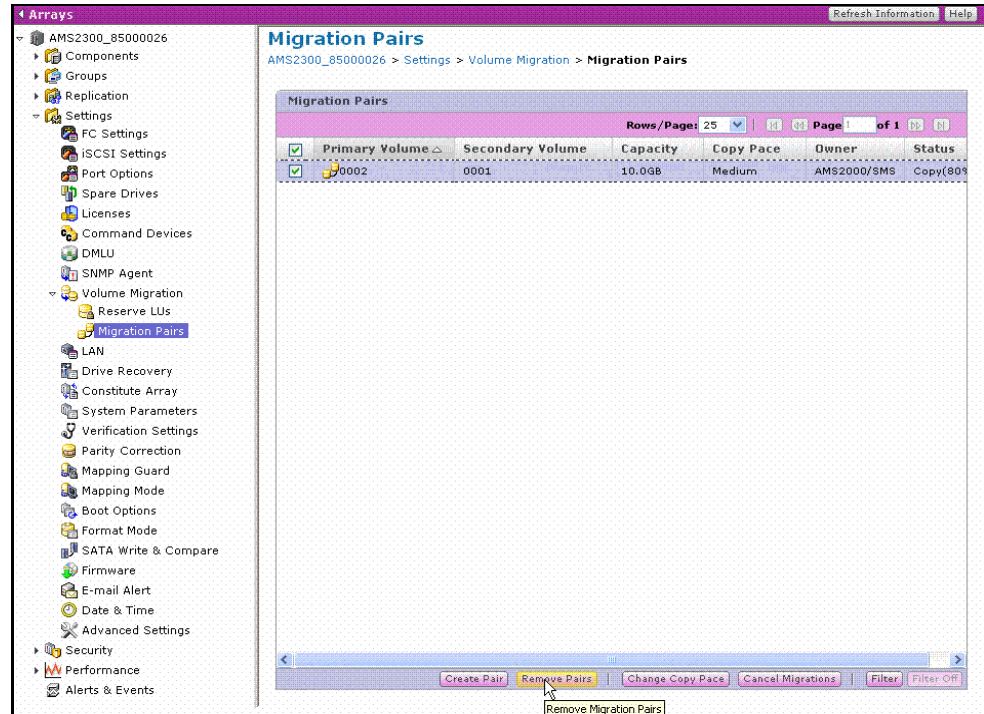


Figure 11-21: Pair Splitting

7. Follow the on-screen instructions.

## Canceling Volume Migration pairs

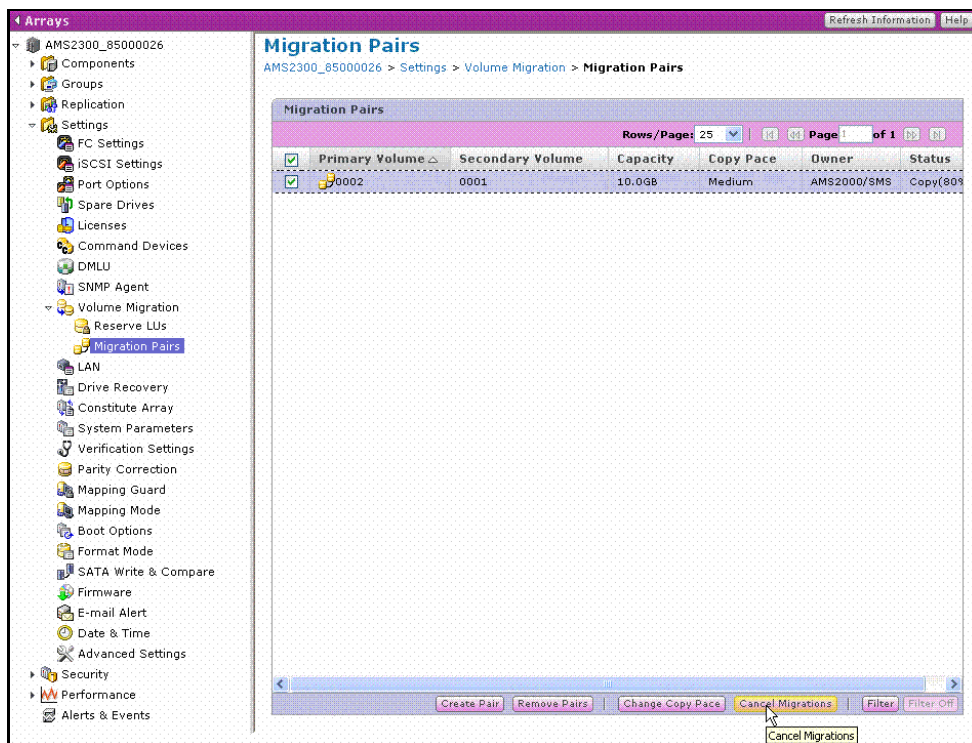
A pair can only be canceled if it is in the **Copy** or **Waiting** status.



**NOTE:** When the migration starts, it cannot be stopped. If the migration is canceled, the data is copied again when you start over.

### To cancel a migration

1. Start Navigator 2 and log in. The Arrays window appears
2. Click the appropriate array.
3. Expand the **Settings** list, and click **Advanced Settings**.
4. Click **Open Advanced Settings**. After some minutes, the Array Unit window appears.
5. Expand the **Volume Migration** list, and click **Pair**.
6. Select the P-VOL you are canceling, and click **Cancel** as shown in [Figure 11-22](#).



**Figure 11-22: Pair Cancellation**

7. Follow the on-screen instructions.

## Load Balancing feature

The Load Balancing feature applies to Volume Migration. When the Load Balancing feature is activated for a Volume Migration pair, the ownership of the P-VOL and S-VOL changes to the same controller. When the pair state is Copy, the ownership of the pair changes across the cores, but not across the controllers.

## Formatting the DMLU in the Event of a Drive Failure

When the DMLU is in a RAID group or DP pool with RAID5 or RAID6 and a drive failure occurs on the RAID group or DP pool with no redundancy, the data in the DMLU will be incomplete and unusable.

At that time, for the firmware version of 08C3/F and later, the DMLU will automatically become unformatted, so make sure to format the DMLU.

For less than 08C3/F, even though the DMLU will not automatically become unformatted, make sure to format the DMLU.

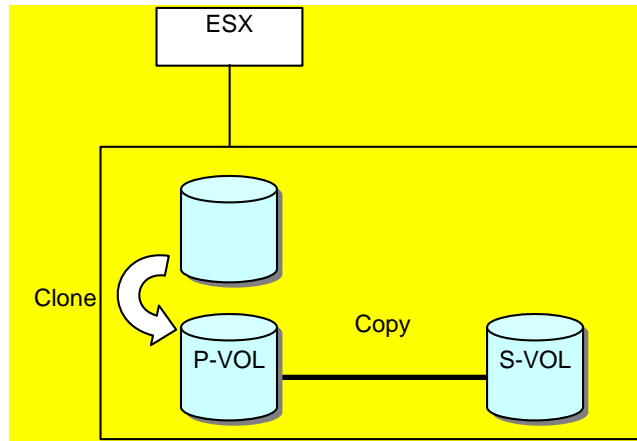
It is possible to format a DMLU without having to release the DMLU.

## Contents Related to the Connection with the Host

The VMware ESX has a function to clone the virtual machine. Although the ESX clone function and Volume Migration can be linked, cautions are required for the performance at the time of execution.

When the volume which becomes the ESX clone destination is a Volume Migration P-VOL pair whose pair status is Copy, the data may be written to the S-VOL for writing to the P-VOL. Since background data copy is executed, the load on the drive becomes heavy. Therefore, the time required for a clone may become longer and the clone may be terminated abnormally in some cases.

To avoid this, Hitachi recommends you set the copy pace of the Volume Migration pair to Slow, or the operation to perform a migration after executing the ESX clone. It is the same for executing the functions such as migrating the virtual machine, deploying from the template, inflating the virtual disk and Space Reclamation.



**Figure 11-23: VMware ESX clone function**

# Data at Rest Encryption

This chapter covers the following topics:

- ❑ [About Data at Rest Encryption](#)
- ❑ [Environment and Requirements](#)
- ❑ [Specifications](#)
- ❑ [Operations Example](#)
- ❑ [Enabling or Disabling](#)
- ❑ [Back Up the Master Key](#)
- ❑ [Refresh the Authentication Keys](#)

# Important Note: HDS Statement on AMS 2000 Data at Rest Encryption Feature and Key Management



---

**NOTE:** You must read the text in this section before proceeding with any use of the Hitachi Data at Rest Encryption feature!! Do NOT proceed with use of the Hitachi Data at Rest Encryption feature before reading this section!!

---

The AMS 2000 has the ability to encrypt data stored in the hard disk drives of the disk subsystem by using the Data At Rest Encryption feature. The Hitachi Data at Rest Encryption feature has two components:

- the Data At Rest Encryption License Key
- the Self Encrypting Disk (SED) Drives

Hitachi Data at Rest Encryption utilizing SED technology provides AES-128 encryption. Encryption can be applied to some or all of the internal storage drives within the disk subsystem. Hitachi Data at Rest Encryption utilizing SEDs also includes integrated key management functionality as well.

As part of the implementation of Data At Rest Encryption on the AMS 2000, a master authentication key (MAK) is created during the installation process of the feature, which is used to generate authentication keys for each SED in the array.

**HDS STRONGLY RECOMMENDS THAT CUSTOMERS DO A BACKUP OF THE MAK IMMEDIATELY AFTER INSTALLATION OF THE DATA AT REST ENCRYPTION FEATURE, BEFORE LOCKING OR DISABLING DATA AT REST ENCRYPTION AND SYSTEM/MICROCODE UPGRADES, AFTER REFRESHES OF THE MAK, AND AT PERIODIC INTERVALS PURSUANT TO THE CUSTOMER ORGANIZATION'S KEY MANAGEMENT POLICY. FAILURE TO BACK UP THE MAK CAN RESULT IN PERMANENT LOSS OF DATA.**

If the SED cannot be authenticated in case of the array failures or the array model upgrade, this backup file is used to restore the MAK.

Hitachi Data Systems believes that if the Data at Rest Encryption feature of the AMS 2000 is implemented properly that information leakage can be prevented when disks are lost or stolen or during the return of failed disks and complete subsystems to HDS. While encryption of Data at Rest is a good prevention mechanism for information leakage in the aforementioned cases, the customer is advised to implement any and all relevant controls to further limit the chance of exposure.

For further information on Data at Rest Encryption, please contact your Hitachi Data Systems account team.

## About Data at Rest Encryption

By using the Self Encrypting Drive and the Data At Rest Encryption option to the array, the data stored in the Self Encrypting Drive can be encrypted. Once the data is encrypted, the information leakage can be prevented in case the Self Encrypting Drive in the array is stolen.

The Data At Rest Encryption is a function necessary for using the self-encrypting drives for Hitachi Adaptable Modular Storage 2000 family (hereinafter abbreviated to SED) in the array. The SED supported in the AMS2000 series complies with the standard created by the SWG of the TCG which is the international industry standard group. To see details of the TCG, go to the World Wide Web site entitled TCG: Trusted Computing Group, SWG: Storage Work Group (<http://www.trustedcomputinggroup.org/developers/storage>).

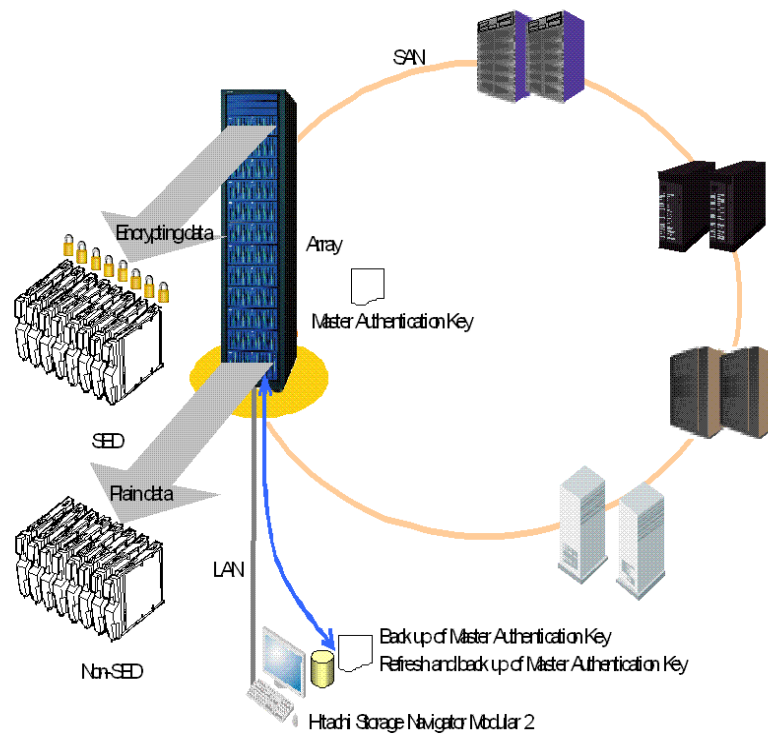
The array where the Data At Rest Encryption is enabled guards the installed SED so that the data cannot be read/written by anything other than the array. Since any person who acquired only the SED cannot read the data illegally, the data leakage at the time of the SED loss, SED taking out, and SED replacement can be prevented.

The data leakage is prevented in the following three procedures.

1. When an unused SED is installed in the array where the Data At Rest Encryption is unlocked and enabled, the array sets the information which authenticates the array (called an authentication key) to the SED. After that, only this array can read/write from/to the SED.
2. After the procedure 1, the SED checks that it is installed in the array of the procedure 1 by using the authentication key of the procedure 1 immediately after the power is turned on or the drive is installed. This is called the authentication. The read/write of the data from/to the SED becomes possible only if the authentication is successful.
3. The SED whose authentication was successful encrypts and stores the written user data. The read data is decrypted and transmitted. Seen from the host, the SED is used as well as the drive without the encryption function. There is no effect to the application or the path switching software.

The authentication key of the SED is controlled by the information called the master authentication key. The array has one master authentication key and generates an authentication key for each SED based on the value. The master authentication key can be changed (refreshed) by the user's instruction. Once the master authentication key is changed, the authentication key for each SED is also changed automatically.

Perform the backup of the master authentication key periodically. Furthermore, immediately after starting the operation, be sure to perform the backup before locking or disabling Data At Rest Encryption. The SED used in a certain array cannot be used in the other array (to prevent the data leakage).



**Figure 12-1: Figure 1.1 Overview of Data At Rest Encryption**

When the user unlocks the Data At Rest Encryption option, the array creates one master authentication key as a random number and stores it in the array. The master authentication key can be output from the array to the external file for a backup by the instruction from Navigator 2. Furthermore, the master authentication key can be refreshed by the instruction from Navigator 2 (the backup is also performed at the time of the refresh). In the backup, the master authentication key is encrypted and stored in the file.

If the SED cannot be authenticated in case of the array failures or the array model upgrade, this backup file is used to restore the master authentication key. Since the service personnel perform the restoration operation, notify them of the backup file of the most recent master authentication key and the password at the time of the output.

## Environment and Requirements

This chapter describes Data At Rest Encryption operational requirements. The following table shows the environment and requirements of Data At Rest Encryption.

**Table 2.1 Environment and Requirements of Data At Rest Encryption**

Item	Description
Environment	Firmware: Version 08A0/A or higher is required for AMS2100/2300/2500. Navigator 2: Version 10.00 or higher is required for management PC.
Requirements	License key is installed to arrays and it status to be valid. Two or more SEDs Number of controllers: Array must be in the dual controller configuration.

Item	Description
Notes	<p>SED cannot be located for the system drives (drives #0 to #4 of the basic tray for AMS2100/AMS2300, drives #0 to #4 of the first expansion tray for AMS2500) (<b>Note 1</b>)</p> <p>The SED used in a certain array cannot be used in the other array (to prevent the data leakage).</p> <p>Refresh the master authentication key periodically and store the backup file and the corresponding password. For example, it is recommended to refresh the master authentication key for every three months (the backup is also performed at the time of the refreshment).</p> <p>At the time of the operation start, furthermore, perform the backup or the refreshment of the master authentication key.</p> <p>Furthermore, be sure to perform the backup locking or disabling Data At Rest Encryption.</p> <p>If a failure occurs in the array, the service personnel may request the user to provide the most recent backup file of the master authentication key and the corresponding password. If the provision is denied, in the worst case, the user data stored in the SED may be lost.</p> <p>The license key of Data At Rest Encryption is a key specific to the target array. It cannot unlock/lock in another array. The serial number of the target array is described in the CD of the license key. Keep the CD of the license key carefully.</p> <p>The data can be copied from the LU configured of the SEDs to the LU configured of the non-SEDs by ShadowImage/SnapShot/TrueCopy/TCE/TCD/Volume Migration. When copying the data, consider if it is okay to copy the data to the drives which are not encrypted.</p> <p>The SED and the non-SED cannot be mixed to create a RAID group or a DP pool. Therefore, the drives to configure the LU are either the SED only or the non-SED only.</p> <p>Set a SED spare drive for the RAID group configured of the SEDs. Set a non-SED spare drive for the RAID group configured of the non-SEDs.</p> <p>In two minutes immediately after unlocking or validating the license, the RAID group creation, the DP pool creation, and the spare drive assignment may not be possible for the SED (if the operation is executed, an error message is displayed). At this time, if another instruction (creating LUs, issuing multiple CLI commands, etc.) is provided by Navigator 2, the time until these operations are enabled may be further prolonged from two minutes. Perform the operation for the SED again after completing another instruction from Navigator 2.</p> <p>In 10 seconds immediately after starting the array and inserting the SED, the RAID group creation, the DP pool creation, and the spare drive assignment may not be possible for the SED (if the operation is executed, an error message is displayed). Operate it after the elapse of 10 seconds.</p>

Item	Description
Restriction	<p>When locking or invalidating the license, it is required to reduce all the SEDs being used in the array. Those SEDs cannot be used again even in the same array after locking or disabling (contact Technical Support for reusing since the backed-up master authentication key needs to be restored).</p> <p>When Power Saving and Tray Power Saving are used, for refreshing the master authentication key, it is required that all the SEDs should be spun up. Spin up all the SEDs, and then refresh the master authentication key.</p> <p>If any of the following conditions are met, the master authentication key cannot be changed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Data At Rest Encryption is not enabled</li> <li>▪ The master authentication key is being changed</li> <li>▪ The SED is being spun down</li> <li>▪ The controller of the array is blocked</li> </ul> <p>The following operations cannot be performed while changing the master authentication key. Execute it again after completing the change.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Firmware update of the array</li> <li>▪ Drive spin-down (when using Power Saving and Tray Power Saving)</li> </ul> <p>In the dual controller configuration, if only one controller is usable due to a controller failure and others starting the operation, the master authentication key refresh function cannot be utilized. There is no effect on other functions such as the master authentication key backup function. Restore the status so that both controllers can be utilized by performing the controller maintenance replacement, and then refresh the master authentication key.</p>
Additional installation/ changing the configuration	Not required.



**NOTE:** A system drive is the drive that firmware is stored.

## Specifications

Specification 2.2 shows the specifications of Data At Rest Encryption.

**Table 12-1: Specification**

Item	Description
Encryption target	The user data stored in the SED installed in the array is encrypted. The user data stored in other than the SED cannot be encrypted.
Encryption algorithm of SED	AES (Advanced Encryption Standard) 128-bit
Encryption mode of SED	CBC (Cipher Block Chaining)
Encryption key management of SED	
Unit for key	SED. Each SED separately controls the key for encrypting the user data.
ON/OFF of authentication function	Not available. The authentication is surely required to access the user data of the SED (the firmware of the array automatically performs the authentication).
Controller configuration	Array must be in the dual controller configuration. In the single controller configuration, Data At Rest Encryption cannot be unlocked and enabled.
Concurrent use of Account Authentication	When Account Authentication is enabled, the refreshment and the backup of the master authentication key can be executed by only the account to which the role of Storage Administrator (View and Modify) is assigned.
Supported RAID levels	There is no difference between the SED and the non-SED. The SAS (SED) supports RAID 0, RAID 1, RAID 1+0, RAID 5, and RAID 6 as well as the SAS drives.
Mixing drives	<p>§ The SED and the non-SED cannot be mixed to create a RAID group or a DP pool.</p> <p>§ The LU of the RAID group configured of the SEDs and the LU of the RAID group configured of the non-SEDs cannot be unified.</p> <p>§ In the high-density extended tray, the SED and the non-SED can be mixed in the same tray. The restrictions related to the SED installation are the same as those related to the non-SED.</p>
Response to the host	<p>§ The READ BUFFER, READ LONG, WRITE BUFFER and WRITE LONG (WR_UNCOR=0) commands are unsupported for the SED.</p> <p>§ Other than the above, there is no difference between the SED and the non-SED. The SAS (SED) performs the same response as the SAS drive for the INQUIRY command from the host.</p>

## Operations Example

### Introducing Data at Rest Encryption

#### To configure Data at Rest Encryption

1. Install the SEDs in the array.
2. Install Data At Rest Encryption from Navigator 2.
3. Perform the following:
  - Create a RAID group

- Create a DP pool for the SED
- Create a spare drive assignment for the SED

There is no problem if step 1 and step 2 are reversed.

## Adding the SEDs

1. Confirm that Data At Rest Encryption is installed.
2. Install the SEDs in the array.
3. Perform the following:
  - Create a RAID group for the SED
  - Create a DP pool for the SED
  - Create a spare drive assignment for the SED

## Daily operation

The master authentication key is refreshed periodically (e.g. every three months, the first business day of the month)

The master authentication key is backed up periodically (e.g. the first business day of the month which did not refresh the master authentication key).



**NOTE:** If you or your customer lose your Master Authentication Key password and have dual controller failure, the array cannot recover from the failure.

---

## Enabling or Disabling

Data At Rest Encryption can be set to “enable” or “disable” when it is installed.

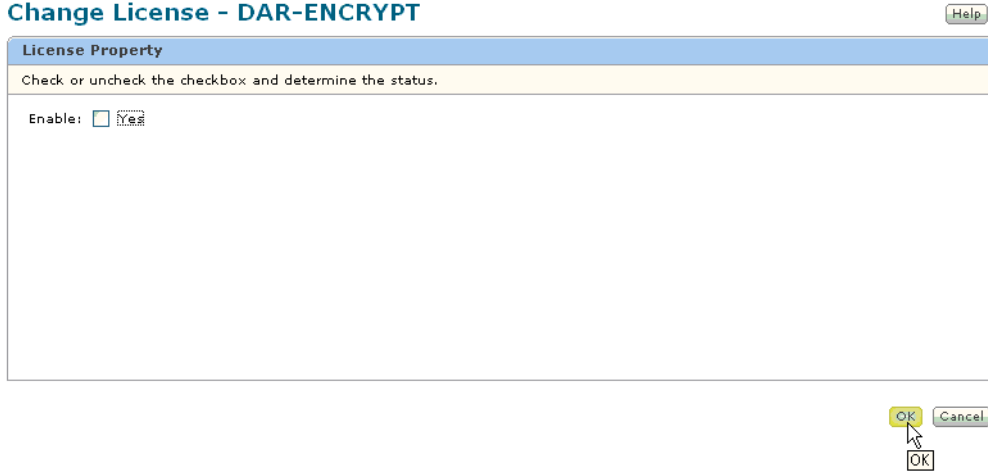
The following conditions must be satisfied in order to disable Data At Rest Encryption:

- SEDs not mounted in array.
- Furthermore, be sure to perform the backed-up master authentication key uninstalling or disabling Data At Rest Encryption.
- Those SEDs cannot be used again even in the same array after uninstalling or disabling (contact Technical Support for reusing since the backed-up master authentication key needs to be restored).

### To enable or disable Data At Rest Encryption

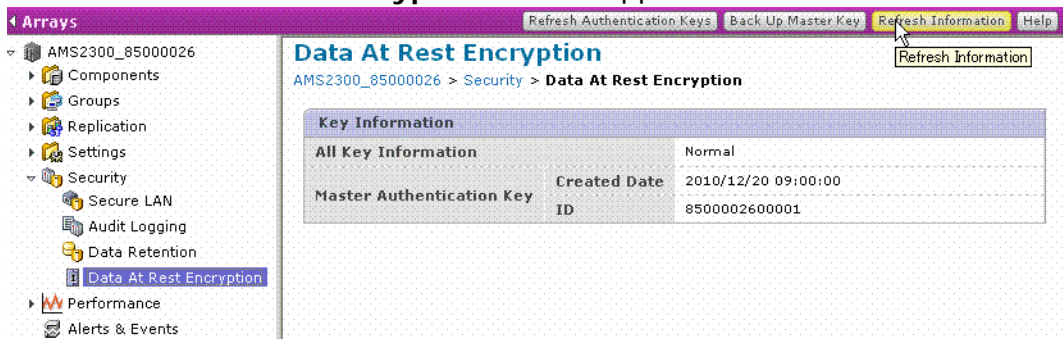
1. Start Navigator 2.
2. Log in as registered user to Navigator 2.
3. Select the array in which you will set Data At Rest Encryption.
4. Click **Show & Configure Array**.
5. Select the **Licenses** icon in the **Settings** tree view.

6. Select the **DAR-ENCRYPT** in the **Licenses** list.
7. Click **Change Status**. The **Change License** screen appears.



**Figure 12-2: Change License screen**

- To disable, uncheck the checkbox.
  - To enable, check the checkbox and click **OK**.
8. A message appears, confirmation that feature is set. Click **Close**. The **Licenses** list screen appears.
  9. Confirm the **Status** of the **DAR-ENCRYPT** to be changed. Enabling or disabling of Data At Rest Encryption is now complete. In two minutes immediately after enabled the license, the RAID group creation, the DP pool creation, and the spare drive assignment may not be possible for the SED (if the operation is executed, an error message is displayed). At this time, if another instruction (creating LUs, issuing multiple CLI commands, etc.) is provided by Navigator 2, the time until these operations are enabled may be further prolonged from two minutes. After the status of **All Key Information** becomes **Normal**, perform those operations in the following method.
  10. Select the **Data At Rest Encryption** icon in the **Security** tree view. The **Data At Rest Encryption** screen appears.



**Figure 12-3: Data At Rest Encryption screen**

Perform the RAID group creation, DP pool creation, and spare drive assignment after **All Key Information** becomes **Normal**. Clicking **Refresh Information** refreshes the displayed contents. Now that you have installed the Data At Rest Encryption key, back up the master authentication key as detailed in the next section.

## Back Up the Master Key

Back up the master authentication key provided for failures or others of the array.

### To back up the master authentication key

1. Start Navigator 2.
2. Log in as registered user to Navigator 2.
3. Select the array in which you will back up the master authentication key.
4. Click **Show & Configure Array**.
5. Select the **Data At Rest Encryption** icon in the **Security** tree view.

The **Data At Rest Encryption** screen appears.

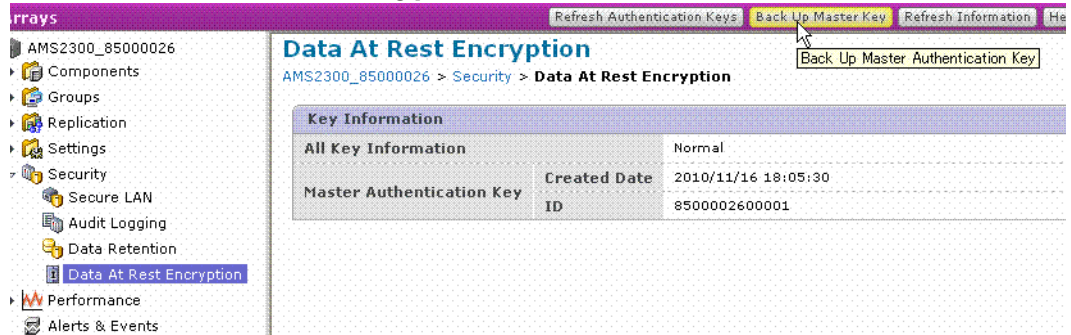


Figure 12-4: Data At Rest Encryption screen

The **Key Information** screen included the following items.

- **All Key Information: Normal, Refreshing Authentication Keys, or Authenticating SEDs** is displayed.
  - **Master Authentication Key:**
  - **Created Date:** The created date of master authentication key is displayed.
  - **ID:** The serial number and ID is displayed.
6. Click **Backup Master Key**.



The **Refresh Authentication Keys** screen appears.

### Refresh Authentication Keys

Help

\* Password :

From 6 to 32 characters(alphanumeric characters, special symbols  
! " # \$ % ^ & \* + = ~ / | \ ~ < = > " ' @ [ \ ] ^ \_ ` ~ ~ ~

\* Retype Password :

Please retype the password.

\* Required field

OK Cancel

**Figure 12-6: Refresh Authentication Keys screen**

7. Enter the **Password** and **Retype Password** and click **OK**.
8. A message appears, click **Back Up Master Key**.
9. Click **Save** on the **File Download** dialog.
10. Specify the **Save in** and the **File name** (if necessary) on the **Save As** dialog.
11. A message appears again, click **Close**.



**NOTE:** Back up the new master authentication key to ensure you have a safe duplicate of it.

## Working with the Dual Controller Configuration

In the dual controller configuration, if only one controller is usable due to a controller failure and other after starting the operation, the master authentication key refresh function cannot be utilized. There is no effect on other functions such as the master authentication key backup function.

Restore the status so that both controllers can be utilized by performing the controller maintenance replacement, and then refresh the master authentication key.





# A

## Appendix A — Logical unit expansion/reduction

This Appendix describes logical unit expansion and reduction operations and includes the following:

- ❑ [Overview](#)
- ❑ [Expanding capacity using LUN “Grow/Shrink”](#)
- ❑ [Changing logical unit capacity](#)
- ❑ [Displaying unified logical unit properties](#)
- ❑ [Separating unified logical units](#)

## Overview

There are two ways to expand or reduce the size of logical units under Navigator 2:

- Logical unit expansion and reduction (grow/shrink) — Increases the size of a logical unit by incorporating un-used disk space into a selected logical unit. This feature can also be used to reduce the amount of space assigned to a logical unit.
- Logical Unit Size Expansion (LUSE) — Increases the size of a logical unit by concatenating selected logical units together. The result is referred to as a unified logical unit.

In most cases, it is probably desirable to take un-used disk space and “grow” the capacity of an existing logical unit. However, you cannot take un-used space from another RAID group and add it to a logical unit. You must use the LUSE feature in the case where your available or additional capacity must come from another RAID group.

## Expanding capacity using LUN “Grow/Shrink”

Under Navigator 2, from the Change Logical Unit Capacity window, you can expand (grow) or reduce (shrink) a logical unit.

The Change Logical Unit Capacity window may be accessed from the following two windows:

- Logical Units tab from the RAID Groups window
- Property window for RAID Group

## Requirements and conditions for expanding logical units

The follow describe the requirements and conditions required to expand the size of a logical unit.

1. You cannot delete an LU where the status of the forced parity correction is any of the following status messages observed in the RAID group of the expansion target:
  - “Correcting”
  - “Waiting”
  - “Waiting Drive Reconstruction”
  - “Unexecuted”, “Unexecuted 1”, or “Unexecuted 2”

If any of the above messages are displayed, you need to execute a forced parity correction for the LU and change its LU status to “Correction Completed” or “Skip,” and then delete this LU.

2. You cannot execute an LU expansion when they are being formatted.
3. You cannot execute an LU expansion for a unified LU that is configured using LUs of two or more RAID groups.

4. You cannot execute an LU expansion when a drive restoration is in progress on the target LU. Execute after completing the drive restoration.
5. You cannot expand the following LU types:
  - LUs used in a ShadowImage pair
  - LUs used as a Copy-on-write SnapShot pair
  - LUs used as a TrueCopy or TrueCopy Extended Distance pair
  - LUs or reserve LUs for Modular Volume Migration
  - LUs in which Cache Residency Manager is set
  - LUs that are being formatted
  - LUs used as a command device
  - Differential Management Logical Units (DMLUs)
  - LUs that are registered in the data pool
  - LUs that are in the RAID group during a RAID group expansion
6. You cannot expand LUs of the RAID group in which the Power Saving function is set. Change the status of the Power Saving feature to "Normal (spin-up)" and then expand the LUs.

Additionally, please note the following:

1. You cannot reduce an LU where its properties are set to "Read Only," "Protect," or "Can't Guard."
2. You cannot reduce an LU where the S-VOL setting is Setting Impossible (disabled) and the mode is any of the following:
  - "Read Capacity 0 (Zer)"
  - "Inquiry Command Shielding (Zer/Inv)".
3. You cannot reduce an LU if the Data Retention Utility is enabled and its properties are set to "Read/Write", or if the S-VOL is set to "Setting Possible (Enabled)", and mode to "Unset."
4. You must wait until after the drive is restored to reduce the LUs if the dynamic sparing/correction copy/copy back is in progress.

## Changing logical unit capacity

This section assumes that you are logged on to Navigator 2 and know how to use its features and functions.



---

**CAUTION! Before beginning any LUN expansion procedure please read and follow all of the following instructions.**

- Do not skip any steps and make sure that you follow the instructions carefully. If you do not execute a procedure correctly, data in the array can be lost and the unified logical unit will not be created.
  - Back up the unified logical units before modifying them.
  - Format the unified logical units to delete the volume label which the operating system adds to logical units.
  - Create unified logical units only from logical units within the same array.
  - You must format a logical unit that is undefined before you can use it.
- 
- You can increase the size of a logical unit using the available free space within the RAID group to which it belongs.
  - You can change the capacity of a logical unit adding existing logical units to a selected logical unit.

To change the capacity of a logical unit:

1. From the array tree, click **Groups > Logical Units**. The Logical Units window appears.
2. Select the LUN on which you want to change capacity.
3. Click **Change LU Capacity**. The Change Logical Unit Capacity is displayed. The current properties of the selected LUN are displayed, including LUN, Current Capacity, and Free space (except for logical units in a DP pool).
4. From the **Basic** tab, choose the desired operation to expand or shrink capacity:
  - To expand ("grow") or reduce ("shrink") the LUN capacity:
    - a. Click **Input** and enter the capacity value you want. ALL is the default option from the pull-down list.
    - b. To set available capacity automatically, go to the step 5.
    - c. To set the capacity manually, go to step 6.
  - To unify or concatenate logical units to LUN expansion (LUSE):
    - a. Click **Add** logical units and select a LUN or LUNs from the **Available Logical Units** table. You can select logical units from across available RAID groups.
    - b. Go to step 6.

- To separate LUNs that have been joined together:
  - a. Select either **Separate last logical units** or **Separate all logical units** and check the desired box on the Available Logical Units table.
  - b. Go to step 6.
- 5. Click the **Input Capacity Options** tab. Select **Set Manually** and check the desired box from the Free Space table. If you set the LUN of an existing logical unit, add the LUN to this field. The LUN assignment numbers are in descending order.
- 6. Click **OK** and the result dialog is displayed.
- 7. Click **Close**. Confirm your changes.

## Displaying unified logical unit properties

You can view the properties of logical units that you unified using the LUSE feature.

To display the list of unified logical units:

1. In the Arrays window, select the array whose date and time you want to update, and either click **Show and Configure Array**, or double click the name of the array. The Array window and the Explorer tree are displayed.
2. In the Explorer tree, click **Groups > Logical Units**. The Logical Units window and table is displayed.
3. From the LUN column, click the LUN number. The LUN screen for that logical unit appears. The properties for the logical unit are displayed.
4. Click the **Sub Logical Units** tab to view the logical units that have been unified into the current LUN.

## Separating unified logical units

The process of separating logical units that have been unified under the LUSE feature may be done in two ways:

- Separate the last logical unit that was added to the unified logical unit
- Separate all of the logical units that make up the unified logical unit

### Separating the last logical unit

This process is the reverse of adding a logical unit to a unified logical unit.

To remove the last logical unit that was added to a unified logical unit:

1. In the Arrays window, select the array whose date and time you want to update, and either click **Show and Configure Array**, or double click the name of the array. The Array window and the Explorer tree are displayed.
2. In the Explorer tree, expand the Settings menu to show the list of available functions.

3. In the expanded menu, select **LUN Expansion**. The LUN Expansion window is displays the list of unified logical units in the array and a set of parameters for each listed unit.
4. In the LUN Expansion window, click the LUN that you want to separate.
5. In the unified logical unit property window, click **Separate Last LUs**. A confirmation dialog box is displayed.
6. Review the warning message, and then click **Confirm**. A message box stating that the logical unit has been successfully separated is displayed.
7. Click **Close** to exit the message box and return to the unified logical unit properties window.
8. Review the contents of the window and verify that the logical unit was separated from the unified logical unit.

## Separating all logical units

This process will separate all unified logical units.

To remove the all of the logical units added to a unified logical unit:

1. In the Arrays window, select the array whose date and time you want to update, and either click **Show and Configure Array**, or double click the name of the array. The Array window and the Explorer tree are displayed.
2. In the Explorer tree, expand the Settings menu to show the list of available functions.
3. In the expanded menu, select **LUN Expansion**. The LUN Expansion window is displays the list of unified logical units in the array and a set of parameters for each listed unit.
4. In the LUN Expansion window, click the LUN that you want to separate.
5. In the unified logical unit property window, click **Separate All LUs**. A confirmation dialog box is displayed.
6. Review the warning message, and then click **Confirm**. A message box stating that the logical unit has been successfully separated is displayed.
7. Click **Close** to exit the message box and return to the unified logical unit properties window.
8. Review the contents of the window and verify that the logical unit was separated from the unified logical unit.

## Available unified LUN information

The following information appears in the LUN window for unified logical units.

**Table A-1: Unified LUN Information**

Item	Description
LUN	This shows the name of the unified logical unit.
Capacity	This shows the size in GB of the unified logical unit.
RAID Group	This shows the name of the RAID group that the unified logical unit is part of.
RAID Level	This shows the RAID level of the unified logical unit. This is RAID6.
TYPE	This shows the type of hard drive the logical unit resides on: SATA or SAS.
Status	This shows the status of the unified logical unit: Normal or Alarm.
Default Cache Partition No.	This is the cache partition number assigned by default.
Mapped to Host Group/iSCSI Target	Provides Host Group or iSCSI target mapping information.
Default and Pair Cache partition No.	Provides information on the default or pair cache partitions.
Current Cache Partition No.	The current cache partition to which the logical unit is assigned.
LUN Expansion	Defines the role of the logical unit in a unified LUN.





# Glossary

This glossary provides definitions of general storage networking terms as well as specific terms related to the technology that supports Hitachi Data Systems products. Click the letter of the glossary section to display that page.

<a href="#">A</a>	<a href="#">B</a>	<a href="#">C</a>	<a href="#">D</a>	<a href="#">E</a>	<a href="#">F</a>	<a href="#">G</a>	<a href="#">H</a>	<a href="#">I</a>	<a href="#">J</a>	<a href="#">K</a>	<a href="#">L</a>	<a href="#">M</a>	<a href="#">N</a>	<a href="#">O</a>	<a href="#">P</a>	<a href="#">Q</a>	<a href="#">R</a>	<a href="#">S</a>	<a href="#">T</a>	<a href="#">U</a>	<a href="#">V</a>	<a href="#">W</a>	<a href="#">X</a>	<a href="#">Y</a>	<a href="#">Z</a>
-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------

## **1000BASE-T**

A specification for Gigabit Ethernet over copper wire. The standard defines 1 Gbps data transfer over distances of up to 100 meters using four pairs of Category 5 balanced copper cabling and a 5-level coding scheme.

## **Array**

A set of hard disks grouped logically together to function as one contiguous storage space.

## **ATA**

Advanced Technology Attachment, a disk drive implementation that integrates the controller on the disk drive.

## **BIOS**

Basic Input Output System, built-in software code that determines the functions that a computing device can perform without accessing programs from a disk.

## **Bps**

Bits per second, the standard measure of data transmission speeds.

## **BSD syslog protocol**

This protocol has been used for the transmission of event notification messages across networks for many years. While this protocol was originally developed on the University of California Berkeley Software Distribution (BSD) TCP/IP system implementations, its value to operations and management has led it to be ported to many other operating systems as well as being embedded into many other networked devices.

## **Cache**

A temporary, high-speed storage mechanism. It is a reserved section of main memory or an independent high-speed storage device. Two types of caching are found in computers: memory caching and disk caching. Memory caches are built into the architecture of microprocessors and often computers have external cache memory. Disk caching works like memory caching; however, it uses slower, conventional main memory that on some devices is called a memory buffer.

## **Capacity**

The amount of information (usually expressed in megabytes) that can be stored on a disk drive. It is the measure of the potential contents of a device; the volume it can contain or hold. In communications,

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

## **Glossary–2**

capacity refers to the maximum possible data transfer rate of a communications channel under ideal conditions.

### **Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol**

A security protocol that requires users to enter a secret for access.

### **CHAP**

See Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol.

### **command control interface (CCI)**

Hitachi's Command Control Interface software provides command line control of Hitachi array and software operations through the use of commands issued from a system host. Hitachi's CCI also provides a scripting function for defining multiple operations.

### **command line interface (CLI)**

A method of interacting with an operating system or software using a command line interpreter. With Hitachi's Storage Navigator Modular Command Line Interface, CLI is used to interact with and manage Hitachi storage and replication systems.

### **DHCP**

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol, allows a computer to join an IP-based network without having a pre-configured IP address. DHCP is a protocol that assigns unique IP addresses to devices, then releases and renews these addresses as devices leave and re-join the network.

### **Differential Management Logical Unit (DMLU)**

The volumes used to manage differential data in a storage system. In a TrueCopy Extended Distance system, there may be up to two DM logical units configured per storage system. For Copy-on-Write and ShadowImage, the DMLU is an exclusive volume used for storing data when the array system is powered down.

### **Duplex**

The transmission of data in either one or two directions. Duplex modes are full-duplex and half-duplex. Full-duplex is the simultaneous transmission of data in two direction. For example, a telephone is a full-duplex device, because both parties can talk at once. In contrast, a walkie-talkie is a half-duplex device because only one party can transmit at a time.

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

**Fabric**

The hardware that connects workstations and servers to storage devices in a SAN. The SAN fabric enables any-server-to-any-storage device connectivity through the use of fibre channel switching technology.

**FC**

Fibre channel.

**Firmware**

Software embedded into a storage device. It may also be referred to as Microcode.

**Full-duplex**

The concurrent transmission and the reception of data on a single link.

**Gbps**

Gigabit per second.

**GUI**

Graphical user interface.

**HBA**

Host bus adapter, a circuit board and integrated circuit adapter installed in a workstation or server that provides input/output processing and physical connectivity between a server and a storage device. An iSCSI HBA implements the iSCSI and TCP/IP protocols in a combination of a software storage driver and hardware.

**HDD**

Hard disk drive.

**Initiator**

A system component that originates an I/O command over an I/O bus or network, such as an I/O adapters or network interface cards.

**I/O**

Input/output.

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

**Glossary–4**

## **IP**

Internet Protocol, specifies the format of packets and addressing scheme. Most networks combine IP with a higher-level protocol called Transmission Control Protocol (TCP), which establishes a virtual connection between a destination and a source.

## **IP address**

An identifier for a computer or device on a TCP/IP network. Networks using the TCP/IP protocol route messages based on the IP address of the destination. The format of an IP address is a 32-bit numeric address written as four numbers separated by periods. Each number can be zero to 255 (for example, 192.168.0.200).

## **IP-SAN**

Block-level Storage Area Networks over TCP/IP using the iSCSI protocol.

## **iSCSI**

Internet SCSI, an IP-based standard for connecting data storage devices over a network and transferring data using SCSI commands over IP networks. iSCSI enables a Storage Area Network to be deployed in a Local Area Network.

## **iSNS**

Internet Storage Name Service, a protocol that allows automated discovery, management and configuration of iSCSI devices on a TCP/IP network.

## **L**

### **LAN**

Local Area Network, a computer network that spans a relatively small area, such as a single building or group of buildings.

### **LU**

Logical unit.

### **LUN**

Logical unit number.

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

## **Middleware**

Software that connects two otherwise separate applications. For example, a middleware product can be used to link a database system to a Web server. Using forms, users request data from the database; then, based on the user's requests and profile, the Web server returns dynamic Web pages to the user.

## **MIB**

Message Information Block.

## **NIC**

Network Interface Card, an expansion board in a computer that allows the computer to connect to a network.

## **NTP**

Network Time Protocol, a protocol for synchronizing the clocks of computer systems over packet-switched, variable-latency data networks. NTP uses UDP port 123 as its transport layer. It is designed particularly to resist the effects of variable latency (jitter).

## **Pool volume**

A pool volume is used to store backup versions of files, archive copies of files, and files migrated from other storage.

## **primary volume (P-VOL)**

The storage volume in a volume pair. It is used as the source of a copy operation. In copy operations a copy source volume is called the P-VOL while the copy destination volume is called S-VOL (secondary volume).

## **RAID**

Redundant Array of Independent Disks, a disk array in which part of the physical storage capacity is used to store redundant information about user data stored on the remainder of the storage capacity. The redundant information enables regeneration of user data in the event that one of the array's member disks or the access path to it fails.  
SNIA.

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

## **Glossary–6**

## **RAID 6**

An extension of the RAID 5 array, that allows for two simultaneous drive failures without downtime or data loss. recovery point objective (RPO).

After a recovery operation, the recovery point objective (RPO) is the maximum desired time period, prior to a disaster, in which changes to data may be lost. This measure determines up to what point in time data should be recovered. Data changes preceding the disaster are preserved by recovery.

## **SAN**

Storage Area Network, a network of shared storage devices that contain disks for storing data.

## **SAS**

Serial Attached SCSI, an evolution of parallel SCSI into a point-to-point serial peripheral interface in which controllers are linked directly to disk drives. SAS delivers improved performance over traditional SCSI because SAS enables up to 128 devices of different sizes and types to be connected simultaneously.

## **SATA**

Serial ATA is a computer bus technology primarily designed for the transfer of data to and from hard disks and optical drives. SATA is the evolution of the legacy Advanced Technology Attachment (ATA) interface from a parallel bus to serial connection architecture.

## **SCSI**

Small Computer System Interface, a parallel interface standard that provides faster data transmission rates than standard serial and parallel ports.

## **Session**

A series of communications or exchanges of data between two end points that occurs during the span of a single connection. The session begins when the connection is established at both ends, and terminates when the connection is ended. For some applications each session is related to a particular port. In this document a session is the exchange of data between groups of primary and secondary volumes.

## **secondary volume (S-VOL)**

A replica of the primary volume (P-VOL) at the time of a backup and is kept on a standby storage system. Recurring differential data updates are performed to keep the data in the S-VOL consistent with data in the P-VOL.

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

## SMTP

Simple Mail Transfer Protocol, a protocol used to receive and store email data directly from email servers.

## Software initiator

A software application initiator communicates with a target device. A software initiator does not require specialized hardware because all processing is done in software, using standard network adapters.

## Storage Navigator Modular 2

A multi-featured scalable storage management application that is used to configure and manage the storage functions of Hitachi arrays. Also referred to as Navigator 2.

## Subnet

In computer networks, a subnet or subnetwork is a range of logical addresses within the address space that is assigned to an organization. Subnetting is a hierarchical partitioning of the network address space of an organization (and of the network nodes of an autonomous system) into several subnets. Routers constitute borders between subnets. Communication to and from a subnet is mediated by one specific port of one specific router, at least momentarily. SNIA.

## Switch

A network infrastructure component to which multiple nodes attach. Unlike hubs, switches typically have internal bandwidth that is a multiple of link bandwidth, and the ability to rapidly switch node connections from one to another. A typical switch can accommodate several simultaneous full link bandwidth transmissions between different pairs of nodes. SNIA.

## Target

Devices that receive iSCSI requests that originate from an iSCSI initiator.

## TOE

A dedicated chip or adapter that handles much of the TCP/IP processing directly in hardware. TCP/IP transmission is inherently a CPU-intensive operation. Therefore, using dedicated hardware that can operate in parallel with the main processor allows for superior system performance. Although all iSCSI HBAs have a TOE, a generic TOE only implements TCP/IP, while an iSCSI HBA implements the iSCSI protocol in addition to TCP/IP.

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

## Glossary–8

## User Datagram Protocol (UDP)

UDP is one of the core protocols of the Internet protocol suite. Using UDP, programs on networked computers can send short messages sometimes known as datagrams (using Datagram Sockets) to one another.

UDP does not guarantee reliability or ordering in the way that TCP does. Datagrams may arrive out of order, appear duplicated, or go missing without notice. Avoiding the overhead of checking whether every packet actually arrived makes UDP faster and more efficient, at least for applications that do not need guaranteed delivery. Time-sensitive applications often use UDP because dropped packets are preferable to delayed packets. UDP's stateless nature is also useful for servers that answer small queries from huge numbers of clients. Unlike TCP, UDP is compatible with packet broadcast (sending to all on local network) and multicasting (send to all subscribers).

## World Wide Name (WWN)

A unique identifier for an open systems host. It consists of a 64-bit physical address (the IEEE 48-bit format with a 12-bit extension and a 4-bit prefix). The WWN is essential for defining the SANTinel™ parameters because it determines whether the open systems host is to be allowed or denied access to a specified logical unit or a group of logical units.

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

**Glossary–10**



# Index

## A

access control. *See* Account Authentication

Account Authentication

- account types 3-4
- default account 3-4
- overview 1-2
- permissions and roles 3-5-3-7
- setup guidelines 4-2

account types 3-4

Advanced Settings 1-20

audit logging

- external syslog servers 4-6
- initializing logs 4-6
- protocol compliance 1-18, 2-3
- setup guidelines 4-3
- syslog server 1-18, 2-3
- transferring log data 4-3
- viewing log data 4-5-4-6

Audit Logging. *See* audit logging

## C

Cache Partition Manager

- adding cache partitions 5-16
- adding or reducing cache 5-14
- assigning partitions 5-18
- changing owner controllers 5-20
- changing partitions 5-20
- deleting partitions 5-18
- load balancing 5-14
- setting a pair cache partition 5-19
- setup guidelines 5-15
- SnapShot and TCE installation 5-21-5-22

Cache Residency Manager

- setting residency LUs ??-6-14, 6-15-??
- setup guidelines 6-14-6-15

CHAP network security 1-9

copy speed (pace). *See* Modular Volume Migration

creating

- Host Groups (FC) 8-27
- iSCSI targets 8-35

## D

Data Retention Utility

- Expiration Lock configuration 7-8
- setting attributes 7-8
- setup guidelines 7-6, 7-6
- S-VOL configuration 7-8

Dynamic Provisioning

- logical unit capacity 6-4

## F

features

- Account Authentication 3-2
- Audit Logging 3-8
- Cache Partition Manager 5-2
- Cache Residency Manager 6-2
- Data Retention Utility 7-2
- Volume Migration 11-2

fibre channel

- adding host groups 8-25
- deleting host groups 8-31
- initializing Host Group 000 8-31

fibre channel setup workflow. *See* LUN Manager

## H

hosts, mapping to LUs 1-9

## I

iSCSI

- adding targets 8-40
- configuration 1-10
- creating a target 8-35
- creating iSCSI targets 8-35
- deleting targets 8-42
- description 1-10
- editing authentication properties 8-43
- editing target information 8-42

- host platform options 8-41
- initializing Target 000 8-44
- nicknames, changing 8-45
- system configuration 8-10
- Target 000 8-42
- using CHAP 8-34, 8-45, ??-9-6

iSCSI setup workflow. *See* LUN Manager

## J

- Java applet, timeout period 1-20
- Java applet. *See also* Advanced Settings
- Java runtime requirements 1-20

## L

- logical units
  - expanding A-1
- LUN expansion. *See* logical units, expanding
- LUN Manager
  - adding host groups 8-24-8-31
  - connecting hosts to ports 1-9
  - creating iSCSI targets 8-35
  - fibre channel features 1-8
  - fibre channel setup workflow 8-23
  - Host Group 000 8-31
  - host group security, fibre channel 8-25
  - iSCSI features 1-9
  - iSCSI setup workflow 8-23
- LUSE. *See* logical units, expanding

## M

- Management Information Base (MIB). *See* SNMP
- migrating volumes. *See* Modular Volume Migration
- Modular Volume Migration
  - copy pace, changing 11-23
  - migration pairs, canceling. 11-26
  - migration pairs, confirming 11-24
  - migration pairs, splitting 11-25
  - Reserved LUs, adding 11-18
  - Reserved LUs, deleting 11-20
  - setup guidelines 11-17

## N

- NTP, using SNMP 1-20, 2-5

## P

- password, default. *See* account types
- Performance Monitor
  - exporting information 9-21
  - obtaining system information 9-4
  - performance imbalance 9-28-9-29
  - troubleshooting performance issues 9-28

- using graphs 9-4-9-6

permissions. *See* Account Authentication

## S

- security, setting iSCSI target 8-37, 8-38
- SNMP
  - agent setup workflow 10-10
  - disk array-side configuration 10-10
  - failure detection 10-19
  - Get/Trap specifications 10-4
  - IPv6 requirements 10-9
  - message limitations 1-13
  - MIB information 1-19, 2-4, 10-19
  - REQUEST connections 10-18
  - request processing 1-13
  - SNMP manager-side configuration 10-11
  - trap connections, verifying 10-17
  - trap issuing 1-12
- SNMP agent support
  - LAN/workstation requirements 1-11
  - overview 1-11
- SNMP manager, dual-controller environment 1-20, 2-4
- syslog server. *See* audit logging
- system configuration 8-10

## T

- timeout, Java applet 1-20

## Index-2



## **Hitachi Data Systems**

### **Corporate Headquarters**

2845 Lafayette Street  
Santa Clara, California 95050-2639  
U.S.A.

[www.hds.com](http://www.hds.com)

### **Regional Contact Information**

#### **Americas**

+1 408 970 1000

[info@hds.com](mailto:info@hds.com)

#### **Europe, Middle East, and Africa**

+44 (0)1753 618000

[info.emea@hds.com](mailto:info.emea@hds.com)

#### **Asia Pacific**

+852 3189 7900



**MK-97DF8148-23**